This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ Make non-commercial use of the files We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ Maintain attribution The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
LATIN GRAMMAR.
A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

FOUNDED ON COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR

BY

JOSEPH H. ALLEN

AND

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA

BOSTON
PUBLISHED BY GINN BROTHERS
3 BEACON STREET
1875
BERNARD MOSES

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1872, by
J. H. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

CAMBRIDGE:
PRESS OF JOHN WILSON AND SON.
Our aim has been to prepare, within moderate compass, a complete Latin grammar, to be used from the beginning of the study of Latin until the end of a college course. The whole has been composed from our own point of view, and is, in all essentials, a new and independent work. But we have used freely the standard authorities, as well those of the older scholastic as of the newer critical and scientific schools. In several points, particularly the topical arrangement of the Syntax, we have followed the outline sketched a few years ago by Professor Allen, of the University of Wisconsin.

We have endeavored to adapt the scientific (philological) method of inflection by stem and termination to the system used by the Romans themselves and handed down by general custom to our time. While the five Declensions are retained, with the old distinctions on which they are founded, at the same time the true philological difference, that of stems, is fully exhibited as the real basis of noun-forms. In the same way the true distinctions of verb-stems are adapted to the existing four Conjugations. We have preferred this to the "crude-form" system, partly because of the practical difficulty that our lexicons do not give
stems, but words; chiefly, however, from the inherent difficulty of a 'crude form system' in a language so decayed as the Latin.

In respect to the actual forms of the language, we have not thought it necessary to go back of Neue's "Formenlehre," upon which we have relied, and which teachers will find digested so far as seems to come within the limits of a work like the present.

In the Syntax, our design has been to leave no principle untouched which a student needs during his school and college course. We have attempted to show, as far as possible, the reason and origin of constructions, for which purpose notes have been inserted where it seemed desirable. Many things in the treatment of the Subjunctive, of the Protasis and Apodosis (in which we have followed Professor Goodwin's analysis), of Temporal particles, of the Infinitive and Participles, and much of the matter of the notes, appear for the first time in a school-book, and are the results of the authors' own investigations in Comparative Grammar. The Syntax is illustrated by upwards of a thousand examples cited from classical authorities, principally from Cicero; besides nearly as many brief phrases in illustration of minor points, particularly the use of prepositions and cases.

In Prosody and Versification we have taken a little wider range than usual, so as to enable the student to read metrically any poetry he will meet in his college course.

In the typography and mechanical arrangement of the page, we have sought to give every aid that can be rendered in that way to the easy comprehension of the subject. The sub-sections in larger type (num-
bered 1, 2, 3, &c.) contain of themselves a complete outline, and we think will be found sufficient, with the accompanying paradigms or examples, for a course of elementary study. Details of form or structure, requiring to be committed to memory only as they occur in reading, are put in smaller type, marked a, b, c, &c. And the points of philology, or special criticism, which appear to throw valuable side-light upon the subject, interesting chiefly to teachers or special students, are contained in the form of Notes, not interfering at all with the treatment in the text. By paying attention to this subordination of topics, teachers will avoid the serious error of crowding upon the student, prematurely, a mass of details, which might only perplex and obscure his real understanding of the subject.

Cambridge, April, 1872.
For the convenience of those who may wish to follow out special lines of study in general or comparative grammar, or to consult original sources on the history and development of the Latin, a list of works including the best and most recent authorities is here subjoined:

**Bopp:** *Vergleichende Grammatik des Sanskrit, etc.* [Indo-European languages]. 4 vols. 3d Ed. Berlin, 1868–70.

The original standard work on Comparative Forms. Later researches have corrected some erroneous details. English translation (poor), London: 1862. The best form is a French translation, with Notes and Introductions by Michel Bréal. Paris: 1866.

**Corssen:** *Aussprache, Vokalismus und Betonung der Lateinischen Sprache.* 2 vols. 2d Ed. Leipzig, 1868.

The greatest work on Latin *alone*, treating the language in reference to its own individual development, particularly as to the sounds (Lautekre). In the comparative portion, it needs the correction of other investigators.

**Curtius, G.:** *Grundzüge der Griechischen Etymologie.* 3d Ed. Leipzig: 1869.

Treats of Latin only by comparison; but is one of the most valuable works on the general subject.


Notes giving in connection with the Greek Grammar the simplest view of the doctrine of forms.

**Delbrück:** *Das Conjunctiv und Optativ, im Sanskrit und Griechischen.* Halle: 1871.


**Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis im indischen, etc.** Berlin, 1867.

Origin of the various Ablative constructions.

**Ferrar:** *Comparative Grammar of Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.* London: 1869. Vol. I., including as far as Pronouns.

A convenient hand-book in English.

**Fick:** *Vergleichendes Wörterbuch der Indo-Germanischen Sprachen.* Göttingen: 1870.

A Dictionary of Roots and Words supposed to have existed in the Indo-European tongue, with the corresponding words and derivatives in the various
languages. It can be used without a knowledge of German. No such book, however, is safe to use without careful study of the laws of consonant and vowel changes.


Kuhn: See Zeitschrift.


Storehouse of all Latin forms, 1200 pages, containing the result of late textual criticism. The standard work.


A thorough treatment of Latin Etymology on the principles of comparative grammar. Some errors have been pointed out in the N. A. Review, Jan. 1872.


The best summary of the results of comparative grammar as applied to Latin in short compass (137 pages).


A very convenient Sanskrit grammar, without some knowledge of which it is difficult to pursue the study of comparative grammar to advantage.


The best essays on all disputed points of comparative Philology. Indispensable to correct theories of individual investigators. Each volume has an Index; and there is also a general index to the first ten volumes.
CONTENTS.

PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Alphabet</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pronunciation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Quantity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Accent</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Inflection</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Definition; 2. Root and Stem; Inflected parts of speech; 4. Particles.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Gender</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Case</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Declension</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns.

<p>| 9. First Declension | 14   |
| 10. Second Declension | 15   |
| 11. Third Declension | 17   |
| II. Liquid Stems     | 19   |
| IV. Rules of Gender.—1. Nominative endings; 2. Stems; 3. Classified List | 23 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>CONTENTS.</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Fourth Declension</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Fifth Declension</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Irregular Nouns</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Defective; 2. Variable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Proper Names</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Personal and Reflexive</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Correlatives</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Moods</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Participles</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Gerund and Supine</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Tenses</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Verb Forms</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Esse and its Compounds</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Conjugation</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>First Conjugation</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Third Conjugation</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Regular; 2. Verbs in io; 3. Irregular Conjugation</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34. Fourth Conjugation</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. Deponent Verbs</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. Derivative Verbs</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. Irregular Verbs</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. Defective Verbs</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. Impersonal Verbs</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Periphrastic Forms</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PARTICLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41. Adverbs</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42. Prepositions</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. Conjunctions</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44. Derivation of Words</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART II.—SYNTAX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45. Definitions</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46. Of Nouns</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. Of Adjectives</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. Of Relatives</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Person of Verb; 2. Gender; 3. Antecedent; 4. As Connective; 5. Adverbs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. Verbs: Rules of Agreement</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Plural with Collectives, &amp;c.; 2. Nominative Subject.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50. Genitive</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

51. Dative . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 121
   1. With Transitives, 121; 2. With Intransitives, 122;
     3. Of Possession, 126; 4. Of Agency, 127; 5. Of
     Service, 128; 6. Of Nearness, 128; 7. Of Refer-
     ence, 129; (Ethical Dative, 130).

52. Accusative . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 131
   1. General Use (Cognate Accusative, 131); 2. Two Ac-
    cusatives; 3. Adverbial; 4. Special Uses.

53. Vocative . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 134

54. Ablative . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 134
   1. Of Separation, 185; 2. Of Source, 186; 3. Of Cause,
     137; 4. Of Agent, 138; 5. Of Comparison, 138;
     6. Of Means, 139; 7. Of Quality, 141; 8. Of Price,
     141; 9. Of Specification, 142; 10. Locative; Abla-
     tive Absolute, 142.

55. Time and Place . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 143
   1. Time; 2. Space; 3. Place (Locative Form, 145);
     4. Way by which.

56. Use of Prepositions . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 146

3. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

57. Use of Moods . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 148
   1. Indicative; 2. Subjunctive (Independent or Depend-
     ent; 3. Hortatory; 4. Optative; 5. Concessive;
     6. Dubitative); 7. Imperative; 8. Infinitive (Com-
     plementary, 154; With Subject-Accusative, 155;
     Historical, 156).

58. Use of Tenses . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 157
   1. Indicative; 2. Present (Conative, 157; Historical,
     158); 3. Imperfect; 4. Future; 5. Perfect; 6. Plu-
     perfect; 7. Future-Perfect; 8. Epistolary Tenses;
     9. Of Subjunctivo; 10. Sequence of Tenses (Primary
     and Secondary, 162); 11. Of Infinitive.

59. Conditional Sentences . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 166
   1. Protasis and Apodosis; 2. Particular and General Con-
     ditions; 3. Present and Past Conditions; 4. Future
     Conditions; 5. General Conditions.

60. Implied Conditions . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 172

61. Conditional Particles . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 174
   1. Comparative; 2. Concessive; 3. Provisory; 4. Mean-
     ing and Use.

62. Relations of Time . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 176
   1. Use as in Protasis; 2. Absolute and Relative Time,
     (Cum temporal, 178; causal, 180).

63. Cause or Reason . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 181
   1. With Indicative; 2. With Subjunctive.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64. Purpose (Final Clauses)</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Relatives or Conjunctions; 2. Forms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65. Consequence or Result (Consecutive Clauses)</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Subjunctive with ut (ne); 2. Of Characteristic.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66. Intermediate Clauses</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Subjunctive of Citation; 2. Dependent Clauses.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67. Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Indirect Narrative (Subject-Accusative, Relative Clauses, Conditional Sentences, Questions), 188; 2. Indirect Questions, 190; 3. Indirect Commands, 191.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68. Wishes and Commands</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69. Relative Clauses (Classification of)</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70. Substantive Clauses</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71. Questions</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Interrogative Particles; 2. Double Questions; 3. Question and Answer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72. Participles</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73. Gerund and Gerundive</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74. Supine</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75. General Rules of Syntax</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76. Arrangement</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART III.—PROSODY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>77. Rhythm</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78. Rules of Quantity</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79. Feet</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80. Scanning</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81. Metre</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82. Forms of Verse</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83. Early Prosody</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. Reckoning of Time</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85. Measures of Value</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPPLEMENT | 287
### APPENDIX | 251
LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

FORMS OF WORDS (ETYMOLOGY).

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, wanting w.

Note.—The letter w is found, however, in many modern Latin words, especially proper names.

1. Classification.—The letters of the alphabet are classified as follows:—

a. Vowels (litterae vocales, or voice-letters): a, e, i, o, u, y. The following are Diphthongs (double-vowels): ae (æ), au, eu, oe (œ), ei, ui.

b. Consonants (litterae consonantes, i.e., sounding-with the vowels):—

Mutes: Labial surd p sonant b spirant f (v) nasal m

Lingual ,, t ,, d ,, [th] ,, n

Palatal ,, c (k), q ,, g ,, h ,, [ng]

Double Consonants, x (ca), z (ds).

Liquids: l, m, n, r.—Sibilants: surd s, sonant z.

The letters i (i) and u (u) at the beginning of a syllable before a vowel, also u in quis, suaedae, &c., are semi-vowels.

The consonants f, g, p, z, are never used at the end of a word.

Note.—The Aspirate (or breathing) h follows in inflection the rule of palatals; and was originally, in many words, a harsh guttural (kh), like the Greek χ, or the Spanish j. Its later sound was very slight, and in most languages derived from Latin has quite disappeared. Sometimes, as in аhеnеus (=аhеnеus), it seems to be used only to separate two vowels. It is not reckoned as a consonant in Prosody.
2. Early Forms.—The alphabet in the time of Cicero (N. D. ii. 37) consisted of "one and twenty letters." These were,

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, x.

y and z were added, in words derived from Greek. I and u, when used as consonants ("semi-vowels"), having the sound of y and w, are generally written j and v: as, juvenis for iuuenis.

a. In early use, c was not distinguished in form or sound from g. After the distinction was made, C was still used, conventionally, as the initial of names (Gaicus, Gnaeus) beginning properly with G. It came, in later use, to take the place of k, which was retained only in abbreviations, or as the initial letter of a few words, as Kalendae, Karthago, in which it is followed by a.

b. Till the age of Augustus, u was never, in good use, preceded in the same syllable by u or v. In many words, as in volt, servos, o was written where later custom allows u; while c was regularly used for qu in such words as cum (for quum), ecus (for equus), relicus (for reliquus), locuntur (for locquantur), and the like; also in cotidie (for quotidie), and a few other words. The old forms quom (for cum) and quor (for our) are also found.

c. At the end of a few words,—as sed, apud, illud,—t was anciently written instead of d. In words ending in -s, final s was often elided (Cic. Orat. 48), as in qualist (qualis-est); plenu' fidei (Senect. 1).

3. Changes.—Letters are often changed, according to general laws of inflection (vowel-increase), or to secure an easier or smoother sound (euphonic change); or have been altered or lost through long use (phonetic decay). Of such changes are the following:

a. Vowels are strengthened in inflection and derivation (vowel-increase): as, ago, elig (cf. tell, told); disco, doceo (cf. fall, fell; sit, set); pendo, pondus; persono, persōna; perfidus, fidus, foedus (cf. bind, band).

Note.—The primitive vowel-sound may be assumed to be a, as in father. Starting with this, and gradually contracting the palate, we form in succession the sound of e (a) and i (ε), leading to the semi-vowel j (y). By contracting the lips, we in like manner form the sound of o and u (ο), leading to the semi-vowel v (w). By contracting both palate and lips, we form the French sound of u,—in Greek v, and in Latin y. This, which is called the Vowel-Scale, is of great service in tracing the modifications of vowel-sounds. It may be represented thus:

"a o i, j y v, u"
b. Vowels are weakened by negligent pronunciation for long periods of time (phonetic decay). Thus, on one side of the scale, a becomes e, then i; or, on the other, becomes o, then u; while u and i meet in the French u (y): as, agmen, agminis; facio, conficio, confectum; salio, exsulto; sepelio, sepultus; ebur, eböris; maximus, maximus (cf. master, mister, mistress).

c. Two vowels coming together are contracted into a single sound: as, obit (obiiit), cogo (co-aggo), nil (nihil), debeo (de-hibeo), coetus (coitus), ingeni (cf. mayhem, main).

d. The semi-vowels j and v are lost before a vowel, contraction sometimes also taking place: as, obicit (obiciit), cônicit (coniicit), cunctus (conjunctus), rursus (reversus), contio ( conventio), môtum (movitum).

e. Between two vowels, or before m or n, s becomes r: as, genus, generic; maeroe, maestus; veternus (vetus-nus), carmen (casmen), dirimo (dis-imo), diribeo (dis-habeo).

f. When two consonants come together by derivation, inflection, or composition, an easier pronunciation is secured thus: —

1. The first is entirely assimilated to the second. Thus, a liquid, —m, n, or (less frequently) r— before another liquid is changed to that liquid [but r is not changed to m or n]: as, collego (con-lege), corrego (com-réggo), illudo (in-lúdo), illico (in-łóco), intellecto (inter-léggo), asellus (asínulhus). So d before l: as in lapidus (látidulus); and b (rarely) before a liquid: as, summittus (submittu).

2. The former is assimilated in kind. Thus: —a. A sonant before a surd becomes surd: as, tejo, texi (x=cs), tectum; nubo, nupsi, nuptum; coquo, cozi, coctum. —b. A surd before a sonant becomes sonant, as in segmentum (secolo). —c. A labial nasal before a dental mute sometimes becomes dental: contendo (com-tendo), jandudum (jam dudum), quantus (quamtus). —d. A dental nasal before a labial sometimes becomes labial: as, impono (in-pono). —e. d and t before t sometimes become s (see 4): as, equester (equet-ter), est (edte).

3. The former is lost, having probably been first assimilated. Thus: —a. d and t are lost before s, but sometimes only assimilated: as, pedes (pedets), vas (vads, vadis), esse (edse, edo). —b. c and g are lost before t and s when I or r precedes: as, sortus (=sartus, sartio), multi (=mulgsi, mulgeo), indultus (=indulgtus, indulgeo). —c. c and g are sometimes lost before m and n: as, exámen (exugmen), luna (luc- na), lumen (lu-cmen).

4. The second is partially assimilated to the first (as in English wrecked becomes, in pronouncing, rekt); in this case both are often changed. Thus, after n and l—rarely after other letters—t becomes s (the continued sound corresponding to the explosive t): as, mansus (=mantus, maneo), pulsus (pello), casus (cado), passus (=pattus, patior), sparsus (=spartus, spargo), tensus (tendo, but also tentus), fixus (figo, but fictus from fingo), maximus (for mag-timus), lapsus (labor), passus (pando).

Note. — After m, before s or t, p is inserted for euphony: as, sumo, sumpsi, sumptum. So hiemps for hiems.
$g$. Especially the final consonant of prepositions was assimilated to the initial consonant of verbs.

Thus, ad is assimilated before c, g, p, t; less regularly before l, r, s, and rarely before m; while before f, n, q, the form ad is to be preferred; —ab is not assimilated, but may take the form a, an, or abs; — in com (con, co), m is retained before b, p, m; is assimilated before l, n, r; is changed to n before c, d, f, g, i, q, s, v; varies between m and n before p; is sometimes assimilated (otherwise n) before r and l; and loses the final m in conecto, conicaco, conitor, conubium; — in usually changes n to m before b, m, p; before l the better orthography retains n; — ob and sub are assimilated before c, f, g, p, and sometimes before m; sub also before r and, in early Latin, b of these prepositions sometimes becomes p before s or t. The inseparable amb loses b before a consonant, and m is sometimes assimilated; — circum loses m before i (often); — s of dis before a vowel becomes r, and before a consonant is lost or assimilated; — the d of red and sed is generally lost before a consonant.

Note. — In most of these cases the later editions prefer the unaltered forms throughout; but the changes given above have good authority. Others, which are corruptions of the middle ages (as assum for adeum), would better be avoided.

$h$. The combinations cl and tl before a vowel are found interchanged in many words: as in nuntius or nuncius; contio or concio; but in these cases only one is correct: as, contio, dicio.

Note. — The substitution of c for t is an example of phonetic decay, and belongs to a later period of the language. In Italian, z, and in Spanish, c, has regularly taken the place of t in such combinations: as in nazione, nacio. The sound of s (assibilation) or of sh traceable in them led gradually to the adoption of this as the regular sound of c before e or i.

$i$. The aspirate h is occasionally used to indicate the hard sound of c, as in pulcher for pulcer. Many words are written sometimes with and sometimes without an initial h: as, arena or harena, ariolor or hariorlor, erus or herus. The combinations ph, th, are found only in words taken from the Greek.

$k$. The following words are variously spelt in different editions, inferior or rejected forms being marked †: —

Adolecens, adulescens; ancora, † anchora; annulus, annulus; arctus, artus; coccus, cocus; calum, calam; caeruleus, caeruleus; causa, causa; cespes, cespes; ceteri, † ceteri; cena, cena, cena; condicio, † condicio; conjunct, † conjunct; contio, † concio; dicio, † ditio; dunctat, dunctat; epistola, epistula; eundem, eundem; existo, existo (and other compounds of ex before s); femina, † femina; fenus, fnus, fnus; heres, † heres; haedus, † haedo; hiems(ps), † hyems; icerco, † eicerco; immo, impo; inclitus, † inclitus; intellego, intelligo; lacrma, † lacryma; littera, littera; litus, † littus; lubet, libet; maior, major; milia, † millia; multa, multa; † ne, ne; nequidquam, neguquam; numquam, munquam; † nuncio, nuntio; paullus, paulus; quiquid, quidquid; religio, religio; retul, retul; silva, † sylva;
1.2] ALPHABET.—PRONUNCIATION.

solennis, solennis; solers, sellers; sulfur, sulphur; tamquam, tanquam; thesaurus, thensaurus; thus, tus; tiro, tyre; unquam, unquam; ungo, ungus; verto, vorto; also, the gerund-forms -endus or -undus; and the superlative -imus or -imus.

Note. — Many of the above variations are due to the practice of writing from dictation, or by the ear, by which most MS. copies of the classics were made, — a single reader often dictating to numerous copyists, whose spelling was often corrupt, and without authority.

4. Combinations. — Two words are often united in writing, and sometimes in sound.

a. Conjunctions or other particles are thus connected: as in etenim, jamdau, siquis, and siquidem.

So the adverbial combinations quare, quamobrem, &c., as in English nevertheless, notwithstanding.

b. The verb est, is, is joined with the preceding word, especially in the old poets, or when the two would be united by elision: as, homost, periculumst.

c. Similar contractions are found in vin' (visne), scin' (scisne), sis (si vis), sodes (si audes), as in English, don't, won't.

5. Syllables. — In the division of syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is to be written with the latter.

a. This rule is usually extended to double consonants, or any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word: as, ho-spes, ma-gnus, di-xit.

b. In compounds, the parts should be separated: as, ab-est, ob-latus.

Note. — Custom allows many other departures from the rule.

c. A syllable preceded by a vowel in the same word is called pure; when preceded by a consonant, impure.

d. An initial syllable ending, or a final syllable beginning, with a vowel, is called open; otherwise, it is called close.

2. Pronunciation.

1. Roman. — The Roman pronunciation of the Vowels was, no doubt, nearly like the Italian; which, with little variation, is that found in most of the continental languages of Europe. That of some of the Consonants is more uncertain. In the system of pronunciation founded on ancient
use, the long and short vowels are sounded respectively as follows:—

ä as in father.  Ä as in fast.
ö „ rein.  ë „ met.
ë „ machine.  ë „ piano.
ô „ holy.  ō „ wholly.
uí „ rude (oo in boot).  û „ full.

Note. — It is probable that ý (also û in maximus, &c.) was similar to the French u; it is usually, however, sounded like i.

a. The final or unaccented open sound of the vowels is nearly as in the last syllable of comma, yesterday, pity, hollow, cuckoo.

b. In Diphthongs, each vowel has its proper sound: thus, ae has nearly the sound of ay, au of ow, oe of oy, ui of we.

c. Of consonants, c and g are always hard, s always sharp; j has the sound of y, v of w, and n before palatals of ng; the combination bs is like ps, ch like k, and ph like f.

Note. — The sound of the vowels and diphthongs, as above given, has been generally adopted in this country. In regard to the consonants c, g, j, v, there is still considerable difference of usage.

2. Modern. — Modern custom has generally allowed Latin to be pronounced in each country according to the rules of its own language. What is known as the English Method adopts the following:—

a. The vowels and consonants have the same sound as in English. But there are no silent letters (except in scanning verse, by the usage called Elision); such words as dies, mare, audiere, pauperiët, having each as many syllables as vowels or diphthongs.

b. By American custom, final a is pronounced in the Italian way, as in comma. But in the monosyllables a, da, sta, qua, some persons retain the English sound.

c. The diphthongs ae, oe, are pronounced like ee; au like aw; eu like ew; ei and ui like i in kite; es and (in plural words) os at the end of a word, as in the English disease, morose.

d. The consonants c and g are made soft (like s and j) before e, i, y, ae, oe, eu; ch is always hard, as in chasm.

3. Quantity.

1. Quantity is the relative time occupied in pronouncing a syllable,—a long syllable being equal to two short ones.
Note.—The distinction of Quantity was carefully observed by the ancients, but came to be almost wholly disregarded in later times except in the composition of Latin verse.

2. Some of the most general rules of quantity are the following:

a. A vowel before another vowel is short: as in via, nihil.

b. A diphthong is long: as in aedes, foedus.

c. A syllable formed by contraction is long: as, mī (mīhi); nil (nihil); intrārat (intraverat); nēmo (nē hōmo).

Note.—In many text-books and old editions, contraction is denoted by a circumflex: as, mī, intrārat.

d. A syllable in which a vowel is followed by two consonants, or a double consonant, is long: as in rēctus, dūxit. Sometimes the vowel itself is made long, as before ns in praesēns.

e. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with 1 or r is common, — that is, it may be long in verse: as, ālācris.

Remark.—Many final syllables, originally long, are always found short in classic Latin: for example, the stem-vowel a of the first declension.

Note.—The sign (˘) denotes that a vowel is long; (̄) that it is short; (ⁿ) that it is common.

For particular rules of Quantity, see § 78.

4. Accent.

1. The accent of Latin words never falls on the final syllable, but is confined to one of the two preceding.

2. The following are general rules of accent:—

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable: as, ērant, they were; diēs, day.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long: as, āmi'cus, friend; if it is short or common, then on the Antepenult: as, dō'minus, ālācris.

Note.—The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

c. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: as, dēā'que, āmārē've, tībi'ne, itā'que, and so, as distinguished from ī'tāque, therefore.
Note.—The acute accent (') is sometimes used to denote stress of voice; the grave ("), to mark an adverb or conjunction; the circumflex ('), the ablative in a, the perfect in ēre, or a contracted syllable.

5. Inflection.

1. Inflection is a change made in the form of a word, to show its grammatical relations.

a. Changes of inflection sometimes take place in the body of a word, but oftener in its termination: as, vox, a voice; vocis, of a voice; vocō, I call; vocat, he calls; vocāvit, he has called.

b. Terminations of inflection had originally an independent meaning, and correspond nearly to the use of prepositions or personal pronouns in English: thus, in vocat, the termination is equivalent to he or she; and in vocis, to the preposition of.

c. Changes of inflection in the body of a verb usually denote relations of time or manner, and correspond to the use of auxiliary verbs in English: thus, in frangit (root frag-), he breaks or is breaking, the form of the word indicates Present time or continued action; while in frēgit, he broke or has broken, it indicates Past time or Completed action.

2. The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called the Stem.

a. The Stem contains the idea of the word without relations; but, in general, it cannot be used without some termination to express these. Thus the stem vōc- denotes voice; with -s added it becomes vox, a voice or the voice, as the subject or agent of an action; with -is it becomes vocis, and signifies of a voice.

b. A still more primitive form, expressing the main idea less definitely, and common also to other words, either in the same or other languages, is called a Root. For example, the root sta is found in the Sanskrit tīkāmi, Greek τορχυ, Latin sistere and stare, German stehen, and English stand.

Again, the root of the stem vōc- is vōc, which means not to call, or I call, or calling, but merely call; and cannot be used to mean anything without terminations. With ā it becomes vōcā-, the stem of the present vōcāmus, we call; with āvī- it is the stem of the perfect vōcāvī, I called; with ātō- it becomes the stem of the participle vōcātus, called; with ātion- it becomes the stem of vocationis, of a calling. With its vowel lengthened it becomes the stem of vox, a voice (that by which we call); with ālis added it means belonging to a voice; with āla, a little voice.
Note.—Thus, in inflected languages, words are built up from Roots, which at a very early time, long before Latin was a distinct language, were used alone to express ideas, as is now done in Chinese. Roots are modified into Stems, which, by inflection, become Words. The process by which they are modified, in the various forms of derivatives and compounds, is called Stem-building.

c. The Stem is sometimes the same with the Root: as in dūc-is, fer-t; but is more frequently formed from the root, either (1) by changing or lengthening its vowel, as in rēg-is, dūc-o; (2) by the addition or insertion of a consonant, as in tendo, pango; (3) by the addition of a terminal vowel, as in fugis, fuga; or (4) by derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language.

d. The terminations of inflection are variously modified by combining with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, leading to the various forms of Declension and Conjugation.

Note.—A termination beginning with a vowel is called an open affix; one beginning with a consonant, a close affix. When a close affix is joined to a consonant-stem, there is usually either a euphonic change, as rexi for reg-și, or a vowel appears, as reg-i-bus. But in most cases, what is called a connecting vowel really belongs to the stem, as in voca-mus, regi-mus.

3. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Partic平s have inflections of declension, to denote gender, number, and case; and Verbs of conjugation, to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

4. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called Particles: these are Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, with Adverbs of time, place, and manner.

Note.—The term Particles is sometimes limited to such words as num, -ne, an (interrogative), non, ne (negative), si (conditional), &c., which are used simply to indicate the form or construction of a sentence. Interjections are not properly to be classed among parts of speech, and differ little from inarticulate sounds. For convenience, a list is given of those in most common use, following the conjunctions (p. 95).

6. Gender

1. The gender of Latin nouns is either natural or grammatical.

a. Natural gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, puer, boy; puella, girl; donum, gift.
b. Many masculine nouns have a corresponding feminine form: as, servus, serva, slave; cliens, clienta, client; victor, victrix, conqueror. Most designations of persons (as, nauta, sailor; miles, soldier), usually though not necessarily male, are masculine.

c. Grammatical gender is a like distinction where no sex exists in the object, and is shown by the form of the adjective joined with it: as, lapis magnus (m.), a great stone; manus mea (v.), my hand.

d. A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, mancipium tuum, your slave. Names of classes or bodies of persons may be of either gender: as, exercitus (m.), acies (v.), and agmen (n.), army; and the feminine opera, workmen, copiae, troops.

Note.—What we call grammatical gender is in most cases the product of the imagination at a rude age, when language was in the course of growth. Thus a River was seen, or a Wind was felt, as a living creature, violent and strong, and so is masculine; a Month is a guide or divider of tasks, and so is masculine; and the fable of Atlas shows how similar living attributes were ascribed to Mountains, which, in the northern fables, are the bones of giants. Again, the Earth, or a country or city, seems the mother of its progeny; the Tree shelters and ripens its fruit, as a brooding bird her nest of eggs; and, to this day, a Ship is always referred to by a feminine pronoun.

Again, in the East and South, the Sun, from its fierce heat and splendor, is masculine, and its paler attendant, the Moon, feminine; while, among northern nations, the Sun (perhaps for its comforting warmth) is feminine, and the Moon (the appointer of works and days) masculine. The rules of grammatical gender only repeat and extend these early workings of the fancy.

2. Names of Male beings, together with Rivers, Winds, and Mountains are masculine; names of Female beings, Cities, Countries, Plants, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are feminine.

Note.—Most of the above may be recognized by their terminations, according to the rules of gender under the several declensions.

a. Names of Rivers are masculine, except a few, chiefly in a.

These are Alula, Allia, Druentia, Duria, Garumna, Matrona, Mosella; also Lethe and Styx. Many are variable.

Note.—Names of Months are properly Adjectives, the masculine noun mensis being understood.

b. Names of Towns, Islands, and Trees in us are feminine; also, many names of Plants and Gems in us.

c. Indeclinable nouns, Terms or Phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their forms, are neuter: as, nihil, nothing; gummi, gum; scire tuum, your knowing; triste vale, a sad farewell; hoc ipsum diu, this same word diu; hoc totum diserte dicere (De Or. ii. 10), this whole matter of eloquent speaking.
3. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of \textit{Common Gender}: as, \textit{exuls}, exile; \textit{bos}, ox or cow.

\textbf{Note.} — When a noun signifying a thing without life is both masculine and feminine, — as, \textit{dies}, day; \textit{finis}, end, — it is sometimes said to be of Doubtful Gender.

4. A few names of animals are always connected with adjectives of the same gender, either masculine or feminine, independent of sex. They are called \textit{Epicene}.

Thus \textit{lepus}, hare, is always masculine, and \textit{vulpes}, fox, feminine. To denote a male fox we may say, \textit{vulpes mascula}; or a female hare, \textit{lepus femina}.

7. \textbf{Case}.

There are in Latin six Cases, which express the relations of nouns to other words. They are usually put in the following order: 1. Nominative; 2. Genitive; 3. Dative; 4. Accusative; 5. Vocative; 6. Ablati- 
vative.

1. The \textbf{Nomina
tive} is the case of the Subject of a pro-
position: as,
\textit{pater meus adest}, \textit{my father is here}.

2. The \textbf{Genitive} (of') is used like the English possessive; also with many adjectives and verbs, especially those of memory or feeling: as,
\textit{patris ejus amicus miseretur mei}, \textit{his father's friend pities me}.

3. The \textbf{Dative} (to or for) is the case of the Indirect Object, and is used to denote the person whose interest is concerned: as,
\textit{dedit mihi cultellum: magno mihi usui erat}, \textit{he gave me a pocket-knife: it was of great service to me}.

4. The \textbf{Accusative} (objective) is the case of the Direct Object, and is used after most prepositions: as,
\textit{pater me ad se vocavit et in hortum duxit}, \textit{[my] father called me to him, and led me into the garden}. 
5. The **Vocative** is used in address: as,

huc vēni, care mi filīōle, *come here, my dear little son*.

**Note.** — As the Vocative is independent of the other words in a sentence, it is by some grammarians not reckoned as a Case.

6. The **Ablative** (*by, from, with*) is used with many verbs and prepositions, especially to denote separation or instrument: as,

in horto ludebāmus, et cultello me laesit, *we were playing in the garden, and he hurt me with a knife*.

**Note.** — All, excepting the nominative and vocative, are by the ancient grammarians called "Oblique Cases."

7. In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the **Locative**), denoting the *place where,* — generally the same in form as the dative (§ 55. 3. c.) : as,

Rōmae vel Athēnis esse velim, *I should like to be at Rome or Athens*.

8. **Declension.**

1. There are five Declensions, or modes of declining nouns. They are distinguished by the termination of the Genitive Singular, and by the final letter (characteristic) of the Stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl.</th>
<th>Gen. Sing.</th>
<th>ae</th>
<th>Characteristic a (anciently ā)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>i (ius)</td>
<td>ę</td>
<td></td>
<td>ő</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>or a Consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ūs (uis)</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ő</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>ė</td>
<td>ő</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

α. The stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant-stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel-stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

**Note.** — For the division of vowel and consonant-stems in the Third Declension, see § 11.

β. The Nominative of most masculine and feminine nouns (except in the first declension) is formed from the Stem by adding a.

**Note 1.** — Many, however, end in o, or in the liquids l, n, r,—the original s (sometimes with the final letter also) having been lost through phonetic decay. In some (as in *filius*) the stem-vowel is modified before the final s; and in some, as in *ager*, a vowel is inserted in the stem.
Note 2. — The s of the nominative is the remnant of an old demonstrative sa, which is found (with modifications) in the Sanskrit personal pronoun, in the Greek article, and in the English she.

2. The following are general Rules of Declension:—

a. The Vocative is always the same with the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in us of the second declension.

Note. — In the first and second declensions the vocative ends in the (modified) stem-vowel. Most of the words likely to be used in address are of this form; and, in practice, few other words have a vocative.

b. In Neuters, the nominative and accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in ā.

c. Except in some neuters, the accusative singular always ends in m, and the accusative plural in a.

d. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the dative singular ends in i.

e. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

f. The genitive plural always ends in um.

3. Case-Endings. The original terminations of the Cases, in Latin, were probably the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. m., f.</th>
<th>Plur. m., f.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. s (or lost) m, — es ā</td>
<td>Gen. os(is) um, rum(sum)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. i</td>
<td>Acc. m, cm m, — es ā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ed</td>
<td>i bus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — These became so worn by use, and so united with the stem, that they are distinguishable only in consonant-stems. In some instances, one case was substituted for another, or two were merged in one. The combinations are given below as case-endings. The name "stem" is sometimes, conveniently though incorrectly, given to that part of the word — as serv- in servus — which precedes the case-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl. I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>V.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>s, um, os, on enus</td>
<td>t (see p. 23.)</td>
<td>us, ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>s (al) es</td>
<td>i (ius) o, u e</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. es (al)</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>us (uis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>em (im) in, en um, ā</td>
<td>um, ē</td>
<td>ēm</td>
<td>ēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. ē</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ē (i), y</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur. | n. v. ē | ē | ē | ē | ēs |
| G. ērum (um) | ērum (um, om) ēs | um, ium | uum | ērum | ēs |
| D. A. ēbus (ēbus) | ēbus | ēbus | ēbus (ēbus) | ēbus | ēs |

N.B. Rare forms in parenthesis; Greek forms in italics.
NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION.  [9: 1, 2, 3.

9. FIRST DECLENSION.

The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in a. Latin nouns have the Nominative like the stem.

**SINGULAR.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>stella, a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stella, a star</td>
<td>stella, thou star!</td>
<td>stella, with a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, ye stars!</td>
<td>stellae, with a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, ye stars!</td>
<td>stellae, with a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>stellam, a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stellam, a star</td>
<td>stellae, ye stars!</td>
<td>stellae, with a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>stella, thou star!</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stella, a star</td>
<td>stella, thou star!</td>
<td>stella, with a star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>stella, with a star</td>
<td>stellae, of a star</td>
<td>stellae, to a star</td>
<td>stellam, a star</td>
<td>stellae, ye stars!</td>
<td>stellae, with a star</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Gender.** Most nouns of the first declension are Feminine. Nearly all the exceptions are such as are masculine from their signification: as, nauta, sailor. Also, Hadria, the Adriatic.

2. **Case Forms.**—a. The genitive singular anciently ended in āī, which is occasionally found in a few authors: as, aulāī. The same ending occurs in the dative, but only as a diphthong.

   b. There is also an old genitive in ās, found in the word familias used in certain combinations, as, pāter (māter, filius, filia) familias, father of a family, &c.

   c. The Locative form for the singular ends in ae, and for the plural in is: as, Romae, Athēnis.

   d. The genitive plural is sometimes found in um instead of ārum, especially in compounds with -cōla and -gēna, signifying dwelling and descent: as, caelīcolum, of the heavenly ones.

   e. The dative and ablative plural of dea, goddess, filia, daughter, liberta, freed-woman, equa, mare, mula, she-mule, end in an older form -ābus. But, except when the two sexes (as in wills, &c.) are mentioned together, the form in is is also used.

3. **Greek Nouns.**—Some Greek nouns (chiefly proper names) end in ās, ēs (m.), and ē (f.) in the nominative, and ān or ēn in the accusative; those in ē have the genitive in ēs (stem ā or ē):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>comētēs (a)</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
<td>daphnēs (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>comētēs</td>
<td>daphnēs (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>comētēs</td>
<td>daphnēs (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>comētēn (am)</td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>comētē</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
<td>daphnē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>comētē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
<td>daphnē (ē)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10: 1, 2, 3.] SECOND DECLENSION.

Note. — This form is found only in the singular; the plural is regular: as, comete, arum, &c. It includes (besides proper names) about thirty-five words, several being names of plants; among others the following, those marked † having also regular forms in a:— bulae, council; geometreus, geometer; † grammatica, grammar; harpe, sickle; magice, magic; † musice, music; † ode, ode; pandectes, repertory; † patriarches, patriarch; † prophetes, prophet; sophistes, sophist; † tetrarches, tetrarch; thymele, leader’s-stand; † tiaras, tiara.

10. SECOND DECLENSION.

The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in o (as of vir, viro-, and of servus, servo-).

Note. — This form is an original ë-stem, to which the ë-stem of the first declension is the corresponding feminine.

1. The Nominative is formed from the Stem by adding s (in neuters m), the characteristic ð being weakened to ū.

2. In most nouns whose stem ends in ro-, the s is not added, but the o is lost, e being inserted before r.

Thus ager, field (stem agro-), is the same as the Greek ἄγρος. The exceptions are, hesperus, numerus, juniperus, morus, numerus, uterus.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puĕr</td>
<td>libĕr</td>
<td>servŭs (ōs)</td>
<td>dōnum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puĕrī</td>
<td>librī</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>donī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puĕrō</td>
<td>librō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>donō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puĕrum</td>
<td>librūm</td>
<td>servum (om)</td>
<td>donum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>puĕr</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>servē</td>
<td>donum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puĕrō</td>
<td>librō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>donō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

| Nom.  | puĕrī | librī | servī | donā |
| Gen.  | puĕrōrum | librōrum | servŏrum | donŏrum |
| Dat.  | puĕrīs | librīs | servīs | donīs |
| Acc.  | puĕrōs | librōs | servōs | donā |
| Voc.  | puĕrī | librī | servī | donā |
| Abl.  | puĕrīs | librīs | servīs | donīs |

Note. — The old form os, om (for us, um), is sometimes used after u or v: as, servos, servum (§ 1. 2. b.).

3. Gender. — Nouns ending in us (os), er, ir, are Masculine (exc. on p. 16); those ending in um (om) are Neuter. (But which stems are m. or n. can only be learned from the Dictionary.)
SECOND DECLENSION. [10: 4, 5, 6.

a. But names of towns in us (os) are Feminine: as, Corinthus. Also, arctus (os), the Polar Bear; alvus, belly; carbasus, linen (plural carbasae, sails, n.); obolus, distaff; himus, ground; vannus, winnowing-shovel; with many names of Plants and Gems.

b. The following are Neuter: pelagus, sea; virus, poison; vulgus (rarely m.), the crowd. Their accusative, as of all neuters, is the same as the nominative.

4. Case Forms. a. The Locative form for the singular of this declension ends in i: as, humili, on the ground; Corinthi, at Corinth. For the plural, is: as, Philippis, at Philippi.

b. The genitive of nouns in ius or ium ends by earlier use with a single i: as, filli, of a son; ingeni, of genius.

The same contraction occurs with the gen. sing. and the dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in aius and eius: as, Graias, Pompaei.

c. Proper names in ius lose e in the vocative: as, Vergili; also, filius, son, genius, divine guardian; and the possessive meus, my: as, audi, mi fili, hear, my son.

d. Greek names in ius have the vocative ie; and adjectives derived from proper names—as Lacedemonius—also form the vocative in ie.

e. In the genitive plural, um (or, after v, om) is often found for orum, especially in poets.

f. Deus, god, has vocative deus; plural, nominative and vocative dei or di (dii); dative and ablative deis or dis (dis).

For the genitive plural deorum, divum or divom (from divus) is often used.

5. The following stems in ero, in which e belongs to the stem, retain e throughout: puer, boy; gener, son-in-law; socer, father-in-law; vesper, evening; with compounds in -fer and -ger: as, lucifer, -feri, light-bringer; armiger, -geri, armor-bearer.

a. Vir, man, has the genitive viri; the-adjective satur, sated, has saturi; vesper has abl. vespere (loc. vesperi).

b. Liber, a name of Bacchus, also has Liberi; so, too, the pl. liberi, children.

6. The following, which insert e, are declined like liber: ager, field; aper, boar; arbiter, judge; auster, south-wind; caper, goat; coluber, snake; conger, sea-eel; culter, knife; faber, smith; fiber, beaver; geomiter, geometer; magister, master; minister, servant; oleaster, wild-olive; onager (grus), wild-ass; scomber (brus), mackerel.
11. Greek Nouns. a. Many Greek names in ēus, as Orpheus (being of the third declension in Greek), have gen. ei or eos, dat. ei; acc. ea; voc. eu; abl. eo.

b. Many in es, belonging to the third declension, have also a gen. in i: as, Thucydidi.

c. Some Greek names in er have a form in us: as, Teucer, Teucrus.

d. About twenty words have the Greek ending ôs (m. or f.) or ôn (n.): as, mythos, i, o, on, e, o; plural i, orum, is, os: parēlion, i (l), io; plural ia, iorum, iis. 
Athōs and Androgeōs (Æn. vi. 20.) have a gen. in o. 
 Argos (n. nom. and acc.) has the plural form Argl, orum, &c.

11. THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Third Declension are most conveniently classed according to their Stems, whether ending in a vowel, a liquid, or a mute.

I. Vowel-Stems.

1. Vowel-stems of this declension end in i. Thus that of turris is turri-; and that of mare, mari-.

a. Nouns of this class are parisyllabic; that is, the oblique cases of the singular have no more syllables than the nominative. (For exceptions in al, ar, see 2, c.)

b. A few stems ending in u-, as of grus, sus, were treated as consonant-stems. (See iii. 4, a.)

2. The Nominative, except in neuters, is formed from the stem by adding s.

a. About thirty nouns (as nubes) change ë to s in the nominative (Compare Note, p. 22).

These are acinaces, alces, codex, cautes, clades, compages, contages, crates, fames, feles, fides, labes, moles, nubes, proles, propages, sedes, sepes, sordes, strages, subdiles, sudes, tabes, torques, tudes, vates, veses, verres.

b. The nominative of a few stems in ri- does not add s, but loses i, inserting e before r. These are imber, linter, uter, venter.

c. The nominative of neuters is the same as the stem, with the change of ë to s. But, when i is preceded by al or ar, the e is lost (except in collare, mare, navale, tibiale).

Note.—This latter class were originally neuters of adjectives in alis, aris; and, when used as adjectives, retain the e. They are the following: animal, cervicall, cubital, putēal, toral, tribunāl; calcar, cochlear, exemplar, lacūnar, laquear, luminar, palear, pulvinar, torcular, vestigul.
### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>turrēs</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>mārē</th>
<th>calcār ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>turrīs</td>
<td>nūbīs</td>
<td>marīs</td>
<td>calcārīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>turī</td>
<td>nūbī</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>calcār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>turrīm (ēm)</td>
<td>nubem</td>
<td>marē</td>
<td>calcār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>turrīs</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
<td>marē</td>
<td>calcār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>turī (ē)</td>
<td>nūbē</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>calcārīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>turrēs</th>
<th>nūbēs</th>
<th>marīa</th>
<th>calcāria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>turrīm</td>
<td>nūbium</td>
<td>marium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>turībus</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>marībus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>turrīs (ēs)</td>
<td>nubēs</td>
<td>maria</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>turrēs</td>
<td>nubēs</td>
<td>maria</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>turībus</td>
<td>nubibus</td>
<td>marībus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Case Forms.**

   a. The regular form of the accusative singular, m. and f., is im (as am, um, em of the other vowel-declensions). But, in most nouns, this was supplanted by the consonant-form em; and it is only retained in the following:

   1. Exclusively (1) in Greek nouns and names of rivers; (2) in burīs, cucāmis, ravis, sitis, tussis, vis; (3) in adverbs in tim (being acc. of nouns in tis), with partim and amussim;

   2. Along with em in febris, restis, turris, secūris, sementis, and (in one or two passages) in many other words.

   b. The regular form of the ablative singular is i (as in the other declensions ā, ō, ū, ē, with loss of the original ē). This was also supplanted by ē, and retained only:

   1. Exclusively (1) in those above having accusative in im; also securīs, and the following adjectives used as nouns: aequalis, annālis, aequalis, consularis, gentilis, molāris, primipilāris, tribulīs; (2) in neuters (as above): except baccar, jubār, and sometimes (in verse) mare, rete;

   2. Along with e in avis, clavis, febris, finis, ignis (always aquā et igni interdici), imber, navis, ovis, pelvis, puppis, sementis, strigālis, turris; and the following adjectives used as nouns: affinis, bipennis, canalis, familiaris, natalis, rivalis, sapiens, triremis, vocalis.

   3. The ablative of fames, hunger, is always of the Fifth declension. The defective manē, morning, has sometimes abl. manī.

   4. Most names of towns in e — as Preneeste, Cēre — and the mountain Soracte, have the ablative in e.
11, II.] THIRD DECISION. — LIQUID STEMS.

C. The regular nominative plural would be is, but this is rarely found. The regular accusative is is common, but not exclusively used in any word.

d. The regular genitive plural itum is retained by all except the following:

1. ambages and volucris (always um); (2) vates (commonly um);
2. apis, cedes, clades, suboles (rarely um); (4) canis, juvenis, mensis; had not originally vowel-stems, and retain um; but mensis has both.

4. Greek Nouns. — A few Greek nouns in is have the acc. im or in, voc. i, abl. i.

Many in es have forms of the First or Second Declension: as, Achilles, gen. ei or i, dat. i, acc. en, ea, voc. e, abl. i.

Note. — Nouns such as urbs, pars, having the genitive plural itum and the accusative (occasionally) is, were originally vowel-stems.

II. LIQUID STEMS.

In nouns whose stem ends in a liquid (l, n, r), the nominative has no termination, but is the same as the stem, except when modified as follows:

a. Final n of the stem is dropped in masculines and feminines, except some Greek nouns: as, león-is, leo; legión-is, legio.

b. Stems ending in din-, gin- (mostly feminine) retain in the nominative an original o: as, virgo. Those in in- preceded by any other consonant retain an original ō: as, carmēn, inis, in.; cornicen, inis, ōn. (Exceptions iv. 2, b.)

c. Nouns whose stem ends in tr retain in the nominative an original e: as, pater (compare i. 2, b.).

d. In neuters whose stem ends in ēr, ōr, ēr, the r was originally a, which is retained in the nominative, ō of the stem being weakened into ū: as, optis, ōris: corpus, ōris. A few masc. and fem. stems also retain a. (Exceptions iv. 2, b.)

e. Stems in ll, rr, lose one of these liquids in the nominative.

f. The following have gen. plur. itum: glis, mas, ren, mus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. Consul.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING. Name.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>consīl</td>
<td>consūlēs</td>
<td>nōmēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>consīlis</td>
<td>consūlum</td>
<td>nomīnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>consūl</td>
<td>consūlbus</td>
<td>nomīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>consūlem</td>
<td>consūlēs</td>
<td>nomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>consūl</td>
<td>consūlēs</td>
<td>nomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>consūle</td>
<td>consūlbus</td>
<td>nominē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Declension. — Mute Stems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>N. V.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Honor, M.</td>
<td>hōnōr</td>
<td>honōrōs</td>
<td>honōre</td>
<td>honōre</td>
<td>honōre</td>
<td>hōnōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lion, M.</td>
<td>leo</td>
<td>leōnis</td>
<td>leōni</td>
<td>leōnem</td>
<td>leōne</td>
<td>leōnes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father, M.</td>
<td>pāter</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>patri</td>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>patre</td>
<td>pātres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree, F.</td>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>arborīs</td>
<td>arborī</td>
<td>arborem</td>
<td>arbore</td>
<td>arbōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maiden, F.</td>
<td>virgo</td>
<td>virginis</td>
<td>virgini</td>
<td>virginem</td>
<td>virgine</td>
<td>virgines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work, N.</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>opēris</td>
<td>opēri</td>
<td>opēra</td>
<td>operea</td>
<td>opērēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. Mute Stems.

Masculine or feminine nouns whose stem ends in a Mute form the nominative by adding 

Neuters have for nominative the simple stem.

**Note.** — If the stem ends in two consonants, the genitive plural generally has *lum* (see 1. 4. n.). Some of these, originally *l*-stems, have also an old nominative in *ls*: *as*, *trubs*, *urbs*.

1. **Labial.** If the mute is a labial (b, p), ș is simply added to the stem.

   a. Stems in *lpt*- retain in the nominative an original e, the vowel having been weakened in the other cases: *as*, *princeps*, *lptis*.

   b. Most stems in *clp*- (m.) are compounds of the root *cap* (in *capio*) take: *as*, *aneps* (avi-*eps*), bird-catcher.

   In these the stem sometimes has the form *cup*- as *aucŭpis*.

   c. The only noun whose stem ends in *m* is *hiems*, winter. (For the insertion of *p*, see note, foot of p. 3.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. City, F. PLUR.</th>
<th>SING. Chief.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. urbs</td>
<td>urbes</td>
<td>princeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. urbs</td>
<td>urbiwm</td>
<td>princĭpis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. urbi</td>
<td>urbius</td>
<td>princĭpi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. urbes</td>
<td>urbes</td>
<td>princĭpem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. urbs</td>
<td>urbes</td>
<td>princeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. urbe</td>
<td>urbius</td>
<td>princĭpe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Lingual.** If the mute is a lingual (d, t), it is suppressed before ș.

   a. Stems in *xlt*- (m. or f.) retain in the nominative an original e: *as*, *hospēs*, *ıtis*. (In a few, as comēs, the e is not original.)

   **Note.** — The only nominative in *t* is *caput*, *ıtis*.

   b. Neuter stems ending in two consonants, and those ending in *ät*—(Greek nouns), drop the final lingual in the nominative: *as*, *cor*, *cordis*; *pōēma*, *ätis*.
### Third Decension — Mute Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>Guard.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>custōs</td>
<td>custōdes</td>
<td>comōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>custōdis</td>
<td>custōdum</td>
<td>comitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>custōdi</td>
<td>custōdibus</td>
<td>comiti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>custōdem</td>
<td>custōdes</td>
<td>comitem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>custōs</td>
<td>custōdes</td>
<td>comes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>custōde</td>
<td>custodibus</td>
<td>comite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sing.** Agr. | Heart. M. | Stone. M. | Family. F. | Head. N. | Form. N. |
---|---|---|---|---|---|
N. V. | atās | cor | lapis | gēna | caput | poēma |
G. | atādis | cordis | lapidis | gentis | capītis | poēmātis |
D. | atāti | cordi | lapidi | genti | capiti | poēmati |
A. | atātem | cor | lapidem | gentem | caput | poēma |
A. | atāte (i) | corde | lapide | gente | capite | poēmate |

**Plur.**

N. A. V. | atātes | corda | lapides | gentes | capīta | poēmāta |
G. | atātum (ium) | lapidum | gentium | capītum | poēmātum |
D. Ab. | atātibus | cordibus | lapidibus | gentibus | capītibus | poēmātis |

(or ἱβας)

### c. Case-forms

Some nouns of lingual stems have forms of the vowel-declension.

1. Participles used as nouns, and a few others originally 1-stems, occasionally have the ablative in 1: as, continenti, øtati, partì, sorti.

2. Stems in at- (originally 1-stems), nt- (participles used as nouns), d or t preceded by a consonant, — also dis, lis, and pons, — regularly have the genitive plural ium.

3. Names denoting birth or abode, with stems in at-, it- (originally adjectives), with penates, optimates, regularly have the gen. plur. ium.

### d. Greek neuters (as poēma), with nom. sing. in a, frequently end the dat. and abl. plur. in is, and rarely the gen. in òrum.

### 3. Palatal. If the mute is a palatal (c, g), it unites with s in the nominative, forming x.

a. Stems in to- (short i) have nom. in ex, and are chiefly masculine; those in to- (long i) retain i, and are feminine.

b. In nix, nīvis, snow, the nom. retains a palatal lost in the other cases (original stem sing-, compare nīgît); supellex (σετλίς) is partly a lingual, partly an 1-stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Peak, M.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>apex</td>
<td>apīces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>apīcis</td>
<td>apīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>apīci</td>
<td>apīcibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>apīcem</td>
<td>apīces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>apex</td>
<td>apīces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>apīce</td>
<td>apīcibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Declension: Mute Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peace</td>
<td>Pax</td>
<td>Paces</td>
<td>Pacem</td>
<td>Pace</td>
<td>Pace</td>
<td>Few monosyllables, as faux (def.), arx, have gen. plur. lum; in lux, an abl. luci occurs rarely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King</td>
<td>Rex</td>
<td>Regem</td>
<td>Regibus</td>
<td>Rege</td>
<td>Rege</td>
<td>Sane, Subus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>Lux</td>
<td>Lucem</td>
<td>Lucibus</td>
<td>Luce</td>
<td>Luce</td>
<td>Sane, Subus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Frux</td>
<td>Frugem</td>
<td>Frugibis</td>
<td>Fruge</td>
<td>Fruge</td>
<td>Sane, Subus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citadel</td>
<td>Arx</td>
<td>Arcem</td>
<td>Arcebis</td>
<td>Arce</td>
<td>Arce</td>
<td>Sane, Subus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throat</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4. Peculiar Forms

- The vowel-stems gru-, su-, simply add s, retaining the original ū; grūs has also a nom. grūs; sus has in pl. subus.

- In bov- (bou-), the diphthong ou becomes ū (bōs, bōvis); in nav- (nau-) an i is added (nāvis, is); in Jōv- (=Zeīx) the diphthong becomes ū in Jū-piter (pāter), gen. Jōvis, &c.

- In ër, ëmēris (N.1.), jēcur, jecinōris (N.1.), the nom. has been formed from a shorter stem; so that these words show a combination of two distinct forms.

- Of the many original s-stems, only vas, vasis (pl. vasa, orum) retains its proper declension.

#### Note

- Of apparent s-stems, as (assis) is an i-stem; of os, ossis, the original stem is osti- (cf. ërēcov and Sanskrit asthi); while the others have either (1) passed into r-stems (changed from s) in most of the cases, as honor, ĕris, corpus, ēris (see liquid stems); or (2) have broken down into i-stems, as moles (cf. molestus), nubes (Sanskrit nabhas), sedes (cf. ësos), vis (vīres), &c.

### Greek Nouns

Many nouns, originally Greek, mostly proper names, retain Greek forms of inflection.

- Stems in In- (1 long) add s in the nominative, omitting n: as, delphis (but also delphin), Salamis. So Phoroya.
b. Most stems in ἱδ- (nom. ἵς) often have also the forms of i-stems: as, ὄροσ, ἱδις (ἴδος) or ἵς; acc. ἱςδε (ἴδα) or ἵς; abl. ἱδε or ἵς. But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. ἱδεμ (ίδα), abl. ἱδε,—not ἵς and ἵς. These follow the forms in Greek, which depend on the place of the accent.

c. Stems in ὄν- sometimes retain ἅ: as, Ἀγαμήμον (or Ἀγαμημὸν), ὄνις, acc. ὄνα.

d. Stems in ὄντ- form the nom. in ὄν: as, ἡρός, Ἕρως, ἕρων; but a few are occasionally latinized into ὄν- (nom. ὀ): as, Ὅρκος, ὄνις.

e. Stems in ἄντ-, ἄντ-, have nom. in ᾳς, ἰς: as, ἀδάμας, ἀντίς; Ἀμφῖππος, ἐντίς. So a few in ὄντ- (contr. from ὄντ-) have ἅς: as, Ἀράχνης, ὅντις. Occasionally the Latin form of nominative is also found: as, Ἀτλας, ἄλευθερος.

f. Case-Forms.—Many Greek nouns (especially in the poets) have gen. ὅς, acc. ἄς; plur. nom. ἔς, acc. ἄς: as, ἀέρ, ἀεθέρ, ὄρατος, ἀτος (ἴδος), ἄλαμπας (ἀδίς or ἱδος), ἄλαμπας (κίς or ὀκός), ἀλαις (ἴδος), Ὀρφέας (eos).

g. A few in ὑς have acc. ὑ κ, voc. ὑ; abl. ὑ ὅ: as, χέλης, ὑ κ, ὑ κ; ὕκ, ὑ κ, ὑ κ. ὑ κ, ὑ κ.

h. Several feminine names in ὀ have gen. sing. ὀς, all the other cases ending in ὀ; they may also have regular forms: as, Ὁδος; gen. ὑδος or ὅδος; dat. ὁδος or ὅδος, &c.

IV. Rules of Gender.

1. The following are general Rules of Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to the termination of the nominative.

   Note.—Rules of gender are mostly only rules of memory, as there is no necessary connection between the form and gender. In fact, most nouns could originally be inflected in all genders.

   a. Masculine endings are ὀ, or, ὄς, ἐρ, ἐς (ἴδις, ὑτίς).

   b. Feminine endings are ἀς (ἄτις), ἐς (ἴς), ἐς, ὑς, ἐς (following a consonant); also, ὁ, ὅ, ὅ (abstract and collective), and ὀς (ἴδις, ὑτίς).

   c. Neuter endings are ἀ, ἐ, ἰ, ὅ; ὅ, ὅ, ὅ; ὅ, ὅ, ὅ; ὅ (μήνις); ar, ὕ, ὅ (ἐρις, ὅρις).

   2. The following are general Rules of Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems.

   Note.—See the Note above. But the preference of masc. and fem. (especially fem.) for long vowels cannot be accidental (compare long α of 1st declension). Some affixes also prefer one or another gender: as, τὸρ (originally τὰρ), masculine; τί, feminine; men (originally man), neuter.
THIRD DECLENSION: RULES OF GENDER. [11: IV.

a. Vowel Stems. Stems in ē, having s in the nominative, are feminine, except those mentioned below (3, a). Those having nominative in ē, or which drop the 'e, are neuter.

b. Liquid Stems. Stems in ē are masculine, except stil, fel, mel, and sometimes sal (n). Those in min are neuter, except homo, nemo, flamen (m.). Others in in are masculine, except pollen, unguen (n.). Those in ēn are masculine. Those in dīn, gīn, iōn (abstract and collective) are feminine. Others in ēn, with cardo, margo, ordo, unio, senio, quaternio, are masculine. Those in r preceded by a short vowel are neuter, except nearly 30 given below. Those in r preceded by a long vowel are masculine, except soror, uxor, glōs, tellus, f.; orus, jus, pus, rus, tus (in which the long vowel is due to contraction), n.

c. Labial Stems (no neuters). Stems in b and m are feminine, except chalybs. Those in p are chiefly masculine (exceptions below).

d. Lingual Stems. Stems in ēd, ēd, ṭd, ṭd, ud, aud, are feminine, except dromas, pes, quadrupes, obses, præses, lapis (m.). Those in ēt, ūt, are feminine, except patris (as Arpinas), with penates and optimates. Those in ēd, ēt, are masculine, except merces and quies with its compounds. Those in ēt, ìt, are masculine, except abies, merges, seges, teges (f.), and those which are common from signification. Those in ēt are neuter; those in nt various (see List); those in ìt, òt, feminine. (For a few isolated forms, see List.)

e. Palatal Stems. Stems in c preceded by a consonant or long vowel are feminine, except calx (stone or heel), decumx, phœniex, storaex, vertex, m. Those in c preceded by a short vowel are chiefly masculine (for exceptions, see List); those in g, masculine, except frux, lex, phalanx, syrinx (also nix, nīvis).

3. The following are the Forms of Inflection of nouns of the Third Declension, classified according to their Stems.

a. Vowel-Stems.

ēs, ės: — about 35 nouns (original s-stems, list p. 17), feminine, except tudes, hammer; vates, prophet; verres, pig (m.).

īs, īs: — about 100 nouns, chiefly feminine.

Exc. — ēdilis, edile; amnis, river; anguis, snake; antes (pl.), ranks; assis, a coin; axis, axle; callis (c.), by-path; canalis (c.), canul; canis (c.), dog; caulis, stalk; civis (c.), citizen; clunis (c.), haunch; collis, hill; crinis (c.), hair; ensis, sword; fascis, fagot; finis (c.), end; follis, bellows; funis (c.), rope; fusis, club; hostis (c.), enemy; ignis, fire; juvenis (c.), youth; lactes (pl.), entrails; lares, gods; manes, departed spirits; mensis, month; orbis, circle; panis, bread; piscis, fish; sentis (c.), brier; testis (c.), witness; torris, brand; unguis, claw; vectis, bar; vepres (c., pl.), brambles; vermis, worm (m.).
11: iv., 3.] THIRD DECLENSION: FORMS OF INFLECTION. 25

ā, is: — upwards of 20 nouns, all neuter.

āl, ālis; ār, āris: — 16, neuter (see list, page 17; and for those in ār, āris, see Liquid Stems).

ēr, ris: — imber, shower; linter, boat; uter, bag; venter, stom-ach, — all m. except linter, which is commonly f.

Peculiar: — grus, gruis, crane, f.; rhus, rhois (acc. rhum), sumach, m.; sus, suis, hog, c.; heros, herōis, hero, m.; misy, yos, truffle, f.; oxys, yos, sorrel, f.; cinnibāri, vermilion; gummi, gum; sināpi, mustard (indecl.), N.; chelys, yn, y, f. lyre.

b. Liquid Stems.

ī, īs: — 9 nouns, masculine, except sil, ochre, and (sometimes) sal, salt, n.

ēn, ēnis: — hymen, marriage; ren, kidney; splen (ēnis), spleen, m.

ēn, ēnis: — 10 nouns, m. except pollen, flour; unguen, oint-

ment, n.

mēn, minis (verbal): — about 30 nouns, neuter; but flamen, priest, m.

ōn, ōnis (Greek): — canon, rule; dæmon, divinity; gnomon, index, m.; — aēdon, nightingale; alcyon, kingfisher; ancon, corner; sindon, fine linen, f.

ō, ōnis: — nearly 60 nouns, all masculine.

īo, īonis (material objects, &c.): — about 30 nouns, masculine.


ō, īnis: — homo, man; turbo, whirlwind, m.; nemo, no one, c.

ōdo, ðinis: — nearly 50 nouns, feminine excepting cardo, hinge; ordo, rank, m.

go, ginis: — about 30 nouns, feminine.

ar, āris: — baccar, valerian; jubar, sunbeam; nectar, nectar, n.; lar, household god; salar, trout, m.

ēr, ris: — accipiter, hawk; frater, brother; pater, father, m.; mater, mother.

ēr, ēris (Greek): — crater, cup; halter, dumb-bell; prester, waterspout, m.; ver, spring, n.

ēr, ēris: — acipenser, hawk; aër, air; æther, ether; anser, goose; asser, stake; aster, star; cancer, crab; carcer, dungeon; later, brick; passer, sparrow, m.; — mulier, woman, f.; — acer, maple; cadāver, corpse; cicer, vetch; papāver, poppy; piper, pepper; tūber, hump; uber, udder; verber, lash, n.

īs, īris: — cinis, ashes; cucūmis, cucumber; pulvis, dust; vomis, ploughshare, m.

ōr (ōs), ēris: — nearly 70 nouns (besides many denoting the agent, formed upon verb-stems), all masculine, except soror, sister; uxor, wife.

ōr, ōris: — castor, beaver; rhetor, rhetorian, m.; — arbor, tree, f.; — ador, fine-wheat; æquor, level; marmor, marble, n.

ōs, ōris: — flos, flower; mos, custom; ros, dew, m.; — glos, sister-in-law, f.; — os, mouth, n.

tīr, tīris: — ebur, ivory; femur, thigh; jecur, liver; robur (or), strength, n.

tūr, tūris: — 9 masculine; with fulgur, thunderbolt; murmum, murmum; sulphur, brimstone, n.

us, ūris: — 13 neuter; also, Venus, f.

us, ōris: — 14 nouns, neuter, except lepus, hare, m.

us, ūris: — mus, mouse, m.; — tellus, earth, f.; — crūs, leg; jus, right; pus, fester; rus, country; tus, incense, n.

Peculiar: — delphin, īnis, dolphin; sanguis (en) īnis, blood; senex, senis, old man, m.; caro, carnis, flesh, f.; æs, æris, copper; far, farris, corn; fel, fellis, gall; mel, mellis, honey; iter, itineris, journey; jecur, jecinoris (jecoris), liver, n.; glis, īris, dormouse, m.

C. Labial.

bs, bis: — chalybs, steel, m.; — plebs, people; scrobs, dūch; trabs, beam; urbs, city, f. (original i-stems).

ms, mis: — hiemps, winter, f.

ps, pis: — 15 nouns, masculine, except forceps, pincers; merops, bee-eater; ops, help; stips, gift; stirps, stock, f.

D. Lingual.

ās, ādis (Greek): — 14 nouns, feminine, except dromas, dromedary; vas, surety, m.

ēs, ēdis: — cupes, epicure; heres, heir; præs, surety, m.; — merces, pay, f.

ēs, ēdis: — pes, foot; quadrupes, quadruped, m.; — compes, fetter, f.

ēs, ēdis: — obses, hostage; præses, chief, c.

Is, īdis: — nearly 40 nouns, mostly Greek, feminine, except lapis, stone, m.

ōs, ōdis: — custos, guardian, c. [sacerdōs, priest, c.

ōs, ōtis: — nepos, grandson, m.; cos, whetstone; dos, dowry, f.;

ūs, ūdis: — incus, anvil; palus, marsh; subscus, dovetail; with fraus, fraud; laus, praise; pecūs, ūdis, sheep, f.

ā, ātis (Greek): — nearly 20 nouns, neuter.

ās, ātis: — about 20 nouns (besides derivatives), feminine; also, anas, ātis, duck.

ēs, ētis: — celes, race-horse; lebes, kettle; magnes, magnet, m.; — quies, requies, rest; inquiēs, unrest, f.
es, etsis:—aries, ram; interpres, interpreter; paries, house-wall, m.;—abies, fir; seges, crop; teges, mul, f.

és, etsis:—about 20 nouns, masculine (or common from signification).

ús, útis:—juventus, youth; senectus, old age; servitus, slavery; virtus, virtue; salus, health, f.

ns, ndis:—frons, leaf; glans, acorn; juglans, walnut, f.

ns, ntis:—nearly 20 (besides many participial nouns), common, except dens, tooth; fons, fountain; mons, mountain; pons, bridge, m.;—frons, brow; gens, nation; lens, lentile; mens, mind, f.

rs, rtis (originally t-stems):—ars, art; cohors, cohort; fors, chance; mors, death; sors, lot, f.

ys, ýdis; ἡ, ntis (Greek):—chlamys, cloak, f.; Atlas, antis.

Peculiar:—as, assis, penny, m.;—lis, litis, lawsuit; nox, noctis, night; puls, pullis, podage, f.;—caput, itis, head; cor, cordis, heart; hepar,átis, liver; os, ossis, bone; vas, vasis, vessel, n.; also, compounds of -pús, -pódis (m.), Gr. for pes, foot.

e. Palatal.

ax, ácis:—anthrax, coal; corax, raven; frax (pl.), dregs; panax, panacea; scelopax, woodcock, m.;—fax, torch; styrax, a gum, f.

ax, ácis:—cnodax, pivot; cordax, a dance; thorax, breastplate, m.;—pax, peace, f.

ex, icis:—upwards of 40 nouns, masculine, except carex, sedge; forfex, shears; ilex, holm; imbrex, tile; nes (nècis), violent death; pellex, concubine, f.

ix, ixis:—about 30, with filix, larix, salix, (tixis), feminine; besides many in trix, regular feminines of nouns in tor.

ox, ócis:—celox, cutter, f.

ux, úcis:—dux, leader, c.;—crux, cross; nux, nut, f.

ux, úcis:—balux, gold-dust; lux, light, f.

x, cis:—arx, tower; calx, lime; falx, pruning-knife; lynx, lynx; merx (def.), ware, f.;—calyx, cup; calx, heel, m.

x, gis:—conjux (nx), spouse; grex, herd; remex, rower; rex, king, m. or c.;—frux (def.), fruit; lex, law; phalanx, phalanx, f., with a few rare names of animals.

Other nouns in x are nix, nivis, snow; nox, noctis, night; suppellex, ecditis, f.;—onyx, ychis, onyx, m.

Note. — Nouns having gen. plural in ium are—1. All t-stems; 2. Monosyllables with stem ending in two consonants; 3. Most nouns in ns or rs (nom.), with several in as (atis); 4. The following:—dos, faux, fur, gis, lar, lis, mas, mus, nix, ren, strix, vis.
12. Fourth Declension.

The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *u*. (Usually this is weakened to *i* before *-bus*).

1. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding *s*; neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with *ū* (long).

Note.—The *u* in neuters is lengthened, probably on account of the loss of *m*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. Car (m.)</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING. Knee (n.)</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. currūs</td>
<td>currūs</td>
<td>genū</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. currūs (uīs)</td>
<td>curruum</td>
<td>genū (uūs)</td>
<td>genuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. currui (ū)</td>
<td>currībus</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>genubus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. currum</td>
<td>currūs</td>
<td>genū</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. currūs</td>
<td>currūs</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. currū</td>
<td>currībus</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>genubus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The Genitive singular is contracted from the old form in *uīs*. It is sometimes written with a circumflex: as, currūs.

2. Gender.—*a.* Most nouns in *us* are masculine. The following are feminine: —ācus, needle; ānus, old woman; oŏlus, distaff; dōmus, house; Ĭdus (pl.), the Ides; mānus, hand; nurus, daughter-in-law; portīcus, gallery; quinquātrus, feast of Minerva; socrus, mother-in-law; tribus, tribe; with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, arcus, penus, specus.

*b.* The only neuters are cornu, horn; genu, knee; pecu (def.), catile; veru, spit. (Some others are mentioned by grammarians, and the form ēssua, as from ēssu, occurs in inscriptions.)

3. Case-Forms.—*a.* An original genitive in *ōs* is sometimes found: as, senatuōs; and an old (but not original) genitive in *i* is used by some writers.

*b.* The nominative plural has rarely the form *uus*.

*c.* The genitive plural is sometimes contracted into *ūm*.

*d.* The following retain the regular dative and ablative plural in *ūbus*: ārtus, partus, portus, tribus, veru; with disyllables in *-cus*, as lacus.

*e.* Dōmus, house, has also the following forms of the second declension: domī (locative; less frequently domuī), at home; dative (rarely) domō; ablative domō (rarely domū); plural gen. domorum (rarely domuum); accusative domōs (or domūs).
f. Most names of plants, with colus, distaff, have also forms of the second declension.

4. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from verb-stems, with the suffix -tus: as, cantus, song, from cāno.

a. The Supines of verbs are the accusative and ablative (or dative, perhaps both) of these nouns.

b. Many have only the genitive, or the genitive and ablative: as, jussu (meo), by my command; so in jussu (populi), without the people's order. Some only the dative, memoratui, divisui.

c. The remaining nouns of this declension are the following: —

æstus, heat; arcus, bow; artus, joint; cætus, meeting; fetus, produce; ficus, fig; gradus, step; incestus, incest; lacus, lake; laurus, laurel; myrtus, myrtle; penus (def.), provision; pinus, pine; portus, port; rictus, gape; senatus, senate; sinus, fold, bay; situs, dust; specus, den; tonitus, thunder; tumultus, tumult.

Note. — Several of these are formed upon verb-stems not in use, or obsolete.

13. Fifth Declension.

The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in ē, which appears in all the cases.

1. The nominative is formed from the stem by adding s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. Thing (f.)</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING. Day (m.)</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>Faith (f.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>fidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēl</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>diēl</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>fidēl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēl</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diēl</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>fidēl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rem</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēm</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>fidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>fidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diō</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>fidē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — The e is shortened in the genitive and dative singular, when not preceded by i; viz., in fides, plebes, spes, res.

2. Gender. All nouns of this declension are feminine, except dies and meridies, m.

Note. — Dies is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, or time in general: as, longa dies, a long time; constitūtā die, on the set day; also in the poets: pulcra dies, a fair day.
3. **Case-Forms.** The genitive singular anciently ended in ēs (cf. ās of first declension); and ēī was sometimes contracted into ā or e, as in the phrase plebī-scitum, people's decree (Fr. plébiscite). An old dative in ā or e also occurs.

4. Several nouns of the fifth declension have also forms of the first, of which this is only a variety: as, materia, -ies, timber; saevitiae, -ies, cruelly.

Note.—Nouns in ēs (except dies) are original a-stems. The others are probably (excepting res) corrupted a-stems, like moles, moles-tus; dies, diurnus; spes, spero. Requies (ētis) has also forms of this declension: with others, as saties (for satietas), &c.

5. The Locative form of this declension is represented by -ē, as in hodie, to-day; perendie, day-after-to-morrow; die quarti, the fourth day; pridie, the day before.

6. Of about forty nouns of this declension, the only ones complete in all their parts are dies and res. Most want the plural, which is, however, found in the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in the following: acies, effigies, eluvies, facies, glacies, progenies, series, species, spes.

14. **Irregular Nouns.**

1. **Defective.** Many nouns are defective in their forms of declension, either from signification or by accident of use.

a. Some are found only in the singular (singularia tantum), chiefly abstract nouns: as, pietas, piety; names of materials and things weighed or measured (not counted): as, aes, copper, far, corn; and proper names, as Cicero.

Abstract nouns in the plural may denote repetitions or instances, as paces:—names of things measured, &c., kinds or samples, as vina, wines, aera, brazen utensils; proper names, two or more of the same, as Scipiones. So Galliae, the two Gauls, Castōres, Castor and Pollux, nives, snowflakes, soles, days, Joves, images of Jupiter, palatia, the buildings on the hill.

b. Some are found only in the Plural (pluralia tantum): these include (1) many proper names, including those of Festivals and Games; (2) names of classes: as, maiores, ancestors; liberi, children; penates, household gods; (3) the following from signification: arma, weapons; artus, joints; divitiae, riches; excubiae, night-guard; insidia, ambush; manes, departed spirits; minae, threats; moenia, fortifications, and a few others, which are very rare.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

31

c. The following are defective in Case: —

ambage, § F.; astus (s. and p.), astu, m.; cassem, i, e, e, § F.; dicum, as, F.; diconis, i, em, e, § F.; fauce, § F.; foras, is (pl.), F.; foras, F.; frugis, i, em, e, § F.; glos, F.; gralix, as, is, F.; impetus, um, u, m.; initus, F.; jugera, um,ibus, n.; laus, em, e, F.; mane (nom., acc., and abl.), n.; nunci, n.; obice, § C.; opinis, em, e, § F.; pondo (abl. or inlecc.), n.; precem, e, § F.; sentis, em, es, ibus, m.; sordens, e, § F.; spontis, e, F.; suppeditus, F.; veniuit, um, m. (o, n.); vicis, em, e, es, ibus, F. The gen. plur. is also wanting in cor, cos, fax, fax, lux, nex, os (oris), pax, proes, ros, sal, sol, tus, vas, ver; juru, curu, have only nom. and acc. plur.

§ Plural complete.

Many nouns of the fourth declension occur only in the dative, or in the acc. and abl. (supines).

The following neuters are indeclinable: fas, nefas, instar, necesse, nihil, opus, secus.

Nouns found only in one case are called monoptotes; in two cases, diptotes; in three cases, triptotes.

2. Variable. Many nouns vary in their form of declension, their gender, or their signification under different forms.

a. Some have two or more forms of Declension, and are called heteroclites: as,

Balnea or a; carbasus (F.), pl., a (n.); colus (1st and 4th), F.; femur, ðris or this; jugerum, i, or abl. e, pl. a, um, n.; margarita, æ (F.), or um, i (n.); Mulciber, bri or beris; munus, ðris, pl. munia (menia), orum; rubes, eris; em, e; penus, i, or ðris; savitius, æ; -ies, iei; -itudo, inis, F.; sequester, tri, or tris; with many found in the 1st and 5th declensions, and a few other rare forms.

b. Some nouns vary in Gender (heterogeneous): as,

cælum (n.), pl. cæli (m.), sky; clipeus (m.), or clipeum (n.), shield; frenum (m.), pl. freni (m.), rein.

c. Many nouns vary in meaning as they are found in the singular or plural: as,

ædes, is (F.), temple; ædes, ium, house.

auxilium (n.), help; auxilia, auxiliaries.
carcer (m.), dungeon; carcères, barriers (of a race-course).
castrum (n.), fort; castra, camp.
copia (F.), plenty; copiae, troops.
finis (m.), end; fines, bounds, territories.
forum, market-place; fori, gang-ways.
gratia (F.), favor; gratiae, thanks.
impedimentum (m.), hinderance; impedimenta, baggage.
littera (F.), letter (of alphabet); litterae, epistle.
löcus (m.), place [pl. loca (n.)]; loci, passages in books. (In early writers this is the regular plural.)
ludus, sport; ludi, public games.
opus, task; operæ, day-laborers (“hands”).
opis (f. gen.), help; opes, resources, wealth.
plāga (r.), region [plāga, blow]; plāgæ, snares.
rostrum, beak of a ship; rostra, speaker's platform.
sāl (m. or n.), salt; sales, witicisms.
tabella, tablet: tabellæ, documents.

sestertius (m.) means the sum of 2½ asses, = about 5 cents.
sestertium (n.) means the sum of 1000 sestertii, = about $50.
decies sestertium means the sum of 1000 sestertia, = $50,000.

d. Sometimes a noun in combination with an adjective takes a
special signification, both parts being regularly inflected: as, jus-
jūrandum, jūrisjurandi, oath; respublica, respublicae, com-
monwealth.

15. Proper Names.

1. A Roman had regularly three names. Thus, in the
name Marcus Tullius Cicero, we have—

Marcus, the prænomen, or personal name;

Tullius, the nomen; i.e., name of the Gens, or house, whose
original head was Tullus; this name is properly an adjective;

Cicero, the cognomen, or family name, often in its origin
a nickname,—in this case from cicer, a vetch, or small pea.

2. A fourth or fifth name, called the agnomen, was
sometimes given.

Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was Publius
Cornelius Scipio Africanus Ėmilianus; Africanus from his ex-
plants in Africa; Ėmilianus as adopted from the Ėmilian gens.

3. Women had no personal names, but were known only
by that of their gens.

Thus the wife of Cicero was Terentia, and his daughter Tullia.
A younger sister would have been called Tullia secunda or minor,
and so on.

4. The commonest prænomens are thus abbreviated:—

A. Aulus.
C. (G.) Gaïus (Caïus).
Cn. (Gn.) Gnaeus (Cneius).
D. Decimus.
K. Kæso.
App. Appius.
L. Lucius.
M. Marcus.
M’. Manius.
Mam. Mamercus.
N. Numerius.
P. Publius.
Q. Quintus.
Ser. Servius.
Sex. Sextus.
Sp. Spurius.
T. Titus.
Ti. Tiberius.
ADJECTIVES.

16. INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives and Participles are in general formed and declined like Nouns, differing from nouns only in their use. In accordance with their use, they distinguish gender by different forms in the same word. They are (1) of the first and second declensions, or (2) of the third declension.

Note. — Latin adjectives and participles are either o-stems with the corresponding feminine a-stems (originally ë and ë), or i-stems. Many, however, were originally stems in u or a consonant, which passed over, in all or most of their cases, into the i-declension, for which Latin had a special fondness. (Compare the endings ës and ës of the Third declension with Greek ës and ës; navis (nom.) with the Greek νᾶς; animus with exanimis; cornu with bicornis; lingua with bilinguis; cor, corde, corda, with discors, -di, -dia, -dium; sudvis with φυσ; ferens, -entia, with ἕφεσ, -oρα.) A few, which in other languages are nouns, retain the consonant-form: as, vētus = fros, uber = oβαρ. Comparatives also retain the consonant form in most of their cases.

1. Stems in o have the feminine ë (originally ë). They are declined like servus (m.), stella (f.), donum (n.): as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| SING. | carēs       | carā       | carōm, Dear.
| Nom.  | cāris       | cārā       |             |
| Gen.  | carē        | carae       | carō        |
| Dat.  | carō        | carae       |             |
| Acc.  | carum       | caram       | carum       |
| Voc.  | carē        | carā        |             |
| Abl.  | carō        | carā        | carō        |
| PLUR. | carī        | carae       | carā        |
| Nom.  | carōrum     | carārum     | carōrum     |
| Gen.  | carōs       | carīs       | carīs       |
| Dat.  | carīs       | carās       | carā        |
| Acc.  | carīs       | carae       | carā        |
| Voc.  | carī        | carae       |             |
| Abl.  | carīs       | carīs       |             |

Note. — The masc. gen. of adjectives in us ends in ii, and the vocative in ie; not in i as in nouns: the voc. masc. of meus is mi.
a. In adjectives of stems ending in ro- preceded by s or a consonant (also satur), the masculine nominative is formed like puer or liber (§ 10): as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Miser, wretched.</th>
<th>Ater, black.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. miser</td>
<td>misērā</td>
<td>misērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. miserī</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. miserō</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aē. miserum</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. miser</td>
<td>miserā</td>
<td>miserum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab miserō</td>
<td>miserā</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. miserī</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. miserorum</td>
<td>miserārum</td>
<td>miserorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. miseris</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aē. miserōs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. miserī</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab miserōs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stems in ēro, with morigērus, propērus, postērus, have the regular nominative in us.

Like miser are declined — asper, rough; gibber, hunched; lacer, torn; liber, free; prosper (erus), favoring; satur (ura, urum), sated; tener, tender; with compounds of -fer and -ger; also, usually, dexter, right. In these the e belongs to the stem; but in dexter it is often syncopated.

Like ater are declined — æger, sick; creber, close; faber, skilled; glaber, sleek; integer, whole; ludicer, sportive; macer, lean; niger, dark; noster, our; piger, sluggish; ruber, red; sacer, sacred; sinister, left; teter, foul; vafer, shrewd; vester, your.

The following feminines lack a masculine singular nominative: — cetēra, infēra, postēra, supēra. They are rarely found in the singular except in certain phrases: as, postero die. A feminine ablative in o is found in a few Greek adjectives, as lectēc octophōro (Verr. v. 11.).

b. The following (o-stems) with their compounds have the genitive singular in īus and the dative in ī in all the genders: —

ālius (n. aliud), other. nullus, none. ullus, any (with negatives).
alter, other (of two). sōlus, alone. īnus, one.
neuter, -trius, neither. tōtus, whole. īter, -trius, which (of two).

Note. — The suffix ter, in alter, uter, neuter, is the same as the Greek comparative suffix -tēros. The stem of aliud appears in early Latin and in derivatives as ali-, in the forms alis, alid (for aliud), alter, &c. Regular forms of gen. and dat. are found in early writers.

Of these the singular is thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>P.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>P.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. solus</td>
<td>sola</td>
<td>solum</td>
<td>uter</td>
<td>utra</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. solius</td>
<td>solīs</td>
<td>solīs</td>
<td>utrius</td>
<td>utrius</td>
<td>utrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. soli</td>
<td>soli</td>
<td>soli</td>
<td>utri</td>
<td>utri</td>
<td>utri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. solum</td>
<td>sola</td>
<td>solum</td>
<td>utrum</td>
<td>utram</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. solo</td>
<td>sola</td>
<td>solo</td>
<td>utro</td>
<td>utra</td>
<td>utro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N. alius | alia | alium | alter | altera | alterum |
| G. alius | alii | alius | alterius | alterius | alterius |
| D. alii | alīi | alii | alteri | alteri | alteri |
| A. alium | alīam | alīum | alterum | alteram | alterum |
| A. ali | ali | ali | altero | alterā | altero |
ADJECTIVES: INFLATION.

Note.—These words, in Greek and Sanskrit, are treated as pronouns; which accords with the pronominal forms of the genitive in *i*us, the dative in i, and the neuter d in allud. The i in the genitive *i*us, though long, may be made short in verse; and *alterius* is generally accented on the antepenult. Instead of *altus* (gen.), *alterius* is more commonly used. In compounds—as *alteriter*—sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter.

2. Stems in i—distinguished by being *parisyllabic*—have properly no form for the feminine, and hence are called *adjectives of two terminations*. In the neuter, i is changed to e. They are declined like *turris* (acc. *em*) and *mare*.

Sing. M., F. Light. N. M. Keen. F. N.
N.V. lēvis lēve acer acris acre
G. lēvis lēvis acris acris acris
D. lēvi lēvi acri acri acri
Ac. lēvem lēve acrem acrem acre
Ab. lēvi lēvi acri acri acri

Plur.
N.V. lēvēs lēvia acres acres acria
G. lēvium lēvium acrium acrium acrium
D. lēvibus lēvibus acribus acribus acribus
Ac. lēvēs (is) lēvia acres (is) acres (is) acria
Ab. lēvibus lēvibus acribus acribus acribus

a. Several stems in ri- form the masc. nom. in er (as *acer*, compare § 11, l. 2, b.). These are the following:—

acer, keen.
alacer, eager.
campester, of the plain.
celeber, famous.
equester, of horsemen.
paluster, marshy.

pedester, on foot.
puter, rotten.
salüber, wholesome.
silvester, wooded.
terrester, of the land.
völuer, winged.

Also *celer, celēris, celēre, swift*; and, in certain phrases, the names of months in -ber.

Note.—This formation is not original; and hence, in the poets, and in early Latin, either the masculine or feminine form of these adjectives was used for both genders. In others, as *illustris, lugubris, mediōcri, muliebris*, there is no separate masculine form.

b. Case-Forms. These adjectives, as true i-stems, retain i in the abl. singular, the neut. plural is, the gen. plur. ium, and often in the acc. plur. is, but never im in the acc. sing. For metrical reasons, an abl. in e sometimes occurs in poetry. When *celer* is used as an adjective, it has the regular gen. plur. in *ium*; as a noun, denoting a military rank, it is *celērum*; as a proper name, it has the abl. in e.
3. The remaining adjectives of the third declension have the form of i-stems in the ablative singular i, the plural neuter ia, and genitive ium. In other cases they follow the rule of consonant-stems.

α. In adjectives of consonant-stems (except comparatives) the nominative singular is alike for all genders: hence they are called adjectives of one termination. Except of stems in 1 and r, it is formed from the stem by adding s: as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>Happy. N.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>Calling. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>vocans</td>
<td>vocans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>vocantis</td>
<td>vocantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>vocanti</td>
<td>vocanti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>felicem</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>vocantem</td>
<td>vocans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>felico or felici</td>
<td></td>
<td>vocante or vocanti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vocantes</td>
<td>vocantia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>felices</td>
<td>felicita</td>
<td></td>
<td>vocantia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>felicium</td>
<td>felicium</td>
<td></td>
<td>vocantium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>felicibus</td>
<td>felicibus</td>
<td>vocantibus</td>
<td>vocantibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>felices (is)</td>
<td>felicia</td>
<td>vocantes (is)</td>
<td>vocantia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>felicibus</td>
<td>felicibus</td>
<td>vocantibus</td>
<td>vocantius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other examples are the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>iens, going</td>
<td>par, equal</td>
<td></td>
<td>praecep, headlong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntis</td>
<td>pari</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipititas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eunti</td>
<td>pari</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipitii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euntem iens</td>
<td>parem par</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipitatem praecep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eunte (i)</td>
<td>pari</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipite (i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.A.V.</td>
<td>euntes euntia</td>
<td>pares paria</td>
<td></td>
<td>praecepites precipitia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntium</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipitium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td></td>
<td>precipitibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — The regular feminine of these adjectives, by analogy of cognate languages, would end in ia: this form is found in the abstracts amentia, desidia, sorcutia, &c., and in proper names, as Florentia (cf. Greek Φλωρεντα). The neuter would regularly have the simple stem (as caput, cor, allec, Greek ἄλης); but in ait except liquid stems, the masc. form in s has forced itself not only upon the neuter nominative, but upon the accusative also, where it is wholly abnormal.
A few of these forms, used as nouns, have a feminine in a: as, clienta, hospita, inhospita, with the appellation Juno Sospita.

b. The stem of Comparatives properly ended in ọs, which became or in all cases except the neuter singular (n. a. v.), where a is retained, and o is changed to u (compare honōr, ōris; corpus, ōris). Thus they appear to have two terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>Dearer.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>More.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>carior</td>
<td>cariōs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cariōris</td>
<td>cariōris</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūris</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cariōri</td>
<td>cariōri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cariōrem</td>
<td>carius</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cariōre or cariori</td>
<td>carius</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūre</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>cariōres</td>
<td>cariōra</td>
<td>plūres</td>
<td>plūra (ia)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>cariōrum</td>
<td>cariōrum</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>cariōra</td>
<td>plures</td>
<td>plura</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>cariōribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nota.—The neut. sing. plus is used only as a noun; the gen. (rarely abl.) as an expression of value; the dative is not found in classic use. Its derivative, complures, several, has sometimes neut. plur. complūria. All other comparatives are declined like carior.

c. Case Forms. 1. The ablative singular of these adjectives commonly ends in 1; but, when used as nouns, — as superstites, survivor, — they have e. Participles in ns used as such, — especially in the Ablative Absolute, — or as nouns, regularly have e; but as adjectives, regularly i. (So adjectives in ns as in the phrase, me imprudente.)

In the following, e is the regular form: — celes, compositus, deses, dives, hospes, pauper, particeps, præcipus, princeps, superstitus, supplices; also in patriars (see § 44), with stems in at-, it-, nt-, rt-, when used as nouns, and sometimes as adjectives.

2. The genitive plural ends commonly in um, and the accusative often in is, even in comparatives, which are less inclined to the i-declension.

In the following, the gen. plur. ends in um: — always in dives, compositus, inops, præcipus, supplices, and compounds of pes; — sometimes, in poetry, participles in ns. In vetus (ēris), pubes (ēris), uber (ēris), which did not become i-stems, the forms e, a, um, are regular; but uber and vetus rarely have the abl. in i.

3. Several are declined in more than one form: as, gracilis (us), hilaris (us), inermis (us). A few are indecl. or defective: as, damnas (esto, sunt), frugi (dat. of advantage), exspes (only nom.), exlex (nom. and acc.), moctus (nom. and voc.), nequiam (indecl.), pernox (pernocu), potis, pote (indecl. or m. f. potis, n. pote), primōris, seminēcti, &c.
d. Many adjectives, from their signification, are used only in the masculine or feminine, and may be called adjectives of common gender. Such are adolescens, youthful; deses, idle, slothful; inops, opia, poor; sospes, itis, safe. So senex and juvenis may be called masculine adjectives.

e. Many nouns may be also used as adjectives (compare § 47, 3): as, pedes, a footman or on foot; especially nouns in tor (m.) and trix (f.), denoting the agent: as, victor exercitus, the conquering army; victrix causa, the winning cause.

f. Certain cases of adjectives are regularly used as Adverbs. These are, the acc. and abl. of the neuter singular: as, multum, molto, much; — the neuter of comparatives (regularly): as, carius, more dearly; levius, more lightly; — together with those ending in ō for o-stems, and ter for i-stems: as, care, dearly; leviter, lightly; accerime, most eagerly.

17. Comparison.

1. Regular Comparison. The Comparative is formed by adding, for the nominative, ior (old stem iōs), neuter ius, and the Superlative by adding issimus, a, um (old issimus), to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel: as,

carus, dear; carior, dearer; carissimus, dearest.
lēvis, light; levior, lighter; levissimus, lightest.
felīx, happy; felicior, happier; felicissimus, happiest.
hebes, dull; hebetior, duller; hebetissimus, dullest.

Note. — The comparative suffix is the same as the Greek ὥν, or the Sanskrit ṝaṇa. That of the superlative (issimus) is a double form, but what is the combination is not certain; perhaps it stands for los-timus (comp. and sup.), or possibly for ist-timus (two superlatives). Strictly, new stems are thus formed.

a. Adjectives in er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative (comparative regular): as,
miser, misericor, miserrimus; acer, acrior, acerrimus.

So vetus, veterrimus (for comparative, vetuśtor) from the old form veter; and, rarely, maturimus (for maturissimus).

b. The following in lis add -limus to the stem clipped of its vowel: facils, easy; difficils, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracils, slender; humilis, low.

Note. — The endings -limus and -rimus, the regular superlatives, are formed by assimilation from -timus and -simus.
c. Compounds in -dicus (saying), -ducus (doing), -volus (willing), take the forms of corresponding participles in us, which were anciently used as adjectives: as,

maledicous, slanderous, maledicientior, maledicentissimus.

malevolus, spiteful, malevolentior, malevolentissimus.

d. Adjectives in us preceded by a vowel (except u) rarely have forms of comparison, but are compared by the adverbs magis, more; maxime, most: as,

idoneus, fit; magis idoneus, maxime idoneus.

Most derivatives in -icus, -idus, -alis, -aris, -ilis, -ilus, -undus,
-timus, -inus, -ivus, -or us, with compounds, as degener, inops, are also thus compared.

e. Participles when used as adjectives are regularly compared: as, patientior, patientissimus; apertior, apertissimus.

Note.—Many adjectives—as aureus, golden—are from their meaning incapable of comparison; but each language has its own usage in this respect. Thus niger, black, and candidus, white, are compared; but not ater or albus, meaning absolute black or white.

2. Irregular Comparison. Several adjectives are compared from different stems, or contain irregular forms: as,

bômus, melior, optîmus, good, better, best.

mâlus, pêior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.

magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.

parvus, minör, minimus, small, less, least.

multîm, plûs (n.), plurîmum, much, more, most.

multî, plûres, plurîmi, many, more, most.

nêquam (indecl.), nequior, nequissimus, worthless,
frûgi (indecl.), frugálîor, frugalîssimus, useful, worthy.

dexter, dextérior, dextîmus, on the right, handy.

3. Defective Comparison. The following are formed from roots or stems not used as adjectives:—

[cis, citra] citêrior, citîmus, hither, hithermost.
[in, intra] intêrior, intîmus, inner, inmost.
[prae, pro] prior, prîmus, former, first.
[prope] proprior, proxîmus, nearer, next.
[ultra] ulterior, ultîmus, farther, farthest.

a. Of the following the positive forms (originally comparative) are rare, except when used as nouns, generally in the plural:—

[extêrûs] exterior, extrêmus (extîmus), outer, outmost.
[infêrûs] inferior, infîmus (îmus), lower, lowest.
[postêrûs] posterior, postrêmus, latter, last.
[supêrûs] superior, supremus or summus, higher, highest.

The plurals, exterî, foreigners; posterî, posterity; superî, the heavenly gods; inferî, those below, are common.
b. From juvenis, youth, sénex, old man, are formed the comparatives junior, younger, senior, older. Instead of the superlative, the phrase minimus or maximus natu is used (natu being often understood): as, maximus fratum, the eldest of the brothers; but, senior fratum, the elder of the [two] brothers.

c. In the following, one of the forms of comparison is wanting:

1. The Positive is wanting in deterior, deterrimus, worse; ocior, ocissimus, swifter, swiftest; potior, potissimus, more and most preferable [from potis, able].

2. The Comparative is wanting in bellus, pretty; caesius, gray; falsus, false; inclitus (or incitus), famous; invictus, unsurpassed; invitus, reluctant; novus, new (novissimum agmen, rear guard); pius, pious; sacer, sacred; vetus, old; and most derivatives in ìis and ìilis.

3. The Superlative is not found in actuósus, energetic; alácer, eager; arcánus, secret; diuturnus, long-continued; exilis, slender; ingens, huge; jejunus, sterile; longinquus, distant; optimus, rich; proclivíus, inclined; satur, sated; segnis, sluggísh; serus, late; supinus, supine; taciturnus, silent; tempestíus, seasonable; vicinus, neighboring; dives, rich, has generally ditissimus.

4. Adverbs. Adverbs formed from adjectives are compared in like manner: as, carus, dear: carē, carius, carissimē.

miser, wretched: miserē (iter), miserius, miserrimē.

lévis, light: levíter, levius, levissimē.

audax, bold: audacter, audácius, audacíssimē.

bōnus, good: bēnē, mélius, optimē.

málus, bad: malē, péjus, pessimē.

Also, diu, long (in time), diutius diutissimē;—potius, rather, potissimum, chief;—saepē, often, -ius, -issime;—satis, enough, satius, preferable;—sēcus, otherwise, sēcius, worse;—multum (multo), mǎgis, maxime, much, more, most.

5. Signification. Besides their regular signification, the forms of comparison are used as follows:—

a. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as, brevior, rather short; audaciór, too bold. It is used instead of the superlative where only two are spoken of: as, melior imperatorum, where English often has a superlative.

b. The Superlative (of eminence) denotes a very high degree of a quality: as, maximus numerus, a very great number. With quam, it indicates the highest degree: as, quam plurīmi, as many as possible; quam maxime potest (quam potest), as much as can be.
c. With *quisque*, the superlative has a peculiar signification: thus the phrase *ditissimus quisque* means, *all the richest*; *primus quisque*, *all the first* (each in his order).

d. A high degree of a quality is denoted by such adverbs as *admodum, valde, very*; or by *per* or *prae* in composition: as, *permagnus, very great*; *praesaltus, very high* (or deep).

e. A low degree is indicated by *sub* in composition: as, *subrusticus, rather countrified*; or by *minus, not very*; *minime, not at all*; *parum, not enough*; *non satis, not much*.

18. **Numerals.**

1. **Cardinal and Ordinal.** Cardinal Numbers answer to the interrogative *quot, how many*; Ordinal Numbers to *quotus, which in order, or one of how many*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>ROMAN NUMERALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unus, una, unum</td>
<td><em>one</em></td>
<td>primus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo, duae</td>
<td><em>two</em></td>
<td>secundus (alter), <em>second</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres, tria</td>
<td><em>three</em></td>
<td>tertius, <em>third</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td></td>
<td>quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octavus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tredécim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quindecéim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodeviginti (octodecéim)</td>
<td>duodecimages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undeviginti (novendécim)</td>
<td>undevicesimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viginti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viginti unus or unus et viginti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>tricesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadraginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>quadragesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quinquaginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>quinquagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexaginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>sexagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septuaginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>septuagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octoginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>octogesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonaginta</td>
<td></td>
<td>nonagesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centum</td>
<td></td>
<td>centesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CARDINAL | ORDINAL | ROMAN NUMERALS
--------- | ------- | ------------
200. duci τεν, a | ducentesimus | CC.
300. trecenti | trecentesimus | CCC.
400. quadringenti | quadringentesimus | CCC.
500. quingenti | quingentesimus | C5, or D.
600. sexcenti | sexcentesimus | C6.
700. septingenti | septingentesimus | DCC.
800. octingenti | octingentesimus | DCCC.
900. nongenti | nongentesimus | DCCC.
1000. mille | millesimus | CI.
5000. quinque millia (milia) | quinquies millesimus | ICC.
10,000. decem millia (milia) | decies millesimus | CCC.
100,000. centum millia (milia) | centies millesimus | CCC.

Note. — The Ordinals (except secondus, tertius, octavus) are formed by means of the same suffixes as superlatives. Thus decimus (compare the form infinitus) may be regarded as the last of a series of ten; primus is a superlative of pro; the forms in -tus (quartus, quintus, sextus) may be compared with the corresponding Greek forms in -tως and πρωτας, superlative of πρωτος; nonus is contracted from novimus; while the others have the regular superlative ending -simus. Of the exceptions, secondus is a participle of sequor; and alter is a comparative form (compare ἀρας in Greek).

a. Unus, una, unum, one, is declined like solus (§ 16, 1.), gen. unius and dat. uni in all genders. It often has the meaning of same, or only. It is used in the plural in this sense, as also to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, una castra, one camp. So uni et alteri, one party and the other.

b. Duo, two (also ambo, both), is thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>duo</th>
<th>duae</th>
<th>duo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>dorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dubus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>dubus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>duos (duo)</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dubus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>dubus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — This form in -o is a remnant of the dual number, which was lost in Latin, but is found in cognate languages.

c. Tres, tria, three, is an I-stem, and is regularly declined like the plural of levis. The other cardinal numbers, up to centum (100), are indeclinable. The multiples of ten are compounds of the multiple, with a fragment of decem: as, viginti = duo-ginta.

Note. — The forms octodecim (18), novemdecim (19), are rare, undeviginti, duodeviginti, &c., being commonly employed.

d. The hundreds, up to 1000, and all the ordinals, are -estems, and are regularly declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.
18. 2, 3, 4.] NUMERALS.

   e. Mille, a thousand, is not declined when used as an adjective. Often in the singular, and always in the plural (milia or millia, thousands), it is used as a neuter noun, joined with a genitive plural: as, cum mille hominibus (or, mille hominum), with 1000 men; but, cum duobus milibus hominum (or, in poetry, cum bis mille hominibus), with 2000 men.

2. Distributives. Distributive Numerals answer to the interrogative quoteni, how many of a sort.

| 1. singuli, one by one. 12. duodeni | 200. ducenti |
| 2. bini, two-and-two. 13. terni deni, &c. | 300. trecenti |
| 3. terni, trini | 20. viceni | 400. quadringeni |
| 4. quaterni | 30. triceni | 500. quingeni |
| 5. quini | 40. quadrageni | 600. sescenti |
| 6. seni | 50. quinquageni | 700. septingeni |
| 7. septeni | 60. sexageni | 800. octingeni |
| 8. octoni | 70. septuageni | 900. nonageni |
| 9. noveni | 80. octogeni | 1000. milleni |
| 10. deni | 90. nonageni | 2000. bis milleni |
| 11. undeni | 100. centeni | 10,000. decies milleni |

Distributives are used as follows:—

a. In the meaning of so many apiece or on each side: as, dat singula singulis, he gives them one apiece.

b. Instead of Cardinals, when the noun is plural in form but singular in meaning: as, bina castra, two camps (duo castra would mean two forts).

c. In multiplication: as, bis bina, twice two; quater septenis diebus, i.e., in four weeks.

d. By the poets instead of cardinal numbers, particularly where pairs or sets are spoken of: as, bina hastilia, two shafts (each person usually carrying two).

3. Numeral Adverbs. The numeral adverbs answer to the interrogative quotiens (quoties), how often. Those of the higher numbers, including five, have the termination iones (ies) added to the stem of Cardinals.

| 1. semel, once. | 10. decies | 60. sexages |
| 2. bis, twice. | 11. undecies | 70. septuages |
| 3. ter, thrice. | 12. duodecies | 80. octogies |
| 4. quater | 13. ter et decies, &c. | 90. nonages |
| 5. quinquies (ens) | 20. vicies | 100. centies |
| 6. sexies | 21. semel et vicies | 200. ducenties |
| 7. septies | 30. tricies | 300. ter centies |
| 8. octies | 40. quadrages | 1000. milies |
| 9. nonies | 50. quinquages | 10,000. decies milies |

4. The adjectives simplex (icsis), single; duplex, double; tripex, triple; quadruplex, quintuplex, multiplex, &c., are called multiplicatives. They are compounds of plic (as in English two fold); and are inflected as adjectives of one termination.
PRONOUNS.

19. Personal and Reflexive.

1. The Personal Pronouns of the first person are ego, I, nos, we; of the second person, tu, thou, vos, ye or you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST PERSON</th>
<th>SECOND PERSON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ego, I</td>
<td>nos, we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mei, of me</td>
<td>nostrum (tri), of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mihi, to me</td>
<td>nobis, to us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. me, me</td>
<td>nos, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. ___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. me, by me</td>
<td>nobis, by us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These pronouns are also used reflexively: as, ipse te nimium laudas, you praise yourself too much.

2. The pronouns of the third person — he, she, it, they — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being sometimes used.

3. The Reflexive pronoun of the third person (referring to the subject of the sentence or clause, and hence used only in the oblique cases) is the same in the singular and plural: as,

| Gen. sui, of himself, herself, themselves. |
| Dat. sibi, to |
| Acc. se, sese |
| Abl. se, with |

Note. — There is an old form of genitive in is: as, mis, tis, sis; also an accusative and ablative med, ted, sed.

a. From these pronouns are formed the Possessive Adjectives meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester (voster), declined as in § 16, 1.

b. The genitives nostrum, vestrum, are the contracted genitive plural of the possessives noster, vester. (So in early and late Latin we find una vestrarum.) They are used partitively.

c. The genitives mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are the genitive singular of the neuter possessives, meum, &c., meaning my, your, our interest or concern. They are used objectively.

d. The reciprocal (each other) is expressed by inter se or alter — alterum: as, inter se amant, they love each other.

e. The preposition cum, with, is joined enclitically with the ablative of the pronouns: as, tecum sedet, he sits with you.
20. Demonstrative.

1. The Demonstrative Pronouns are hic, this; is, ille, iste, that; with the Intensive ipse, self; and idem, same.

Note.—These are combinations of o and i-stems, which are not clearly distinguishable. Hic is a compound of the stem ho- with the demonstrative -ce, which appears in full in early Latin (hice), and when followed by the enclitic -ne (hicine). In most of the cases it is shortened to c, and in many lost; but it is appended for emphasis to those that do not regularly retain it (hujusce). In early Latin c alone is retained in some of these (horunc). Ille and iste are sometimes found with the same enclitic (illic, istuc).

a. Ille is a later form of ollus (olle), which is sometimes used by the poets; a gen. sing. in i, ae, i, occurs in ille and iste.

b. Iste is sometimes found in early writers in the form ste, &c.; with the entire loss of the first syllable; and the i of ipse and ille is very often found shortened.

c. Ipse is compounded of is and -pse (for pte, from the same root as potis), meaning self. The first part was originally declined, as in reāpse (for re eapse), in fact. An old form ipsus occurs. Idem is the demonstrative is with the affix -dem.

2. These demonstratives are used either with nouns as Adjectives, or alone as Pronouns; and, from their signification, cannot (except ipse) have a vocative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>ejus</td>
<td>ejus</td>
<td>ejus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>hui</td>
<td>hui</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoo</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hoo</td>
<td>hac</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>eā</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th>These.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>ii (ei)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>horum</td>
<td>harum</td>
<td>horum</td>
<td>eorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>eis or iis (is)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hos</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>eos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>eis or iis (is)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Demonstrative Pronouns

#### That.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>SING. M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>ipsi</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illo</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. illo</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illo</td>
<td>ipso</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Those.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. illi</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illorum</td>
<td>illarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. illos</td>
<td>illas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### These.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ejaudem</td>
<td>ejaudem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eodem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The Same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ejaudem</td>
<td>ejaudem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eodem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes.

- **A. Hic** is used of what is near the speaker (in time, place, thought, or on the written page); hence called the **demonstrative of the first person**. It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for "the latter" of two things mentioned.

- **B. Ille** is used of what is remote (in time, &c.); hence called the **demonstrative of the third person**. It is sometimes used to mean "the former"; also (usually following its noun) of what is famous or well-known; often (especially the neuter illud) to mean "the following."

- **C. Iste** is used of what is between the two others in remoteness; often of the person addressed,—hence called the **demonstrative of the second person**; especially of one's opponent, frequently implying contempt. It is declined like ille.

- **D. Is** is a weaker demonstrative than the others, not denoting any special object, but referring to one just mentioned, or to be explained by a relative. It is used oftener than the others as a personal pronoun; and is often merely a correlative to the relative qui: as, eum quem, one whom; eum consulem qui non dubitet (Cic.), a consul who will not hesitate.

- **E. Ipse**, may be used with a personal pronoun, as nos ipsi (nosmetipsi), we ourselves; or independently (the verb containing the pronoun), as, ipsi adestis, you are yourselves present; or with a noun, as ipsi fontes (Virg.), the very fountains.

**Note.**—In English, the pronouns himself, &c., are used both intensively (as, he will come himself), or reflexively (as, he will kill himself): in Latin the former would be translated ipse; the latter se, or seae.
21. **Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.**

1. The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite pronouns are the same; viz., *qui, quis* (*who, who? any*), with their compounds and derivatives.

   **Note.** — The stem has two forms, *quo*- and *qui*. From the latter are formed *quis, quid, quem, quibus, qui* (abl.), while *qui, quae* are probably lengthened forms of *quē, quā*, made by the addition of the demonstrative particle 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui, quis?</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quōd, quid?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cūjus (whose)</td>
<td>cūjus</td>
<td>cūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem (whom)</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod, quid?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quo</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Plur.**

   | Nom. | qui | quae | quae |
   | Gen. | quorum | quarum | quorum |
   | Dat. | quibus or quis | quibus or quis |
   | Acc. | quos | quas | quae |
   | Abl. | quibus or quis | quibus or quis |

   **Case Forms.**

   a. The Relative has always *qui* and *quod* in the nom. sing. The Interrogative and Indefinite have *quis, quid substantive*, and *qui, quod adjective*. But *quis* and *qui* are sometimes used for each other. (For *quis*, indef., see 2, d.)

   b. Old forms for the gen. and dat. are *quotius, quod*. A locative *cui* occurs only in the form *cuicuimōdi*, of whatever sort.

   c. The form *qui* is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (*how, by which way, in any way*), and in the combination *quicum*, as interrogative or indefinite relative.

   d. A nom. plur. *quēs* (stem *qui*) is found in early Latin. The dat. and abl. *quis* (stem *quē*) is old, but not infrequent.

   e. The preposition *cum* is joined enclitically to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns.

2. The stems *quo* and *qui* are variously compounded.

   a. The suffix *-cunque* (*-cumque*) added to the relative makes an Indefinite-relative, which is declined as the simple word: as, *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever*.

   **Note.** — This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative: as, *qualiscunque, of whatever sort; quandocunque (quandoque), whenever; ubicunque, wherever.*
b. The interrogative form doubled also makes an indefinite-relative: as, quisquis, whoever (so utut, however, ubi ubi, wherever). Of quisquis both parts are declined, but the feminine is wanting: as,

Nom. quisquis (qui qui) quidquid (quicquid)
Gen. cujuscujus
Dat. cui cui
Acc. quem quem quidquid (quicquid)
Abl. quo quo

PLUR. Nom. qui qui Dat., Abl. quibus quibus

This compound is rare, except in the forms quisquis, quicquid, and quo quo. The case-form quamquam is used as a conjunction, although (lit. however). Qui qui is an early form.

c. Indefinite Compounds are the following: quispiam, any; quamquam, any-at-all; quivis, quilibet, any-you-please; quidam, a, a certain. Of these the first part is inflected like quis, qui, with quid or quod in the neuter.

d. In aliquis, any, si quis, if any, ne quis, lest any, ec quis, num quis, whether any, the second part is declined like quis, but having quâ for quae, except in the nom. plur. feminine. Si quis, ne quis, num quis, are better written separately. The simple form quis is rare except in these combinations; and the compounds quispiam, ali quis (si quis, if any one; si aliquis, if some one), are often used in these, being rather more emphatic.

The compounds of quis (indef.) are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliqui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicuius (or -quod)</td>
<td>alicuius (or -quod)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>alicuam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>alicuam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — Aliquis is compounded with ali-, old stem of alius, but with weakened meaning. Ec quis is compounded with en.

e. The enclitic -que added to the indefinite gives a Universal: as, quisque, every one; ubique, everywhere (so uterque, either of two, or both). Of quis que the first part is declined. In the compound unus quisque, both parts are declined, and sometimes separated by other words.

f. The relative and interrogative have a possessive adjective cujus (stem cujo-), whose; and a patriarchal cujas (stem cujat-), of what country.

g. Quantus, how great, qualis, of what sort, are derivative adjectives from the same stem, and are used as interrogative or relative, corresponding to the demonstratives tantus, talis. Quam, how, is an accusative of the same stem, corresponding to the case-form tam, so.

h. Quisquam, with ullus, any, unquam, ever, usquam, any-where, are chiefly used in negative, interrogative, or conditional sentences, or after quam, than; sine, without; vix, scarcely.
22. Correlatives.

Many adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs are found in several corresponding forms, as, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite. These are called Correlatives. Their forms are seen in the following Table: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEMONSTR.</th>
<th>RELAT.</th>
<th>INTERROG.</th>
<th>INDEF. REL.</th>
<th>INDEF.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is, that</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quis?</td>
<td>quisquis</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantus, so great</td>
<td>quantus</td>
<td>quantus?</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>aliquantus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tali, such</td>
<td>qualis</td>
<td>qualis?</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi, there</td>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>ubi?</td>
<td>ubiūbi</td>
<td>alicūbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eo, thither</td>
<td>quo</td>
<td>quo?</td>
<td>quoquo</td>
<td>aliquo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea, that way</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quā?</td>
<td>quāquā</td>
<td>aliquā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inde, thence</td>
<td>unde</td>
<td>unde?</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>alicunde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum, then</td>
<td>quum, cum</td>
<td>quando?</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>alicundo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tot, so many</td>
<td>quot</td>
<td>quot?</td>
<td>quotquot</td>
<td>aliquot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toties, so often</td>
<td>quotations</td>
<td>quotations?</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>aliquot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Compounds with -uumque.

a. The forms tot, quot, aliquot, totidem (originally toti), are indeclinable, and may take any gender, number, or case: as,

per tot annos, tot prosliis, tot imperatores (Cic.), so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles.

b. The correlative of the second member is often to be rendered simply as: thus,

tantum argenti quantum aeris, as much silver as copper.

c. A frequent form of correlative is found in the ablatives quo or quanto, by how much; eo or tanto, by so much, used with comparatives (rendered in English the . . the): as,

quo magis conatur, eo minus discit, the more he tries the less he learns.

d. Certain adverbs and conjunctions are often used correlatively: as,

et . . . et, both . . . and.
| ut . . ita (sic), as (while) . . so (yet).
| aut (vel) . . aut (vel), either . . or.
| sive (seu) . . sive, whether . . or.
| tam . . quam, so (as) . . as.
| cum (tum) . . tum, both . . and; not only . . but also.
| idem . . qui, the same . . as.

Note.—For the reciprocal use of alius and alter, see Syntax (§ 47, 9).
VERBS.


1. The forms of a Latin verb are the following:—

   c. Participles: Active, Present and Future.
      Passive, Perfect and Gerundive.
   d. Verbal Nouns: Gerund and Supine.
   e. Tenses: Present, Imperfect, Future; Perfect, Pluperfect, Future-Perfect.

   f. There are also separate terminations of inflection for each
      of the three Persons, Singular and Plural (§ 28).

   Note. — The Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, and Supine are not
      strictly parts of the verb, as having no personal terminations, but
      having the form and (in general) the construction of nouns. They
      were, however, regarded and used as verbal forms by the Romans.

2. Special forms for the following tenses are wanting in
   certain parts of the verb:—

   a. In the Subjunctive mood, the future and future-perfect.

   Note. — These are wanting, because the original meaning and
      most of the uses of this mood are future. In some cases, the future
      participle with the corresponding tense of esse is used.

   b. In the Passive voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect,
      which are supplied by corresponding tenses of esse, to be,
      with the Perfect Participle.

   c. In the Imperative mood only two tenses are found, — present
      and future. In the Infinitive only the present, perfect, and future.

3. The Active and Passive voices are equivalent to the
   corresponding English forms, except that the tenses of the
   passive are used with more exactness. Thus vocātur means,
   he is [being] called, i.e., some one is now calling him; vocā-
   tus est, he is called, i.e., the action is now over.

   Note. — The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning, as, indu-
   tur vestem, he puts on his clothes; and many verbs are active in mean-
   ing though passive in form. (See § 35, "Deponents.")

1. The Indicative is used for direct assertion or interrogation.

2. The Subjunctive is used chiefly in commands, conditions, and dependent clauses.

Note. — The Latin Subjunctive is usually translated, in grammars, by the English potential forms, may, might, could, would, &c., to distinguish it from the Indicative, because the English has no subjunctive in general use. But the subjunctive is used in many cases where we use the indicative; and we use the potential in many cases where the Latin employs a separate verb. Thus I may write (except when it follows ut, in order that) is not scribam (subj.), but licet mihi scribere; I can write is possum scribere; I would write is scribam, scriberem, or scribere velim (vellem); I should write, if, &c., scriberem si . . . or (implying duty) oportet me scribere. A few examples of the use of the subjunctive may be seen in the following: —

eamus, let us go. ne cunctemur, let us not linger.
quid morer, why should I delay?
si tardior sim iratus sit, if I should be too late he would be angry.
adsum ut videam, I am here to see [that I may see].
imperat ut scribam, he orders me to write.
nescio quid scribam, I know not what to write.
licet eas, you may go; cave cadas, don’t fall.
vereor ne eat, I fear he will go (vereor ut, I fear he will not).
sunt qui potent, there are some who think.
si ita esset non manerem, if it were so I would not stay.
quae cum dixisset abit, when he had said this he went away.

3. The Imperative is used for exhortation or command; but its place is often supplied by the Subjunctive.

4. The Infinitive is used as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or object of another verb; but often takes the place of one of the other moods.

Note. — For the Syntax of the Moods, see § 57.

25. Participles.

1. The Present participle has the same meaning as the English participle in -ing: as, vocans, calling; regentes, those ruling. (For its inflection, see § 16, 3.)

2. The Future participle is rarely used, except with tenses of esse, to be (see § 40), or to express purpose: as, urbs est casura, the city is about to fall; venit auditurus, he came to hear.
3. The Perfect participle is used to form certain tenses of the passive, and often has simply an adjective meaning: as, vocatus est, he was (has been) called; tectus, sheltered; acceptus, acceptable; ictus, having been struck.

Note.—There is no perfect active or present passive participle in Latin. The perfect participle of deponents, however, is generally used in an active sense, as secutus, having followed. In other cases some different construction is used: as, cum venisset, having come (when he had come); equitatu praemisso, having sent forward the cavalry (the cavalry having been sent forward); dum verberatur, while being struck (= τυπόμενος).

For the Syntax of these participles, see § 72.

4. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) has, with tenses of esse, the meaning ought or must (see § 40): as, audiendum est, he must be heard. But, in the oblique cases, it is oftener to be translated as if it were an active participle, and governed the word it agrees with: as, ad petendum pacem, to seek peace (§ 73).

26. GERUND AND SUPINE.

1. The Gerund is the neuter singular of the Gerundive. It is a verbal noun, corresponding to the English participial noun in -ing: as, loquendi causā, for the sake of speaking.

2. The Supines are the accusative and ablative (or dative) of a verbal noun of the fourth declension (§ 12, 4, a). They are generally translated by the English Infinitive of purpose: as, venit spectatum, he came to see; mirabile dictu, wonderful to tell.

Note.—The Supine in tūm is the regular Infinitive in Sanskrit.

27. TENSES.

1. The tenses of a Latin verb are of two classes: (1) those denoting incomplete action, the Present, Imperfect, and Future; (2) those denoting completed action, the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect.

Those of the former class, together with the Perfect, are also used to denote indefinite action.
2. The Present, Future, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect have the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English, but are distinguished more accurately in their use: as, 
\textit{dian aegrotò, I have long been [and still am] sick.}
\textit{cum venero scribam, when I come [shall have come] I will write.}

3. The Perfect and Imperfect are both used to denote past time, the former usually to tell a simple fact; the latter, a continued action, or a condition of things. The Imperfect is variously rendered in English: as,
\textit{dicoebat, he said, he was saying, or he used to say; saepe dicobat, he would often say; dictatbat, he kept saying.}

The Perfect has two separate uses, distinguished as \textit{definite} and \textit{historical}, corresponding to the English perfect (compound) and preterite (imperfect): as,
\textit{vocabat, he has called (definite), or he called (historical).}

Notes. — In Latin, and in the languages derived from Latin (as Italian and French), there are two past tenses, — the Perfect or Preterite (\textit{aorist}), which merely states that the fact took place; and the Imperfect, which is used for description, or to indicate that the action was in progress. In the Northern languages (Germanic or Gothic, including English), the same tense serves for both: as,
\textit{longius prosequi vetulit, quod loci naturam ignorabat, he forbade to follow farther, because he was ignorant of the nature of the ground (B. G. v. 9.).}

4. The tenses of \textit{completed action} are supplied in the Passive voice by adding the corresponding tenses of \textit{incomplete action} of \textit{esse} to the Perfect Participle: as, \textit{occisus est, he was slain, or, he has been slain.}

5. The tenses of a Latin verb are formed upon three different stems, called the \textit{present}, the \textit{perfect}, and the \textit{supine} stems.

\textbf{a.} The tenses of \textit{incomplete action}, both active and passive, are formed upon the Present stem.

\textbf{b.} The tenses of \textit{completed action} in the active voice are formed upon the Perfect stem.

\textbf{c.} The \textit{perfect participle}, which is used in the tenses of completed action in the passive voice, is formed upon the Supine stem.
28. Verb Forms.

1. Personal endings. Verbs have terminations for each of the three persons, both singular and plural, active and passive. These terminations are fragments of old pronouns, whose signification is thus added to that of the verb-stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active.</th>
<th>Passive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The present and perfect indicative have lost the m, and end in the modified stem-vowels o and i. Except sum, I am, and inquam, I say. (Here o stands for m with a preceding vowel.)

b. The second person of the perfect indicative has for the singular stі, and for the plural stіs. The third person plural has an ending of verbal origin, ērunt.

c. The Imperative has special terminations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active.</th>
<th>Passive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2. [lost]</td>
<td>Plur. 2. te, tote</td>
<td>Sing. 2. re Plur. 2. mɪni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>3. nto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The Passive is a peculiar Latin middle (or reflexive) form, made by adding se to the forms of the active voice, with some abrasion of their endings (the original form of se, svā, was not limited to the third person). Thus amor = amo-se, amaris = amasise, amatur = amatise. The above view seems the most probable, in spite of some objections. The ending mɪni in the second person plural of the passive is a remnant of the participial form found in the Greek -μενος.

All Latin words ending in t, except a few in ot, ut, with et, at, sat, are third persons of verbs; all in nt are third persons plural. In dumtaxat, however, licet, although, and the indefinite pronouns in -libet, the meanings of the verbs are disguised.

2. Changes of Stem. These terminations appear in all the tenses of the verb; but the Stem in many parts is variously modified to receive them, sometimes by changes in its form, and sometimes by additions at the end.

a. The Present indicative and subjunctive, the Imperative, and sometimes the Future, add the personal endings directly to the present stem, with or without change of vowel: as, do, dās-dat (stem dā-); vōcem (stem vōcā-).
b. The Perfect indicative also sometimes adds them directly; but to another form of the root called the perfect stem: as, dedi, dedisti, dedit.

Note.—The i of the Perfect, which in early Latin is always long (el, e) except before mus, is of doubtful origin. It is treated for convenience as part of the stem, as it is in dedi, stetī, where it takes the place of the vowel a. In the suffixes vi (= fict) and si (= Skr. āsī), and in the perfections of consonant-roots, it seems to be, but probably is not, a mere connecting vowel. The s before tī and tīs is also anomalous. Most scholars regard it as a remnant of es; but it may be, like the others, of pronominal origin.

c. All other true verbal forms are compounded with a suffix—originally a verb—which contains the personal endings: as, vocāv-eram, vocāv-ēro, vocā-bo. The first person of the Perfect, thus compounded, produces another form of perfect stem: as, vocā-vi.

d. The Present Infinitive Active, Present Participle, and Gerundive, add nominal (noun or adjective) suffixes to the present stem: as, vocāre, vocāns (antis), vocāndus.

e. The Perfect infinitive adds an infinitive (esse) already formed to the perfect stem: as, vocāvisse (= vocavi-esse).

f. The Perfect and Future Participles and the Supine are formed upon what is called a supine stem, which adds t- either to the Present stem or to the Root: as, vocāt-, tect- (root tēg-).

Note.—Strictly, these have no common stem, but are formed with special suffixes (to-, turo-, tu-). As, however, the form to which they are added is the same for each, and as the suffixes all begin with t, it is convenient to give the name supine stem to the form in t. The participle in to- corresponds to the Greek verbal -ros; that in turo- is a development of the noun of agency ending in -tor (as victor, victurus); that in tu- is an abstract noun of the fourth declension (§ 12, 4, a).

g. The Present Infinitive Passive is an anomalous form, made by adding -ri or i to the present stem: as, vocō, vocāri; tegō, tēgi. (When i is added, the final vowel of the stem disappears.) It was anciently followed by -ēr.

h. The Future Infinitive Passive is supplied by the supine in tum with the infinitive passive of eo, to go, used impersonally: as, vocatūm irti, to be about to be called.

Note.—The construction of this infinitive is different from the others, the form in tum being invariable, and the apparent subject accusative being really the object of the supine taken actively. Few verbs in fact have this form, for which futur with the subjunctive is often found.

3. Verb-Endings. The scheme of Verb-Endings, as they are formed by suffixes or personal endings, is as follows: —
### a. Verbal Forms.

**ACTIVE VOICE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[o]</td>
<td>m (vowel-change)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mus</td>
<td>mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tis</td>
<td>tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nt</td>
<td>nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bam</th>
<th>Rem</th>
<th>Bar</th>
<th>Rer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bas</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>Bāris(re)</td>
<td>Rēris(re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bat</td>
<td>Ret</td>
<td>Bātur</td>
<td>Rētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bāmus</td>
<td>Rēmus</td>
<td>Bāmur</td>
<td>Rēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bātis</td>
<td>Rētis</td>
<td>Bamīni</td>
<td>Remīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bant</td>
<td>Rent</td>
<td>Bantur</td>
<td>Rentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bo, or am (vowel-change)</th>
<th>Bor, or ar (vowel-change)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bis es</td>
<td>Bēris(re) āris(re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit et</td>
<td>Bītur ētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bīmus ēmus</td>
<td>Bīmūr ēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bītis ētis</td>
<td>Bīmīni emīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunt ent</td>
<td>Buntur entur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Ėrim</th>
<th>Tus (ta) { sum</th>
<th>Sim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isti</td>
<td>Ėris</td>
<td>Es</td>
<td>Sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>Ėrit</td>
<td>Est</td>
<td>Sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imus</td>
<td>Ėrimus</td>
<td>Tī (ta, { stūmus</td>
<td>Simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Istis</td>
<td>Ėritis</td>
<td>Estis</td>
<td>Sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ėrunt</td>
<td>Ėrint</td>
<td>Sunt</td>
<td>Sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plusperfect.**

| Ėram | Issem | Tus (ta) \{ Ėram | Essem |
| Ėras | Issees | Tum | Essees |
| Ėrat | Isset | Erat | Esset |
| Erāmus | Issēmus | Tī (ta, \{ Erāmus | Essēmus |
| Erātis | Issētis | Erātis | Essētis |
| Ėrant | Issent | Erant | Essent |
FUT. PERFECT.

ěro
ěris
ěrit
ěrīmus
ěrītis
ěrīnt

Imperative.

re
to
tor
mīnī
nto
ntor

b. Nominal Forms.

Infinitive.

Present. re (Pres. stem) ri or i (old rier, ier)
Perfect. āssē (Perf. stem) tus (a, um) esse
Future. turus (a, um) esse tum īri

Participle.

Present. nas, ntis
Perfect. —
Future. turus (surus), a, um Gerundive. ndus, a, um
Supine. tum, tu (Present stem)

Note. — The origin and meaning of some of the above verb-endings may be given as follows. The suffix āram is an imperfect of bhū, which appears in āsē, āsurus, āstō, the Greek φῶ, and English be; — rem (for sem) is an optative or subjunctive imperfect of ēs, which appears in sum, āmā, amā, &c.; — bo is a future, and vi a perfect, of bhū; — si is a perfect of ēs, and is kindred with the aorist-ending sa, though not of the same formation; — ērim is an optative form of ēs corresponding to sim; — ero is the future of ēs (for ēs-iō).

29. Esse and its Compounds.

The verb ēssē, to be, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Note. — The present participle, which should be sens (compare Sanskrit sant), appears in that form in ab-sens, pra-sens; and as ens (compare ēv) in pot-ens. The simple form ens is sometimes found in late or philosophical Latin as a participle or abstract noun, in the forms ens, Being; entia, things which are.
### Principal Parts:

- **Present, sum, I am.**
- **Infinitive, esse, to be.**
- **Perfect, fui, I was or have been.**
- **Future Participle, futūrus, about to be.**

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. sum, I am.</td>
<td>sim, I am, may be, &amp;c. (see examples on p. 51).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es, thou art.</td>
<td>sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. est, he (she, it) is.</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. sumus, we are.</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. estis, you are.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sunt, they are.</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. eram, I was.</td>
<td>essem, was (would or fœrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eras, thou wast.</td>
<td>esses, might be, &amp;c.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erat, he was.</td>
<td>fœret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. eramus, we were.</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. erātis, you were.</td>
<td>essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erant, they were.</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. ero, I shall be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eris, thou wilt be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erit, he will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. erimus, we shall be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eritis, you will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. erunt, they will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fui, I was (have been).</td>
<td>fuĕrim, was (have been, may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuisti, thou wast.</td>
<td>fuĕris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuit, he was.</td>
<td>fuĕrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fuimus, we were.</td>
<td>fuerĭmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuistis, you were.</td>
<td>fuerĭtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuērunt, they were.</td>
<td>fuĕrint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or fuĕre.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pluperfect.

SING. 1. fuĕram, I had been. fuissem, had been (might or
2. fuĕras, thou hast been. fuisses [would have been).
3. fuĕrat, he had been. fuisset

PLUR. 1. fuerămus, we had been. fuissēmus
2. fuerētis, you had been. fuissētis
3. fuĕrant, they had been. fuissent

Future Perfect.

SING. 1. fuĕro, I shall have been.
2. fuĕris, thou wilt have been.
3. fuĕrit, he will have been.

PLUR. 1. fuerīmus, we shall have been.
2. fuerītis, you will have been.
3. fuerint, they will have been.

Imperative.

Present. es, be thou. estе, be ye.

Future. esto, thou shalt be. estote, ye shall be.
esto, he shall be. sunto, they shall be.

Infinitive.

Present. esse, to be.

Perfect. fuisse, to have been.

Future. fore or futurus esse, to be about to be.

Future Participle. futurus, a, um, about to be.


Note.—The root of the verb esse is es-, which in the imperfect is changed to er- (§ 1, 3, e), and in many cases is shortened to s-. Some of its modifications, as found in several languages more or less distantly related to Latin, may be seen in the following Table:—the “Indo-European” being the primitive or theoretic form, and the form syām corresponding to the Latin siem, sim:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as-mi</td>
<td>as-mi</td>
<td>syām (opt.)</td>
<td>ᾱmμμ</td>
<td>yes-mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-il</td>
<td>as-i</td>
<td>syās</td>
<td>ἱσόι†</td>
<td>yes-si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-il</td>
<td>as-ti</td>
<td>syāt</td>
<td>ἱστι</td>
<td>yes-ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-masi</td>
<td>s-mas</td>
<td>syāma</td>
<td>ἱσψάμ</td>
<td>yes-mu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-tali</td>
<td>s-tha</td>
<td>syāta</td>
<td>ἱστα</td>
<td>yes-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-anti</td>
<td>s-anti</td>
<td>syus</td>
<td>ἱστι†</td>
<td>s-unti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† Old Form.

The Perfect and Supine stems, fut, futu-, are kindred with the Greek (ἦν, was), and with the English be.
a. The verb esse is compounded, without any change of its inflection, with many prepositions. In the compound prod esse, to profit, pro retains its original d where followed by e: as, prosum, prodes, prodest, prosimus, prodestis, prosunt.

b. Esse is also compounded with the adjective potis or pote, able, in the verb posse. Its inflection, with that of prod esse, is given in the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum, I can.</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>prosum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes, thou can.</td>
<td>possis</td>
<td>prodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest, he can.</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>prodest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possimus, we can.</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>prostimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potestis, you can.</td>
<td>possitis</td>
<td>prodestis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possunt, they can.</td>
<td>possint</td>
<td>prosunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potēram</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>prodēram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potēro</td>
<td>prodēro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potui</td>
<td>potuērim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuēram</td>
<td>potuēsem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potuēro</td>
<td>profuēro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>prodes, prodesto, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr. posse</td>
<td>Perf. potuēse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[potens, powerful.</td>
<td>profuturus, about to help.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

30. Conjugation.

There are in Latin four principal forms of Present Stems, ending respectively in ā, ē, ē, ī. With this difference of stem most of the other differences of conjugation coincide.

Verbs are accordingly classed in four regular conjugations, distinguished by the vowel before re in the Present Infinitive Active, which is the same in each case as those given above.
30: 1, 2.]  

CONJUGATION.  

61  

Note. — This mode of classification was invented by the Roman grammarians, and has been generally adopted by the moderns. In fact, however, the vowels a, e, i (long), found in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, are different corruptions of the form AYA, which in the original language was added to roots in one form of present stems. All other forms of present stems, except a few unmodified, had originally, or received in Latin, a suffix ending in (or consisting of) a short, which was corrupted to e or i short. These are collected in the Third Conjugation. A few roots ending in a vowel were drawn — perhaps by vowel-increase — into the analogy of the other conjugations; and a few of the fourth conjugation had IYA instead of AYA.

1. First Conjugation. Most verbs of the first conjugation retain the stem-vowel (ā) throughout, except in the present indicative, which loses it before o, and the present subjunctive, where it is changed to ō (see § 28, i, a).

Note. — DARE, to give — stem originally dāk — retains a short, except in da and das. The Subjunctive with changed vowel (e) corresponds to the Greek and Sanskrit Optative, and is formed by the addition of a tense of i, to go, a—i becoming e.

a. In the Future, the ending -bo, &c., is added to the present stem: as, vocābo.

b. The Perfect stem adds vi to that of the present: as, vocāvi. But

1. A few verbs, either always or occasionally, add vi not to the present stem, but to the root, v becoming u: as, sono, sonui (see p. 67).

2. Two verbs, do, sto, form their perfect stem by reduplication: dēdi, stēti.

c. The Supine stem adds t to the present stem; but verbs that add vi to the root add t in like manner, sometimes with a connecting vowel: as, seco, sectus; domo, domitus.

2. Second Conjugation. Only a few verbs of the second conjugation retain ē throughout.

a. The Present Indicative has e before o in the first person; in the Present Subjunctive a (originally ā) is inserted after e: as, deleo, deleam.

Note. — The a in the present subjunctive is borrowed from the third conjugation. (See next head, 3, c, n.)

b. The Future (as in the first conjugation) adds -bo, &c., to the present stem: as, deēbo.

c. In a few verbs, the Perfect stem adds vi to the present, as deleo, delevi; but in most this termination is added to the root, as moneo, monui (see p. 69).


3. Third Conjugation. To the third conjugation belong those verbs which form the present stem in any other way than by adding a long vowel to the root.

a. The Present Stem is formed in eight different ways, in all of which ̄e (original ā), or else a suffix containing it, is added to the Root. Besides this addition,—

1. The vowel of the root is lengthened (vowel-increase): as in dúco, fídeo, núbo (compare dúcis, perfídus, prontúba; also Gr. λείπω, root λει-).

2. The root is reduplicated: as in sisto, bībo, gigno, from the root stā- (in stātus), pā- (in pōtus), gōn- (in gōnus; compare γίγνομαι, root γεν-).

3. The root is strengthened by the insertion of n (m) before its final consonant: as in findo, frango, cumbo (compare think, thought; μανθάω, root μαθ-).

4. Final l or r of the root is doubled by assimilation of an added consonant: as in fallo, pello (compare στέλλω, root στελ-), verro.

5. The consonant n is added to the root: as in cerno, lino, temño (compare τείμω, root τεμ-).

6. The root adds sc or loc (originally and often still inceptive): as in dico (＝ dicisco, root dico), nascor (root gnā), nanciscor (root nāc, compare φαίσκω, εἰρήσκω).

7. The root adds t: as in pecto, plecto, mitto (compare κόπτω).

8. The root adds l (originally y) in the following: căpio, cūpio, -cūtio, fācio, fūdio, fīgio, jācio, -līcio, pārio, quātio (-cūtio), rāpio, sāpio, -spīcio.

Note.—Verbal stems in u add merely the vowel e, and are of the third conjugation. The u may be radical, as in suo, pluo, fluo; or developed from a palatal, as in loquor, stingo (cf. στίγω); or may belong to the noun in denominatives, as statuo (statu-), acuo (acu-). Stems in o are lost, as po- (cf. potum); or have become of the first conjugation, as boo, boare.
b. The stem-vowel ō is weakened to ı in several forms of the Present indicative and imperative; is lengthened to ō in the Imperfect; and undergoes other changes exhibited in the paradigm.

c. The Future is formed (without the suffix bo) by vowel-changes to a and e before the personal endings.

Note.—The a (properly long) of the future is borrowed from the present subjunctive; the forms in e have the same origin as the present subjunctive of the first conjugation, and are properly optative.

d. The Perfect stem is formed in five different ways:—

1. The root is reduplicated: as in cādo, cecīdi; currō, cūcurrī; discō, didīci.

2. The root-vowel is increased, ā becoming ō, and ı, ı̆, ū being simply lengthened: as in cāpio, cēpi; fōdio, fōdī; fūgio, fūgī.

3. The same form appears in the perfect as in the present stem: this is regular with verbs of this conjugation in un (vo): as, aequō, aequī; solvo, solvī.

Note.—It is probable that in the last two cases the root was originally reduplicated; but that the reduplication was retained only where vowel-increase did not take place.

4. The suffix si is added to the root: as in carpo, carpsai; gēro, gessai; sūmo, sumpai; dico, dixī; tēgo, textī.

5. The suffix (Ita) is added to the root: as in cōlo, colui; frēmo, frenum; gigno, genui; rapiō, rapui. Before this suffix a long vowel of various origin is often found: as in cūpio, cupīvi; peto, petūvi; sperno, sprēvi.

Note.—Both suffixes are combined in the following: necto, nexui; plecto, plexui. A few verbs vary: as, pango, paxi (pegi or pepti); vello, vellii or vulsi.

e. The Present Subjunctive changes ō to ā: as, vehēre, vehās.

Note.—This form with ā corresponds to the Greek and Sanskrit subjunctive with long vowel, and proceeds from the addition of another a (short): compare ἥξυς, vaḥāsi.

f. The Supine stem is formed by adding to the root ť- which in many cases takes euphonically the form ą- (§ 1, 3, f. 4).

Note.—A few roots take a connecting vowel before this affix, and some have both forms. When this is the case, the future participle and derivative verb take the longer form: as, ortus, oriturus; actus (ago), agito.

g. Some verbs of the third conjugation form the other parts upon the (modified) present stem as a root: as, fingō, finxi, ficit- (füg); jungo, junxi, junct- (jüg).

h. In verbs which add ū to the root in the present stem, this vowel is lost where it would be followed by ō or ū (except in the future third person singular): as in capīt, capēret, capiet.
4. Fourth Conjugation. Verbs of the fourth conjugation retain I throughout (short before another vowel).

a. Several forms of the present stem have in addition the final vowels of the third conjugation. In the Imperfect the regular form (retained in ibam, from co) is often found in early Latin.

b. The Future does not take bo, but has is and is (from the third conjugation) before the personal endings. In early Latin the form in bo (retained in Ibo) sometimes occurs.

c. The Perfect stem adds vi to the present stem: as, finio, finivi. A few verbs add it to the root, as aperio, aperui; several add si, as sentio, sensi; and in a few the perfect is the same as the present stem, with or without vowel-increase: as, repério, repéri; vénio, véri.

d. The Supine stem adds t- to the present: as, finio, finitus. A few add it to the root: as, salio, saltus; sepelio, sepultus.

5. Principal Parts. The principal parts of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are the following: 1. Present Indicative (showing the present stem); 2. Present Infinitive (the conjugation); 3. Perfect (the perfect stem); 4. Supine (the supine stem).

a. The regular forms of conjugation are seen in the following:

1. voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum, call.
2. dēleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum, destroy.
3. carpo, carpēre, carpsi, carptum, gather.
4. audio, audīre, audīvi, auditum, hear.

In the second conjugation, however, the characteristic ē rarely appears in the perfect and supine: thus the type of this conjugation is —

mōneo, mōnēre, monui, monētum, warn.

b. What is called the Synopsis of a verb consists of the first person singular of each tense, with infinitive and participles, given in regular order: as, of āmo, I love —

Present Stem. ACTIVE VOICE. Perfect Stem.

INDIC. amo, amabam, amabo. amavi, amaveram, amavero
SUBJ. amem, amarem.
amaverim, amavissem.
IMP. ama, amato. INF. amare, amavisse, amaturus essē.

PASSIVE VOICE. Supine Stem.

INDIC. amor, amabar, amabor. amatus sum, – eram, – ero.
SUBJ. amer, amarer.
amatus sim, – essem.
IMP. amare, amator. INF. amari, amatus esse, amatum ēri.
PART. amana, amaturus; amatus, amandus.
c. In many verbs the principal parts take the form of two or more different conjugations: as,
1. 2. dōmo, domāre, domui, domītum, subduē.
2. 3. augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum, increase.
3. 4. pēto, petēre, petīvi, petītum, seek.
4. 3. vincio, vincīre, vincī, vincītum, bind.

In these the conjugation is said to be denoted by the first or present stem.

d. The compounds of many verbs vary from the forms of the primitive. This variation is seen especially (1) in the change of the vowel of the root, ā in open syllables becoming ĭ and in close syllables ē, while ē becomes ĭ: as, cāpio, captum, concīpio, conceptum; tēneo, contīneo; (2) in the loss of the reduplication: as, concīdo, concīdī. (This is, however, retained in compounds of disco, do, posco, sto, and in some of those of currō).

6. Special Forms. The following special forms are found in the conjugation of many verbs:

a. In tenses formed upon the Perfect stem, v between two vowels is often suppressed, and the second vowel merged in the first (unless a or e follows ĭ or u): as, amasse—amavisse; fīestis—fīevistis; audieram—audiveram; nōsse—novisse; nōram—noveram. This is especially frequent in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and is regular in the compounds of eo: as, abītt for abīvit.

b. In many forms s with its vowel is suppressed in like manner when it would be repeated: as, dīxi for dīxisti.

c. Four verbs—dico, dúco, fācio, fēro— with several of their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the Imperative, making dic, dúc, fāc, fēr (but office, confice). The forms dice, duce, face (never fere) occur in early Latin.

d. For the imperative of scio, the future form scito is always used in the singular, and scito or scitōt usually in the plural.

e. The following are ancient forms, rarely found except in poetry:

1. In the fourth conjugation -ībam, -ībo for -īebam, -īam (fut.); 2. In the present subjunctive -im: as in duim, perduim (retained also in religious formulas); [reconciliassere;
3. In the perf. subj. and fut. perf. -so, -sim: as, faxo, faxim,
4. In the passive infinitive -ier: as, vocarier for vocari

7. Parallel Forms. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use:
as,
lavo, lavāre or lavēre, to wash.
scateo, scatēre or scatēre, to gush.
ludīfōco, āre or ludīfforic, āri, to mock.
31. First Conjugation.

Present Infinitive Perfect Subjunctive

Principal Parts: amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum.

Active Voice:

Indicative. | Subjunctive.
---|---
Present, I love or am loving.
amo, I love. | amem | amor | am er
amas, thou lovest. | amēs | amāris (re) | amēris (re)
amat, he loves. | amēt | amātur | amētur
amāmus, we love. | amēmus | amāmur | amēmur
amātis, you love. | amētis | amamīnī | amemīnī
amant, they love. | ament | amantur | amentur

Imperfect, I loved (used to love).
amābām, I loved. | amāarem | amābar | amārer
amābas | amāres | amābaris (re) | amāris (re)
amābat | amāret | amābur | amātur
amābāmus | amārēmus | amābāmur | amāmur
amābātis | amārētis | amabamīnī | amaremīnī
amābant | amārent | amabantur | amarentur

Future, I shall love.
amābo, I shall love. | amèbor | amābaris (re)
amābis | amābitur
amābit | amābīmur
amābīmus
amābītis
amābīnt

Perfect, I loved (have loved).
amāvi, I loved. | amavērīm | amātus sum | amātus sim
amavēstī | amavēris | amātus es | amātus sis
amavērit
amavēmus | amaverīmūs | amati sumus | amati simus
amavēstīs | amaverītis | amati estis | amati sitis
amavērunt (ere) | amavērīnt | amati sunt | amati sint

Pluperfect, I had loved.
amavēram, I had amavēssem | amatus eram | amatus essem
amavēras [loved. amavēsses | amatus eras | amatus esses
amavērat | amavēset | amatus erat | amatus esset
amavērāmus | amavissemūs | amati erāmus | amati essēmus
amaveratis | amavissētis | amati erātis | amati essētis
amavērant | amavissemant | amati erant | amati essent

Future Perfect, I shall have loved. I shall have been loved.
amavēro, I shall have loved. | amatus ero
amavēris
amavērit
amaverīmus | amati erīmus
amaverītis
amavērint | amati erītis
amavērint | amati erunt

Passive Voice:

Indicative. | Subjunctive.
---|---
I am beloved.

I was loved.

I shall be loved.

I was (have been) loved.

I had been loved.

I shall have been loved.
ACTIVE.  
Fut. amāto, thou shalt (he shall) amāto, he shall be loved.
amatote, ye shall love.
amanto, they shall love.

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amāre, to love. amāri, to be loved.
Perf. amavisse, to have loved. amātus esse, to have been loved.
Fut. amatūris esse, to be about to love.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. amans, loving. —
Perf. — amatus, beloved.
Fut. amatūrus, about to love. —

GERUNDIVE. amandus, a, um, to be loved (lovely).
GERUND. amandum, -di, -do, loving.
SUPINES. amātum, amātu, to love.

1. There are about 360 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them formed directly upon a noun or adjective-stem, to which they generally give the force and meaning of an active verb: as, armo, to arm (arma); caeco, to blind (caecus); exsul, to be in exile (exsul). Their conjugation is usually regular, like amo; though of many only a few parts are found in use.

2. Those which form their Perfect and Supine stems differently are the following,—those marked † having also regular forms; and those preceded by a hyphen being found only in compounds:—

crepo, crepu, crepit-, resound. plico, -plicui, -plicit-, fold.
cubo, cubui, cubit-, lie down. poto, potavi, † pot-, drink.
do, dare, dedi, dat-, give. seco, secui, sect-, cut.
domo, domui, domit-, subdue. sono, sonui, sonit-, sound.
frico, frucui, † frict-, rub. sto, steti, stat-, stand.
juvo, juvi, jut-, help. tono, tonui, tonit-, thunder.
mico, micui, glittor. veto, vetui, vetit-, forbid.
neco, † necui, † nect-, kill.
### 32. Second Conjugation

**Principal Parts:** moneo, monère, monui, montium.

#### Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneo, I warn.</td>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneas, you warn.</td>
<td>monēris (re)</td>
<td>moneāris (re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet, he warns.</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>monēamus</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>monēāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>monēātis</td>
<td>monemīni</td>
<td>monemīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monent</td>
<td>monēaut</td>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>monentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

I warned (was warning).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbam</th>
<th>Monērem</th>
<th>Monēbar</th>
<th>Monērer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbas</td>
<td>Monēres</td>
<td>Monēbaris (re)</td>
<td>Monēriēris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbat</td>
<td>Monēret</td>
<td>Monēbartur</td>
<td>Monērettur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbāmus</td>
<td>Monērēmus</td>
<td>Monēbāmur</td>
<td>Monērettur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbātis</td>
<td>Monērētis</td>
<td>Monēbāmīni</td>
<td>Monēriēmīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbant</td>
<td>Monērēnt</td>
<td>Monēbantur</td>
<td>Monērettur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

I shall warn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbo</th>
<th>Monēbor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbis</td>
<td>Monēbris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbit</td>
<td>Monēbitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbīmus</td>
<td>Monēbīmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbitis</td>
<td>Monēbīmīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbunt</td>
<td>Monēbuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

I warned (have warned).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monui</th>
<th>Monūrērim</th>
<th>Monitus sum</th>
<th>Monitus sim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuisti</td>
<td>Monūrēris</td>
<td>Monitus es</td>
<td>Monitus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuit</td>
<td>Monūrērit</td>
<td>Monitus est</td>
<td>Monitus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monūimus</td>
<td>Monuērēmus</td>
<td>Moniti sumus</td>
<td>Moniti simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuīstis</td>
<td>Monuērētis</td>
<td>Moniti estis</td>
<td>Moniti sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērunt (re)</td>
<td>Monuērint</td>
<td>Moniti sunt</td>
<td>Moniti sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

I had warned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monuēram</th>
<th>Monuēissēm</th>
<th>Monitus eram</th>
<th>Monitus essem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuēras</td>
<td>Monuēissēs</td>
<td>Monitus eras</td>
<td>Monitus esses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērat</td>
<td>Monuēissēt</td>
<td>Monitus erat</td>
<td>Monitus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuēramus</td>
<td>Monuēissēmus</td>
<td>Moniti eramus</td>
<td>Moniti essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuēratis</td>
<td>Monuēissētis</td>
<td>Moniti eratis</td>
<td>Moniti essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērant</td>
<td>Monuēissent</td>
<td>Moniti erant</td>
<td>Moniti essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

I shall have warned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monuēro</th>
<th>Monitus ero</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuēris</td>
<td>Monitus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērit</td>
<td>Monitus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērīmus</td>
<td>Moniti erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuēritis</td>
<td>Moniti eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērint</td>
<td>Moniti erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

Sing. Plur.
Pr. monē, warn. monētē
F. monētō

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. Plur.
Pr. monēre
F. monētūrus esse

PASSIVE.

Pr. monēmē
F. monēmēn

INFinitive.

Pr. monēre PF. monēisse Pr. monēri PF. monēitus esse F. monētūrus esse F. monētūm iri (monētūs fore)

PantiCIPLES.

monens monitūrus monitus monendus

Gk. monendum, di, &c.

Sup. monētūm monitu

1. There are nearly 120 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of condition, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive form in -seco: as, caelo, calor, calidus, calesco; timeo, timor, timidus.

2. Most verbs of the second conjugation form their perfect and supine like moneo. The following have ēvi and ētum: deleo, destroy; fleo, weep; neo, spin; and compounds of -pleo, fill. The remainder are —

algeo, alsi, be cold.
ardeo, arsi, ars-, burn.
audeo, ausus sum, dare.
augéo, auxi, auct-, increase.
caveo, cavi, caut-, care.
censo, censui, cens-, value.
cieo, civi, cit-, excite.
doceo, docui, doct-, teach.
faveo, favi, faut-, favor.
ferveo, fervi (ferbui), glow.
foveo, fovi, fot-, cherish.
frigeo, frixi, be cold.
fulgeo, fulsi, shine.
gaudeo, gavisus sum, rejoice.
hæreo, hæsi, hæs-, cling.
indulgeo, indulsi, indult-, indulge.
jubeo, jussi, juss-, order.
languéo, langui, be faint.
līqueo, liqui (licui), melt.
luceo, luxi, shine.
lūgeo, luxi, luct-, mourn.
maneo, mansi, mans-, wait.
misceo, cui, mixt- (mint-), mix.
mordeo, momordi, mors-, bite.
movéo, movi, mot-, move.
mulgeo, mulsi, muls-, soothe.
nercso, (xi), muls- (mulc-), milk.
niveo, nivi (nixi), wink.
paveo, pavi, fear.
pendeo, pependi, hang.
prando, prandi, prans-, dine.
rideo, risi, ris-, laugh.
sedeo, sedi, sess-, sit.
soleo, solitus sum, be wont.
sordeo, sorbui (sorpsi), suck.
spondeo, sponodi, spons-, to
strideo, stridi, whiz. [pledge.
sudeo, suasi, suas-, urge.
teneo, tenui, tent-, hold.
tergeo, tersi, ters-, wipe.
tondeo, totondi, tons-, shear.
torqueo, torsi, tort-, twist.
torrdeo, torrui, tost-, roast.
turgeo, turi, swell.
urgeo, ursi, urge.
video, vidi, vis-, see.
voveo, vovi, vot-, vow.
### 33. Third Conjugation

**Present Infinitive, Perfect Stems**

**Active Voice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present, I rule.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regó, I rule.</td>
<td>regam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis, thou rulest.</td>
<td>regas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit, he rules.</td>
<td>regat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regimus, we rule.</td>
<td>regamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitis, you rule.</td>
<td>regatís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regunt, they rule.</td>
<td>regant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect, I ruled (was ruling).**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regébam, I ruled.</td>
<td>regérem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regébas</td>
<td>regéres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regébat</td>
<td>regéret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regebámus</td>
<td>regerómus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regebátis</td>
<td>regerótesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regebánt</td>
<td>regérent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future, I shall rule.**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam, I shall rule.</td>
<td>regar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reges</td>
<td>regèris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regètur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regémus</td>
<td>regèmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regétis</td>
<td>regémíni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regent</td>
<td>regentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect, I ruled (have ruled).**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rexi, I ruled.</td>
<td>rexèrim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexistí</td>
<td>rexèris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexit</td>
<td>rexèrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reximus</td>
<td>rexerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexistis</td>
<td>rexeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexérunt (re)</td>
<td>rexèrint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect, I had ruled.**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rexemás, I had</td>
<td>rexissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexéras [ruled.</td>
<td>rexisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexèrat</td>
<td>rexisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexerámus</td>
<td>rexissemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexerátis</td>
<td>rexissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexérant</td>
<td>rexissetent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect, I shall have ruled.**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rexèro, I shall have ruled.</td>
<td>rectus ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexèris</td>
<td>rectus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexèrit</td>
<td>rectus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexerímus</td>
<td>recti erímus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexeritis</td>
<td>recti eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rexèrint</td>
<td>recti erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Conjugation

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr. 2. rege, rule.</td>
<td>regíto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. 2. regíto</td>
<td>regítote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. regíto</td>
<td>regínto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr. regíre</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. rectus esse</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr. rexisse</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. rectum iri</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

- regens
- rectus
- regendus

#### Participles

- regendum, di, &c.
- Sup. rectum, rectu

Verbs in io (present stem) are inflected as follows:

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present, I take</th>
<th>I am taken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capio</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis, thou takest</td>
<td>capias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit, he takes</td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus, we take</td>
<td>capiamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis, you take</td>
<td>capiantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt, they take</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect, I took (was taking)</th>
<th>I was taken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiērem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbas</td>
<td>capiēres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāntis</td>
<td>capiēbāntis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future, I shall take</th>
<th>I shall be taken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capies</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Plup.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cepi</td>
<td>cepērim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cepies</td>
<td>cepēsem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cepio</td>
<td>cepēro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capimīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capītote</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiuntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

- capere
- cepisse

#### Part.

- capiens
- capturus
1. The following simple verbs of this conjugation form the perfect and supine stems like *rego*, by adding *s* and *t* to the root. Those marked † take *s* in the supine:—

an-go, choko; car-po, pluck; cingo, bind; † clo-audo, shut;
clę-po, steal; cómo, comb; cóquo, cook; dęmo, take away;
dico, say; dúco, guide; † figo, fix; † flecto, bend; frigo, fry;
† laedo, hurt; lingo, lick; † lūdo, play; nūbo, marry; † pecto,
comb; † plau-do, applaud; plecto, twine; prōmo, bring out;
† rādo, scrape; ręgo, rule; rępo, creep; † rōdo, gnaw; sar-po,
prune; scal-po, scrape; scrib-o, write; ser-po, crawl; sūmo, take;
tęgo, shelter; tingo, stain; traho, drag; † trūdo, thrust; † vādo,
go; veh-o, draw; vivo, live.

Note.—In these verbs, *h* and *v* are treated as *palatals*, becoming *x* and *ct*; *p* takes the place of *b*, and is inserted euphonically after *m*, before *s* and *t*; while *d* and *t* are omitted: as in *scripsi*, *sumpsi*, *flexi*, *plausi*; *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, are old compounds.

2. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation are conjugated as follows:—

capi-o, cep-i, capt-jo, take.
cupio, cupivi, cupit-jo, desire.
-cutio, -cussi, -cuss-jo, shake.
faci-o, faci, fac-tjo, make.
fodio, fodi, foss-jo, dig.
fugio, fugi, fugit-jo, flee.
jacio, jeci, jact-jo, throw (-icio).
-licio, -lexi, -lect-, entice.
pario, peperi, part-jo (pariturus), bring forth.
quatio, —, quass-jo, shake.
rapio, rapui, rapt-jo, seize.
sapio, sapivi, or sapui, be wise.
-spicio, -spexi, -spect-, view.

3. Those otherwise conjugated are the following (see § 30, 3, a, b).

ago, egi, act-jo, drive.
alo, alui, alt-jo (alit-), nourish.
arcesso, ivi, arcessit-, summon.
bibo, bibi, bit-jo, drink.
cado, cecidi, cas-, full.
cedo, cecei, ces-, cut.
cano, cecini, cant-, sing.
capsso, capessivi, undertake.
cedo, cessi, cess-, yield.
-cello, cellui(-culi), -cels-, push-jo.
-cendo, -cendi, -cens-, kindle.
cerno, crevi, -cret-, decrece.
colo, colui, cult-, dwell, till.
compeso, compescui, restrain.
consulto, lui, consult-, consult.
cresco, crevi, cret-, increase.
cudo, -cudi, -cus-, forge. [down.
cumbo [cub], cubui, cubit-, lie
curro, cucurri, curs-, run.
depso, depui, depst-, knead.
disco [dic], idici(disict-), learn.
divido. divisi, divis-, divide.
do, -didi, -dit- (as in abdo, &c.,
with credo, vendo), pul [dha]
edo, edi, esum, eat (§ 37, 5).
emo, emi, empt-, buy.
facesso, facessi, facesst-jo, execute.
fallo, fefelli, fals-, deceive.
fendo, -fendi, -fens-, ward off.
fero, ferre, tuli, lat-, bear (§ 37,
findo [fid], fidi, fiss-, split. [4].
rido, fisus sum, trust.
fingo [FIG], finxi, fict-, fashion. premo, pressi, press-, press.
fluo, fluxi, flux-, flow. [break. pungo [PUG], pupugi, punct-, frango [FRAG], fregi, fract-, to prick.
fremo, freumi, fremit-, roar.
frendo, -fresi, fress-, gnash.
fundo [FUD], fudi, fus-, pour.
furo, furui, rage.
gemo, gemui, gemit-, groan.
geru, gessi, gest-, carry.
gigno [GEN], genui, genit-, beget.
ico, i, icu, hit.
incesso, incessivi, attack. [voke. scisco, scivi, scit-, decree.
lacesso, lascivisi, lascisit-, pro- sero, sevi, sat-, saw.
lambus, lambi, lambit-, lap.
lavo, lavi, lot- (laut-), wash sido, sidi (sedi), sess-, settle.
(reg. of 1st conj.).
lego, legi(infinitelx.), lect-, gather. sisto [STA], stiti, stat-, stop.
lino [Li], levi (livi), lit-, smear. solvo, solvi, solut-, pay, lose.
linquo [Lic], -liqui, -lict-, leave. spargo, sparsi, spars-, scatter.
luo, lui, luit-, wash.
mando, mandi, mans-, chew.
mergo, mersi, mers-, plunge.
meto, messui, mess-, reap.
mitto, misi, miss-, send.
molo, molui, molit-, grind.
neco [NEC], nesi (nexui), nex-, weave.
nosco[GNO], novi, not-(cognit-), surgo, surrexi, surrect-, rise.
nuo, nui, nuit-, nod. [know. tango [TAG], tetigi, tact-, touch.
occulo, occului, occult-, hide. tendo, tetendi (-tendi), tens-
pando, pandi, pans- (pass-), (tent-), stretch.
opex.
pango [PAG], pega (pepigi),tero, trivi, trit-, rub.
† pact-, fasten.
parco, peperc, parcit-, spare.
pasco, pavi, past-, feed.
pello, pepuli, puls-, drive.
pendo, pendendi, pens-, weigh.
pergo, perrexii, perfect-, go on.
peto, petivi, petit-, seek.
pingo [FIG], pinxi, pict-, paint.
pinso, pinsi, pins-(pinst-, pist-), vincio [vic], vici, vict-, conquer.
bruise.
pono [POS], posui, posit-, put.
posco, poposci (posciturus,) de-
mand.
prehendo, di,prehens-, seize.

Those reduplicated in the perfect are—cado, cae, cane, curro, disco, fallo, pango, parco, pello, pendo, posco, pungo, tendo, tundo. The following have only the present stem: clango, ciando (limp), fulgo, glisco, glubo, limo, and inceptives in -sco, which take the perfect of their primitives (cf. nosco). In all, there are about 200 verbs of this conjugation.
### 34. Fourth Conjugation

**Principal Parts:** audio, audire, audīvi, auditum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Voice</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present, <em>I hear.</em></td>
<td><em>I am heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio, <em>I hear.</em></td>
<td>audiōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs, thou hearest, audiēs</td>
<td>audiēr (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit, <em>he hears.</em></td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēmus, we hear, audiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētis, you hear, audiētis</td>
<td>audiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect, <em>I heard (was hearing).</em></td>
<td><em>I was heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiērem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbas</td>
<td>audiēres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiērēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audiērētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>audiērent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future, <em>I shall hear.</em></td>
<td><em>I shall be heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam, <em>I shall hear.</em></td>
<td>audiāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audies</td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect, <em>I heard (have heard).</em></td>
<td><em>I was (have been) heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvi, <em>I heard.</em></td>
<td>audiēvērim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvisti</td>
<td>audiēvēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivit</td>
<td>audiēverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvīmus</td>
<td>audiēverēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvistis</td>
<td>audiēverētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērunt (re)</td>
<td>audiēverint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect, <em>I had heard.</em></td>
<td><em>I had been heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivēram, <em>I had audivesse.</em></td>
<td>audiētus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivēras [heard, audivesse]</td>
<td>audiētus eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērat</td>
<td>audiēset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērāmus</td>
<td>audiēverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērātis</td>
<td>audiēverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērant</td>
<td>audiēverant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perfect, <em>I shall have heard.</em></td>
<td><em>I shall have been heard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivēro, <em>I shall have heard.</em></td>
<td>audiētus ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivēris</td>
<td>audiētus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērit</td>
<td>audiētus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērīmus</td>
<td>audiētus erīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērītis</td>
<td>audiētus erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērint</td>
<td>audiētus erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fourth Conjugation

**Active** | **Imperative** | **Passive**
---|---|---
Pr. 2. audi, hear. | audite | audire | audimini
F. 2. audito | auditōte | | |
3. audito | audiento | auditor | audientor

**Infinitive**

Pr. audire | Pr. audivisse | Pr. audiri | Pr. auditus esse
F. auditurus esse | F. auditum iri (auditus fore)

**Participles**

audiens | auditurus | auditus | audiendus
Ger. audiendum, di, &c. | Sup. auditum, auditu

### 1. There are—besides a few deponents and regular derivatives in -ūrio—about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being descriptive verbs: viz., barrio, roar (as an elephant); crocio, croak; cícūrio, crow; dentio, teethe; ebullio, bubble; effutio, drive; frigutio, stutter; frītinnio, twitter; gannio, yelp; glutio, gulp; grunnio, grunt; hinnio, neigh; hirrio, snarl; ligūrio, lick; lipio, scream (as a hawk); lippio, blink; mugio, bellow; muttio, mutter; pavio, trample; sculpūrio, scratch; scatūrio, gush; singultio, hiccup; tinnio, tinkle; tussio, cough; vagio, cry.

### 2. Those not conjugated regularly, like audio, are the following (see § 30, 4, c):

amicio, amixi (amicui), amict-, reperio, reperi, repert-, find. clothe.
aperio, aperui, apert-, open.
comperio, peri, compert-, find.
farcio, farsi (farct-) (-tum), stuff.
fulcio, fulsi, fult-, prop.
haurio, hausi, haust-, drain.
operio, operui, opert-, cover.
raucio, rausi, raus-, be hoarse.

### 35. Deponent Verbs

1. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive voice, with an active or reflexive signification: as,

1. mīror, mīrāri, mīrātus, admire.
2. vēreor, verēri, veritus, fear.
3. sēquor, sequi, secūtus, follow.
4. pōtior, potūri, potitus, possess.
The synopsis of these verbs is given as follows:—

INDICATIVE.

Pres. miror vereor sequor potior
Imp. mirābar verēbar sequēbar potiēbar
Fut. mirabor verēbor sequar potiar
Perf. mirātus sim verētus sim secūtus sim potius sim
Plup. " eram " eram " eram " eram " eram
Fut. P. " ero " ero " ero " ero " ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. mirer verear sequare potiare
Imp. mirāre verēre sequēre potiēre
Fut. mirātus esse verētus esse secūtus esse potius esse
Perf. mirātus esse verētus esse secūtus esse potius esse
Plup. " essem " essem " essem " essem " essem

Imperat. mirāre, ētōr verēre, ētōr sequēre, ētōr potire, ētōr
Infin. Pr. mirāri verēri sequi potiri
Perf. mirātus esse verētus esse secūtus esse potius esse
Fut. -turus esse -turus esse -turus esse -turus esse

Part. Pr. mirans verens sequens potiens
Future miraturus veritūrus secūtūrus potitus
Perf. mirātus veritus secūtus potitus
Ger. mirandus verendus sequendus potiendus

a. These verbs have the participles of both voices: as, mirans, admiring; miraturus, about to admire; miratus, having admired; mirandus, to-be-admired (admirable).

b. The participle in dus (gerundive) has necessarily a passive meaning, and hence is found only in transitive verbs, or of neuter verbs used impersonally (§ 39, c): as, potiendus est tellus, the land must be won; pugnandum est nobis, we must fight.

c. Most deponents are neuter or reflexive in their meaning, corresponding to what in Greek is called the middle voice.

d. More than half of all deponents are of the first conjugation, and all of these are regular.

e. About twenty verbs of active signification are found in both active and passive forms: as, mereo or mereor, deserve.

f. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive signification: as, criminor, I accuse or I am accused.

g. The perfect participle of verbs otherwise deponent is often passive: as, mercatus, bought; adeptus, obtained.

h. The following list contains all the irregular deponents:

- adipiscor, i, adeptus, obtain.
- expersciscor, i, -mentus, think.
- experier, iri, expertus, try.
- fator, eri, fassus, confess.
- fruor, i, fructus, enjoy.
- fungor, i, functus, fulfill.
- gradior, i, gressus, step.
- irascor, i, iratus, be angry.
- labor, i, lapsus, fall.
- loquor, i, locutus, speak.
- miniscor, i, -mentus, think.
- metior, iri, mensus, measure.
- morior, i (iri), mortuus (mortus, moribundus), die.
- nanciscor, i, nactus (nactus), find.
- nitor, i, niusus (nixus), strive.
- obliviscor, i, oblivitus, forget.
- oppior, i, opperitus, await.
ordior, iri, orsus, begin. \textit{rise.}\ queror, i, questus, complain.
- orior, 3d. (iri), ortus (oritus), rer, reri, ratus, think.
- paciscor, i, pactus, bargain. \textit{- sequor, i, sequus, follow.}
- patior, i, passus, suffer. tueor, eri, tuitus (tuitus), defend.
- pector, i, plexus, clasp. \textit{- ulciscor, i, ultus, avenge.}
- proficiscor, i, prefectus, set-out\textit{.} utor, i, usus, use, employ.

9. Semi-Deponents. A few verbs, having no perfect stem, form the tenses of completed action like the passive; these are called \textit{semi-deponents} or \textit{neuter passives}. They are the following:—

\textit{audeo, audère, ausus, dare.}
\textit{fido, fidère, fissus, trust.}
\textit{gaudeo, gaudère, gavisus, rejoice.}
\textit{soleo, solère, solitus, be wont.}

\textit{a.} From \textit{audeo} there is an old subjunctive \textit{ausim}. The form \textit{sódès} (for \textit{si audeas}), \textit{an thou wilt}, is frequent in the dramatists.

\textit{b.} The active forms \textit{vapulâre}, to be flogged, and \textit{veníre}, to be sold (\textit{venum íre, go to sale}), having a passive meaning, are sometimes called neutral passives. To these may be added \textit{fiérl} (\textit{fio, to be made}, and \textit{exsulare}, to be banished (live in exile).

36. Derivative Verbs.

Several classes of verbs have derivative meanings corresponding to their form. (For their formation, see § 44.)

\textit{a.} \textbf{Incrivatives or Inchoatives} end in \textit{-isco}, and denote the \textit{beginning of an action}: as, \textit{calesco}, I grow warm (caleo); \textit{vesperascit}, \textit{it is getting late} (vesper). They are of the third conjugation, and have only the Present stem, though often completed by forms of simple verbs.

\textit{b.} \textbf{Intensives} or \textbf{Iteratives} end in \textit{-to} or \textit{-tto}, and denote a \textit{forcible or repeated action}: as, \textit{jactat}, he hurls (jacio); \textit{dictitabat}, he kept saying (dico). They are of the first conjugation.

\textbf{Note.} — Iteratives (or \textit{Frequentatives}), though distinct in meaning from Intensives, are not always distinguished from them in form.

\textit{c.} Another form of Intensives (sometimes called \textit{Meditatives}, or verbs of \textit{practice}) ends in \textit{-isco}, denoting a certain \textit{energy or eagerness of action}: as, \textit{facessit}, he makes haste to do. They are of the third conjugation, with perfect and supine of the fourth: as, \textit{laceraso, laccsiví, lcessitum, to provoke.}

\textit{d.} \textbf{Diminutives} end in \textit{-illo}, and denote a \textit{feeble or petty action}: as, \textit{cantillâre, to chirp or warble} (cano, sing).
37. IRREGULAR VERBS.

[For esse and its compounds, see § 29.]

Several verbs retain older forms in the tenses of the present stem, or combine two roots in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs.

The most common verbs of this class are —

1. Volo, velle, volui, to wish (the supine stem appears in vultus, countenance).

2. Nolo (non volo), nolle, nolui, to be unwilling.

3. Mâlo (mâge-volo), malle, malui, to prefer.

[For the inflection of volo, nolo, malo, see opposite page.]

4. Fëro, ferre, tûli, lâtum, to bear.

Note. — The perfect tûli is for tetûli (which sometimes occurs), from tul in tollo; the Supine lâtum for lâtatum (cf. τάγρον).

### ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fero</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>feror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>feras</td>
<td>ferris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferrat</td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferasus</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferais</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>ferbam</td>
<td>ferem</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tûli</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>latus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td>latus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Perf.</td>
<td>tuleri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PASSIVE

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fer</td>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>fertote</td>
<td>fertor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferto</td>
<td>ferunto</td>
<td>feruntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GER.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTION OF VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOLO, will.</th>
<th>NOLO, will not.</th>
<th>MALO, prefer.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDIC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJ.</strong></td>
<td><strong>INDIC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volo</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>velis</td>
<td>nonvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>nonvult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vol'umus</td>
<td>vel'mus</td>
<td>nol'umus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>veilitis</td>
<td>nonvultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nolunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT.**

| volesbam   | vellem        | nolebam      | nollem      | malebam    | mallem      |
| volebas    | velles        | nolebas      | noles       | malebas    | maixs       |
| volebat    | vellet        | nolebat      | nolat       | malebat    | mallet      |
| volebatamus| vellemus      | nolebatamus  | nollemus    | malebatamus| mallemus    |
| volebatiis | veletis       | nolebatiis   | nolletis    | malebatiis | malletis    |
| volebant   | vellent       | nolebant     | nollent     | malebant   | malleut     |

**FUTURE.**

| volam      | nolam t       | malam t      |             |             |
| voles      | noles         | males        |             |             |
| volet      | nolet         | malet        |             |             |
| volemus    | nolemus       | malemus      |             |             |
| voletis    | noletis       | maletis      |             |             |
| volent     | nolent        | malent       |             |             |

**PERFECT.**

| volui      | -erim         | nolui        | -erim       | malui      | -erim       |
| voluiisti  | -eris         | noluiisti    | -eris       | maluisti   | -eris       |
| voluit     | -erit         | noluit       | -erit       | maluit     | -erit       |
| voluimus   | -erimus       | noluiimus    | -erimus     | maluiimus  | -erimus     |
| voluistis  | -eritis       | noluiistis   | -eritis     | maluiistis | -eritis     |
| voluerunt  | -erint        | noluerunt    | -erint      | maluerunt  | -erint      |

**PLUPERFECT.**

| volueram   | -issem        | nolueram     | -issem      | malueram   | -issem      |
| volueras   | -isses        | nolueras     | -isses      | malueras   | -isses      |
| voluerat   | -isset        | noluerat     | -isset      | maluerat   | -isset      |
| volueramus | -issemus      | nolueramus   | -issemus    | malueramus | -issemus    |
| volueratis | -issetis      | nolueratis   | -issetis    | malueratis | -issetis    |
| voluerant  | -issent       | noluerant    | -issent     | maluerant  | -issent     |

**FUTURE PERFECT.**

| voluero    | nolueo        | malueo       |             |             |
| volueris   | nolueris      | malueris     |             |             |
| voluerit   | noluerit      | maluerit     |             |             |
| voluerimus | noluerimus    | maluerimus   |             |             |
| volueritis | nolueritis    | malueritis   |             |             |
| voluerint  | noluerint     | maluerint    |             |             |

**IMPERATIVE.**

| Pr.        | null, noll'te, do not. |
| FUT.       | noll'to, nolito'te, thou shalt not, ye shall not. |

**INFINITIVE.**

| PER.        | velle        | nolle        | malle       |
| PERF.       | voluiisse    | noluiisse    | maluiisse   |

**PARTICIPLE.**

| PRESENT, | volens, willing. | noles, unwilling. |
| GERUND,   | volendi, volendo  | nolendi       | t Bare.     |
5. Edo, to eat (regular of third conjugation), has also some forms directly from the root without a characteristic vowel: viz.,

**IND.** Pres. ēs, est, estis; Subj. Pres. edim, Imperf. essem; Imperat. ēs, esto, esto; Infinit. esse; Passive, estur, essētur; and, in compounds, comes, comest, comestum, comēsum; exest, exesset, exesse.

6. Eo, ire, ivi, Itum, to go (root I, cf. iē; the ē stands for et produced by vowel-increase from i). The forms of eo are found in veneo, to be sold, and in the passive, chiefly impersonal.

**INDICATIVE.**
Pres. S. eo, ia, it (itur, etc.)
P. īamus, itis, iunt
Imp. ībamus, ības, ībat
ībant
Fut. ībo, ībis, ībit
ībimus, ībitis, ībunt
Perf. īvi (ī) (itur est, etc.)
Plup. īveram (īeram)
Fut. P. īvero

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**
Pres. S. eam, eas, eat
P. eamus, eatis, eant
Imp. īrem, īres, īres
īremus, īretis, īrent
Fut. P. īverim (īerim)
Plup. īvissem (īsse)

7. Fācio, facēre, fēci, factum, to make,—regular, with the peculiar forms fut. perf. faxo, perf. subj. faxim, imperat. fac. It has for its passive

fiō, fiērī, factus sum, to be made, or become,
of which the tenses of the first stem are regular of the fourth conjugation, but with subj. imperf. fiērem.

**INDICATIVE.**
Pres. S. fiō, fiā, fiat
P. fiōmus, fiātis, fiunt
Imp. fiēbam
Fut. fiām, fiēs, &c.
Perf. factus sum
Plup. factus eram
Fut. P. factus ero

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**
Pres. fiāmus
P. fiērem
factus simul
factus essēm

**IMPERAT.** fiō, fiē; fito, fitote, fiunto

**PART.** Perf. factus

**INFIN.** Pres. fiēri

**PART.** Perf. factus esse

faciendus
Most compounds of facio with prepositions change a to i or e, and form the passive and imperative regularly: as, 
conficio, conficere, confecii, confectum, to finish.
Other compounds retain a, and have -fio in the passive: as, 
bene-facio (-fá'cis), -feci, -factum; pass. beneficio, to benefit.
A few isolated forms of -fio occur with prepositions (see § 38, h).

38. Defective Verbs.

1. Some verbs have lost their Present stem, and use only tenses of the Perfect (sometimes with the meaning of the present), in which they are inflected regularly.
   a. Coepi (root co-ap as in apiscor), I began. Infin. coopisse; Fut. Part. coepturus. A passive participle coeptus is used with the passive infinitive. For the Present, incipio is used.
   b. Odi, I hate (root ód- in odium); with the participles òsus, hating or hated (peròsus, utterly hateful), osurus, likely to hate.
   c. Memini, I remember (root men, as in mensa, reminiscor), with the imperative memento and mementote; part. meminens.

   Note.—Odi and memini, having a Perfect form with a present meaning, are called preteritive verbs.

2. Many verbs have only the Present stem, and in many the simple verb is incomplete, but the parts appear in the compounds. Some occur very commonly, but only in a few forms: as,
   a. Aio (root agh found in adagium and in nego, which has passed into the first conjugation):
      IND. PRES. Sing. aio, I say. Plur. —
      ais ait
      ait
      IMPERF. aibam (aibam), aiebas, &c.
      SURJ. PRES. ais, aiat, aient.
      IMPERAT. ai.—PART. aiens.

   b. Inquam, say (used only in quotations, as the English quoth, which is from the same root):
      IND. PRES. Sing. inquam Plur. inquilmus
      inquis inquitis (late)
      inquit
      IMPERF. inquibat.—FUT. inquiet.—PERF. inquisti.
      IMPERAT. inque, inquito.
c. Fari, to speak, forms the periphrastic tenses regularly: as, fatus sum, eram, &c. It has also

**IND. PRES.** fatur, fantur. — **FUT.** fabor, fabitur. 
**IMPERAT.** fare. — **INFIN.** fari. — **PART.** fanti (with the compound infans, as noun).  
**GERUND.** fandus, to be spoken of (with the compounds infandus, nefandus, abominable). — **SUPINE.** fatu.

The compounds affamur, affabimur, præsamini, &c., occur.

d. Quaeso, I ask, beg (an original form of quaero), has quaeso, quaestimus, quaesere, quaesens.

e. Ovare, to triumpf, has the following:

ovat, ovet, ovāret; ovans, ovandi, ovatus, ovaturus.

f. A few are found chiefly in the Imperative: as, salve, salvete, hail! also salvēre (from salus).

āve (or hāve), avēte, avēto, hail, or farewell.

cēdo, cēdite (cette), give, tell.

apāge! begone! (properly a Greek word).

g. Queo, I can, nequeo, I cannot, are conjugated like eo.

They are rarely used except in the Present.

**IND. PRES.** queo, quis, quit, quimus, quitis, queunt.  
**IMP.** quibam, quibat, quibant. — **FUT.** quibo, quibunt.  
**PERF.** quivit, quivit, quiverunt.

**SUBJ. PRES.** queam, &c. — **IMP.** quirem, quiret, quirent.  
**PERF.** quiverit. — **PLUP.** quissent.

**INFIN.** quire, quivisse (quisse). — **PART.** quiens, queuntis.

**IND. PRES.** nequeo (often non queo), nonquis, nequit, nequimus, nequitis, nequeunt.

**IMP.** nequibam, -bat, -bant. — **FUT.** nequibunt.

**PERF.** nequivi, nequivisti, nequivit, nequiverunt.

**SUBJ. PRES.** nequeam, &c. — **IMP.** nequirem.  
**PERF.** nequiverim. — **PLUP.** nequisset.

**INFIN.** nequire, nequivisse. — **PART.** nequiens.

h. The following compounds of fio have only the forms confit, it comes to pass; defit, it lacks; infit, he begins (to speak).


Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the third person singular, with the infinitive and gerund. These are called Impersonal Verbs.

**Note.** — With impersonal verbs the word it is used in English, having usually no representative in Latin, though id, hoc, illud, are often used nearly in the same way.
Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows:—

a. Verbs expressing the operations of nature: as, pluit, it rains; ninit, it snows; grandinat, it hails; fulgurat, it lightens.

In these, no subject is distinctly thought of; though sometimes the name of a deity is expressed; and, in poetic use, of other agents also: as, fundae saxa pluant, the slings rain stones.

b. Verbs of feeling, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as if himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb. Such are, miseret, it grieves; poenitet, it repents; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it shames; taedet, it wearies: as, miseret me, I pity (it distresses me).

Such verbs often have also a passive form: as, misereor, I pity (am moved by pity); and occasionally other parts: as, miseritum est, poeniturus, poenitendus, pudendus.

c. By a similar construction, the passive of intransitive verbs is very often used impersonally: as, pugnatur, there is fighting; dicitur, it is said; parcitur mihi, I am spared.

Note. — This use of the passive proceeds from its original reflexive meaning, the action being regarded as accomplishing itself (compare the French cela se fait).

da. Verbs which have a phrase or clause as their subject: as, libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; certum est, it is resolved; constat, it is clear; placet, videtur, it seems good; decept, it is becoming; delectat, juvat, it delights; oportet, necessis est, it is needful; praestat, it is better; interest, referet, it concerns; vacat, there is leisure; with verbs of happening and the like. Libet, licet, have also the forms libítum (licitum) est, etc.

40. Periphrastic Forms.

When the tenses of esse are used with a Participle, this use is called periphrastic conjugation. It is most frequent—

a. With the participle inurus, to express intention, or simple futurity; this is sometimes necessary in the subjunctive: as, cum venturus sit, since he is about to come. This form is sometimes called the first periphrastic conjugation; and, when used with sim, the future subjunctive.

b. With the gerundive to denote duty or propriety: as, vera dioenda sunt, the truth must be told. This form is sometimes called the second periphrastic conjugation.

c. With the perfect participle, in the regular inflection of the tenses of completed action in passives and deponents.

Note. — The participle in tus frequently, and that in ns regularly, is used with esse simply as an adjective: as, sapiens est, he is wise; acceptus est, he is welcome.
PARTICLES.

41. Adverbs.

What are called Particles — that is, all Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions — are real or extinct case-forms, or else compounds and phrases.

In classification Particles cannot always be distinguished; many prepositions and conjunctions being also reckoned among adverbs.

1. Derivation. The regular adverbs of manner are formed from Adjectives.

[For the comparison of these adverbs, see § 17, 4.]

a. Adjectives of the first and second declensions change the characteristic vowel of the stem into ō (originally an ablative in d): as, from carus, dear, carē, dearly.

So abunde, seepe, prope, from adjectives not in use; as also prod (pro), re- (red-), se-, (sed-).

b. Adjectives of the third declension add -ter to the stem (most being treated as i-stems): as, fortiter, bravely; vigilanter, watchfully.

Note. — This suffix is of uncertain origin, probably the same as in the Greek -τερος, and in alter, uter; and, if so, these are neuter accusatives.

c. Some adverbs of the former class have both forms: as, dure, duriter; misere, miseriter. (So alliter from alius — old stem ali-.)

d. The neuter accusative of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb (strictly a cognate accusative, see § 52, 1, d): as, multum, much; actutum, at once; facile, easily; non (= ne unum), not; iterum (comparative of is), again.

e. The ablative neuter or (less commonly) feminine is used adverbially: as, falsō, falsely; cito, quickly; rectā (viā), straight (straightway); contrā, on the other hand; quā (parte), where; quī, how; alloquī, otherwise.
PARTICLES.

§ 1. A few adverbs are datives of adjectives and pronouns: as, quo, whither; adeo, so; ultra, beyond; citro, this side; retro, back (compar. of uls, cis, re); illuc (illo-ce, weakened to illuc), thither.

§ 2. Some locative forms are used as adverbs: as, ibi, there; ubi, where, &c.; peregrine, abroad; hic, here; interim, meanwhile; deininde, then; tamen, yet; and the compounds extrinasicus, outside; perendie, day after tomorrow.

§ 3. Several feminine accusatives are used as adverbs: as, statim, on the spot; saltim, with a leap (generally in the form saltem, at least); palam, openly; perpēram, wholly otherwise (i.e., changed for the worse); tam, quam, nam (which may be neuters); olim (ollus), of old.

§ 4. Several plural accusatives, neuter and feminine, are used adverbially, as frustra, vainly; alias, otherwise; foras, out of doors.

§ 5. Some adverbs are of uncertain formation: (1) those in -tus (usually preceded by 1): as, penitus, funditus, from the bottom (utterly); divinitus, providentially, — which are ablative in meaning; (2) those in -dem, -dam, -do (in quan-do, when; do-nece, until), dum, perhaps jam (from the same root with dies, diu, &c.).

§ 6. Many phrases or clauses have grown into adverbs: as, antea, before; postmōдо, a little after; denuo (de nōvo), again; prorsus, utterly; quotannis, every year; quamobrem, wherefore; obviam, in the way; pridiem, before the day (i.e., before this time); forsana, a chance whether; forsitan (fors sit an), perhaps; scilicet (scire lictet), to be sure.

(For Numeral Adverbs, see § 18, 3.)

§ 2. Classification. Adverbs, other than those directly formed from adjectives, are classified as follows:—

a. Adverbs of Place.

ubi, where. unde, whence. quâ, by what way.

hic, here. hinc, hence. hac, by this way.

ibi, there. inde, thence. cā, by that way.

istic " istuc " istinc " istâ (illac)

illuc " illinc " illâ (illac)

alicubi, somewhere; aliquo alicunde aliquâ.

ibidem, in the same place; eodem indidem eādem.

alibi, elsewhere; alic aliunde aliā.

ubibi, wherever; quonquou undecunque quâquâ.

ubivis, anywhere; quovis undique quâvis.

sicubi, if anywhere; siquo sicunde sicuā.

necubi, lest anywhere; nequo necunde nequâ.
nusquam, nowhere; ultero, beyond (or freely); citro, to this side; intro, inwardly; porro, further on.
quorum, quo versus, to what end? horsum, this way; prorsum, forward (prorsus, utterly); introrsum, inwardly; retrosum, backward; sursum, upward; deorsum, downward; seorsum, apart; aliorsum, another way.

b. Adverbs of Time.

quando? when? cum (quom, quum), when (relat.).
nunc, now; tunc (tum), then; mox, presently; jam, already.
primum (primo), first; deinde (postea), next after; postremum, (postremo), finally.
umquam (unquam), ever; numquam, never; semper, always.
aliquando, some time, at length; quandoque (quandocumque), whenever.
quoting (quoties), how often; totiens, aliquotiens.
quodidie, every day; in dies, from day to day.
nondum, not yet; necdum, nor yet; vixdum, scarce yet; quam
primum, as soon as possible.

c. Adverbs of Degree or Cause.

quam, how, as; tam, so; quamvis, however much.
cur, quare, why; quod, quia, because; eo, therefore.
ita, sic, so; ut (uti), as, how; utut, utcumque, however.
quamquam (quanquam), although; etiam, quoque, even, also.

d. Interrogative Particles.

an, -ne, anne, utrum, num, whether.
nonne, whether not? numquid, equidem, whether at all? (equidem
intellegis? have you any idea?)
utrum (num), -ne, whether; . . . an (annon, necne), or.

— "an, -ne"

Note.—The word whether is not now used in English, except in
Indirect Questions (See § 71).

e. Negative Particles.

non, not in simple denial; haud (hau, haut), or minime, not
in contradiction; ne, not in prohibition.
ne, lest; neque, nec, nor; ne . . . quidem, not even.
non modo . . . verum (sed) etiam, not only . . . but also.
non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem, not only not . . . but not
even.
si minus, if not; quo minus, so as not.
quin (relat.), but that; (interrog.) why not? who (what) not?
ne (in compos.), not: as, nescio, I know not; nego (ne-alo),
I say no (alo, I say yes); nemo (ne homo), no one; ne
quis, lest any one.
ADVERBS.

REMARK.—Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: as, nemo non audiet, every one will hear.

This is especially frequent with compounds of non: as, nonnullus (= aliquis), some; nonnihil (= aliquid), something; nonnemo (= aliquot), sundry persons; nonnumquam (= aliquotiens), sometimes; necnon, also.

On the other hand, nemo non, nulli non, every one; nihil non, every thing; numquam non, always, &c.

3. Signification. The following adverbs require special explanation: —

a. Etiam, also, is stronger than quoque, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while quoque follows it: as, terret etiam nos, ac minatur (Rosc. Am. 40), us also he terrifies and threatens.

hoc quoque maleficium (id.), this crime too.

b. Nunc, now, means definitely the present time; jam, already, — or, with the future, presently; with negatives, no longer, — has reference to the past. Tunc, then, is a strengthened form of tum, which is correlative with cum, when: as, nunc jam confiteris, now at length you confess.

non est jam lenitati locus, there is no longer room for mercy.

quod jam erat institutum, which had come to be a practice.

nunc quidem deleta est, tunc floreat (Lael. 4), now ('tis true) she [Greece] is ruined, then she was in her glory.

tum cum regnabat, at the time he reigned.

c. Certō means certainly; certe (usually), at any rate: as, certo scio, I know for a certainty.

aut jam urgentis aut certe adventantis senectutis (C. M. i.), of old age, which is already pressing or at least approaching.

d. Primum, first (first in order, or for the first time), is usually followed by deinde, tum, ... denique; primo, at first, by posteâ (post) or mox, afterwards. (The adjective form is preferred in such phrases as nos primi, we first, &c.) Thus, primum de genere belli, deinde de magnitudine, tum de imperatore deligendo (Manil. 2), first of the kind of war, next of its greatness, then of the choice of commander.

e. Quidem, indeed, is emphatic, and often has a concessive meaning, especially when followed by sed, autem, &c. (see above nunc quidem, &c.). With ne ... quidem, not even or not either, the emphatic word must stand between: as, senex ne quod speret quidem habet (C. M. 19), an old man has not even any thing to hope for.

ne Jugurtha quidem quietus erat (Jug. 51), nor was Jugurtha quiet either.
42. Prepositions.

1. Prepositions are not originally distinguished from adverbs in form or meaning. They are, however, distinguished in their use, requiring to be followed by some special case of a noun or pronoun.

a. The following Prepositions require the accusative:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad, to</td>
<td>ergā, towards</td>
<td>post, after</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversus, or</td>
<td>extrā, outside</td>
<td>praeter, beyond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversum, towards</td>
<td>infrā, below</td>
<td>prope, near</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante, before</td>
<td>inter, among</td>
<td>propter, on account of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud, at, near</td>
<td>intrā, inside</td>
<td>secundum, next to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circā, or</td>
<td>jūxtā, near</td>
<td>suprā, above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum, around</td>
<td>ēb, on account of</td>
<td>trans, across</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumter, about</td>
<td>penes, in the power</td>
<td>ultrā, on the further</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cis, citrā, this side</td>
<td>per, through</td>
<td>side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrā, against</td>
<td>pōne, behind</td>
<td>versus, towards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. The following require the ablative:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā, āb, abs, from, by</td>
<td>ē, ex, out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absque, but for, without</td>
<td>prae, in comparison with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōram, in presence of</td>
<td>pro, in front of, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, with</td>
<td>sine, without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē, from</td>
<td>tenus, up to, or as far as</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. The following may take either case, but usually with a difference in meaning:—

in, into, in; sub, under; subter, beneath; super, above.

In and sub, when followed by the Accusative, signify motion to, when by the Ablative, rest in, a place.

(For the Syntax of Prepositions, see § 56.)

2. The meaning and use of these prepositions may be seen in the following examples, which include many adverbial phrases:—

A, ab, away from (opposite of ad): ab eo loco, from that place; a nobis, from our house; prope ab urbe, near (not far from) the city; secundus a rege, next the king; liberare ab, to set free from; occisus ab hoste (perit ab hoste), slain by an enemy; a fronte, in front; ab hac parte, on this side; a primo, at first; ab re, afterwards; dolet ab animo, he grieves at heart; ab initio ordiri, to begin at the beginning; stat ab amicis, he stands by his friends; ab hac contione, after this speech; ab re
ejus, to his advantage; servus a manu, an amanuensis; a pedibus, a footman.

Note.—ab signifies direction from the object, but towards the speaker; compare de and ex.

Absque, without:—absque argumento, without argument; absque paucis, except a few; absque me, but for me.

Ad, to, towards, at (place or time):—eo ad patrem, I go to my father; ad pedes ejus, at his feet; ad flumen, near the river; ad ripas, on the banks; ad meridiem, towards the south; ad vesperum, near evening; ad tempus, at the (fit) time; adit ad rempublicam, he went into public life; ad manus, to blows; ad petendam pacem, to seek peace; ad communem salutem, for the common safety; nihil ad Caesarem, nothing in comparison with Caesar; ad hunc modum, in this way; quem ad modum, how, as; ad nuptias, for the wedding; ad auxilium, for aid; ad hos causas, for these emergencies; ad centum, near a hundred; ad primum nuntium, at the first message; ad hoc, besides; ad speciem, in respect to form; ad praesens, for the moment; ad verbum, word for word; ad summum, in short, at most; ad ultimum, wholly, finally; ad unum, to a man.

Adversus (sum), opposite, towards, against:—adversus montem, over against the mountain; te adversum, to your face; adversus eum, in comparison with him; adversus ea, in reply to this; adversus deos, towards the gods.

Ante, in front, before (place or time):—ante oculos, before his eyes; ante urbem captam, before the city was taken; ante diem quintum (A.D.V). Kal, the fifth day before the Calends (third day before the end of the month); ante quadriennium, four years before or ago; ante alios carissimus, dearest of all; ante tempus, too soon; ante omniam, first of all; ante Ciceronem, before Cicero's time.

Apud, at or by (rarely of places):—apud forum, in the forum; apud populum, before the people; apud exercitum, with the army; apud aliquem, at one's house; apud se, at home, or in his senses; apud Ciceronem, in Cicero (in his works); apud antiquos, among the ancients.

Circum (acc.), circa (abl.), circiter (stem as in circus, circle), about, around:—circum axem vertitur, it turns about the axle; circum haec loca, hereabout; circa se habent, they have with them; (of time or number, circa or circiter, not circum):—circa eandem horam, about the same hour; circiter passus mille, about a mile; circa bonas artes (late), in reference to good arts; loca haec circiter, hereabout.

Cis, citra (abl. of comparative, compare Greek -repos), this side of (both motion towards and rest in; opposite to ultra):—cis Padum, this side the Po; citra flumen, this side the river; citra rustici operam, within the labor of a farmer; citra usum, without regard to use; citra satietatem, not to fulness; paucos cis dies, within a few days.
Contra (abl. comp of cum), opposite, against: — contra Italianum, over against Italy; contra hostem, against the enemy; contra munera, as a set-off to the gifts; haec contra, this in reply; contra autem, but on the other hand, adv.; quod contra, whereas on the other hand, adv.; non pro me sed contra me, not for but against me; contra fas, contrary to right.

Coram, in presence of (only of persons): — coram judicibus, before the judges; Germanico coram (Tac.), usually an adverb.

Cum, with (together in place or time): — cum fratre, with his brother; abi cum donis, away with your gifts; cum malo suo, to his own hurt; cum labore, with toil; cum dis volentibus, with favor of the gods; cum decimo, tenfold; consignare cum hoste, to fight with the enemy; cum armis, in arms; cum imperio, in power; cum pallio, in a cloak; esse cum telo, to go armed; cum silentio, in silence.

De, from, away, down from: — de domo, out of the house; de sella, down from his seat; unus de plebe, one of the people (the whole, from which a part is taken); emi domum de Crasso, I bought a house of Crassus (also ab); de tuo (de te), out of your property; qua de re, concerning which thing; qua de causa, for which reason; de summo genere, of high birth; de improviso, of a sudden; de industria, on purpose; de integro, anew; de nocte, at night; de tertia vigilia, just at midnight (starting at the third watch); de mense Dec. navigare, to sail in December; de amicorum sententia, in accordance with the views of friends; triumphare de, to triumph over; de schola, of that sect.

Erga, towards (usually of persons): — erga aedes, opposite the house; benevolentia erga nos, kindness towards us; malus erga me, spiteful towards me (but more generally used of a favorable inclination).

Ex, e, from (the midst, opposed to In), out of: — ex urbe, from the city; ex hoc die, from this day forth; statua ex aere, a statue of brass; ex fuga, during flight; ex consulatu. right after his consulship; ex aere alieno, by reason of debt; ex ejus sententia, after his opinion; ex aequo, justly; ex improviso, unexpectedly; ex tua re, to your advantage; ex voluntate ejus, by his good will; magna ex parte, in a great degree; ex pede Herculem, to know one by a slight token; felix ex misero, bettering one's condition; ex Metello consule, beginning with Metellus's consulship; ex pedibus laborare, to be lame in the feet; ex equo pugnare, to fight on horseback; ex usu, expedient.

Extra, outside of (opposed to Intra): — extra provinciam, beyond the province; extra causam, beside the case; extra te unum, except you alone (not used of time).

In, into (acc. opp. to ex), in (abl. of time or place): — in urbem ire, to go to town; in mentem venit. it comes to mind; amor in (erga or adversus) patrem, love for his father; in aram confugit, he fled to the altar (on the steps or merely to); in diem, to the set day; in dies, from day to day; vi. pedes in longitudinem, six feet long; vii vi. partes fractus, broken in six parts;
in hæc verba jurare, to swear to these words; in alicujus verba jurare, to take an oath of allegiance to one; in silvam deponere, to (carry and) place in the wood; hunc in modum, in this way; oratio in Catilinam, a speech against Catiline; in universum (in planum), on the whole; in totum, wholly; in reliquum, for the rest; in perpetuum, for ever; in majus, too much; in pejus, for the worse; in quantum, so far as; in magnam partem, in great part; in utramque partem, on either side; nos in diem vivimus (Tusc. v. 11), we live from hand to mouth; — in urbe esse, to be in the city; in tempore, in season; in scribendo, while writing;  est mihi in animo, I have it in mind; in collo, on the neck; in arboe, up the tree; in ancoris (Cæs.), at anchor; in altera parte, on the other side; in sapientibus, among the wise; in hoc homine, in the case of this man; in bonis artibus (Sall.), in good behavior.

Infra, below: — infra caelum, under the sky; infra nos, beneath us; infra Homerum, later than Homer; infra iii. pedee, less than three feet.

Inter, between, also among: — inter flumen et montem, between the river and hill (so of time); inter noctem, in the course of the night; inter bibendum, while drinking; interest inter, there is a difference between; inter se amant, they love each other; inter se loquuntur, they talk together; inter nos, between ourselves; inter ceteram planitiem, in a district elsewhere level.

Intra, within (surrounded on all sides): — intra parietes, inside the house; (of time), intra v. dies, within five days; intra legem, inside the law.

Juxta, hard by (superl. from jungo): — juxta murum, close to the wall; juxta se, alike with himself; juxta deos, next the gods; juxta vicinitatem (Liv.), by reason of nearness; juxta quam, nearly as; juxta ac si, about as if.

Ob, towards (in place): — ob Romam (early), towards Rome; ob oculos, before the eyes; ob eam causam, for that reason; ob rem, to the purpose; ob hoc, therefore; quam ob rem, wherefore.

Pene, with, in possession of (same root as pentitus): — est pene me, he is with me (at my house); non est pene me, it is not in my power.

Per, through (in any direction): — per urbem ire, to go through the city; licet per me, you may for all me; juro per leges, I swear by the laws; per literas, by letter; per jocum, in jest; per longum tempus, for a long time; per somnum, during sleep.

Pone, behind (only in space): — pone tergum, behind the back.

Post, after (space or time): — post iii. dies, after three days; post tergum, behind the back; post me, after me (in time).

Prae, in front: — praee se ferre, to carry before him (exhibit or make known): praee gaudio conticuit, he was silent for joy (used only of an objection or hindrance); praee fratres egens est, he is poor compared to his brother.
**praeter, by, on the outside:** — praeter spem, beyond hope; praeter hoc, besides this; praeter oculos, before the eyes; nil praeter saxa, nothing but stones.

**pro, in front (facing the same way):** — pro populo, in presence of the people; pro lege, in defence of the law; argentum pro vino, money for wine; pro hac vice, for this once; pro consule, in place of consul; pro viribis, considering his strength.

**prope, near:** — prope (propius, proxime) urbem, or ab urbe, near the city; prope lucem, towards daybreak.

**propter, near:** — propter te sedet, he sits next you; propter quos vivit (Mil. 22), through whose means he lives; propter metum, through fear; propter frigora (Caes.), by reason of cold.

**secundum, just behind, following along (part. of sequor):** — ite secundum me (Plaut.), go behind me; secundum litus, near the shore; secundum flumen, along the stream; secundum ludos, after the games; secundum naturam, according to nature; secundum causam nostram, to the advantage of our cause.

**sine, apart from:** — urbe sine regibus, a city without kings; non sine lacrimis, with tears; sine sanguine, bloodless.

**sub, under:** — sub jugum mittere, to send under the yoke; sub montem succedere, to come close to the hill; sub noctem, towards night; sub lucem, near daylight; sub haec dicta, at these words; — sub terra, underground; sub Jove, in the open air; sub monte, at the foot of a hill; sub castris, near the camp; sub terra extermere (Plaut.), to take from under ground; sub profectione (Caes.), during the march; sub oculis domini, under the master's eye; sub regno, under royal power; sub lege, liable to the law.

**subter (rarely with abl.), beneath:** — subter fastigia tecti, under the house-roof; subter praecordia, close to the heart; subter murum, beneath the wall; subter se, below itself; subter testudine, under the shed (of shields).

**super, above, over:** — super tumulum, on the hillock; super ipsum, above him (at table); super Indos, beyond the Hindoos; super cenam loqui, to talk during supper; super morbum fames etiam, besides sickness famine also; super omnes, above all; — super cervice (Hor.), over his head; super arbore sidunt, they perch on a tree; nocte super media (Vir.), about midnight; super tali re, about such an affair; satis superque, more than enough.

**supra, on the top:** — supra terram, above ground; supra caput (Sall.), imminent; supra Alexandriam, beyond Alexandria; supra hanc memoriam, before our remembrance; supra mille, above a thousand; supra morem, more than usual; supra quod, besides.

**tenus, as far as:** — capulo tenus, up to the hilt; verbo (nomine) tenus, in name, nominally; aurium tenus, as far as the ears (only); labororum tenus, along the lips.

**Trans, beyond:** — trans mare, over sea; trans flumen, beyond the river (rest or motion).
Ultra, on the further side: — ultra eum, beyond him; portas ultra, beyond the gates; ultra pueritiam, later than childhood; ultra eum numerum, more than that number; ultra fidem, incredibile; ultra modum, immoderate.

Versus, turned to (Eng. -ward): — Italianum versus, towards Italy (usually with another prep.); modo ad urbem modo in Galliam versus (Sall.), now towards the city, now towards Gaul.

3. Prepositions are frequently compounded with verbs, retaining their original meaning as Adverbs: as,

a, ab, away (aufero, bear off); ad, towards (affero, bring); ante, before; circum, around (urbem circumire = ire circum urbem); con (cum), together; de, down; di or dis (insep.), apart; ex, out, completely; in, in, on, against; inter, between, into, to pieces; ob, towards, in the way of; per, through, thoroughly; re, red (insep.), back, again; se, sed (insep.), apart; sub, under, near; super, over, in place of. (For the assimilation of the final consonant, see page 4.)

43. Conjunctions.

1. Classification. Conjunctions are more numerous, and their use is much more accurately distinguished, in Latin than in English. They are divided into two classes, viz.: —

a. Co-ordinate: — these include Copulative (and), Disjunctive (or), Adversative (but), Causal (for), Illative (therefore).

b. Subordinate: — these are Conditional (if), — including Comparative (as if), Concessive (though, even if), — Temporal (when), Causal (because, since), Consecutive (so that), Final (in order that).

2. The following list includes most of the conjunctions and conjunctive phrases in common use.

Note. — Some of these have been included in the classification of Adverbs, and a list of Interjections has been added. See also list of Correlatives, page 49.

a. Copulative and Disjunctive.
et, -que, atque (ac), and.
etiam, quoque, neque non (neccnon), quinetiam, itidem (item), also.
cum ... tum; tum ... tum, both ... and; not only ... but also.
quâ ... quâ, on one hand, on the other hand.
modo ... modo, now ... now.
aut ... aut; vel ... vel (-ve), either ... or.
sive (seu) ... sive, whether ... or.
et...et; et...-que (atque); -que...et; -que...-que (poet., both...and.
nec (neque)...nec (neque); neque...nec; nec...necue (rare),
neither...nor.
et...neque, both...and not.
nec (neque)...-que, neither...and.

b. Adversative.

sed, autem, verum, vero, at, atqui, but.
tamen, attamen, sed tamen, verumtamen, but yet, nevertheless.
nihilominus, none the less.
at vero, enimvero, but (for) in truth.
ceterum, on the other hand, but.

c. Causal.
nam, namque, enim, etenim, for.
quia, quod, because.
quoniam, quippe, cum (quom), quando, quandoquidem, siquidem,
utpote, since, inasmuch as.

d. Illative.
ergo, igitur, itaque, ideo, idcirco, proinde, therefore.
propterea (...quod), for this reason (...that).
quaproprier, quare, quamobrem, quocircque, unde, wherefore,
whence.

e. Comparative.
ut, uti, sicut, velut, prout, praetul, ceu, as, like as.
tamquam (tanquam), quasi, utsi, acsi, as if.
quam, atque (ac), as, than.

f. Conditional.
si, if; sin, but if; nisi (ni), unless, if not; quod si, but if,
modo, dum, dummodo, si modo, if only, provided.
dummodo ne (dum ne, modo ne), provided only not.

g. Concessive.
etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, tamenetsi, quamquam, although.
quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, however much.
licet, ut, cum (quom), though.

Note. — A concessive is often followed by an adversative: as, tamen-
etsi...tamen nihilominus, though...yet none the less.

h. Temporal.
cum (quom), cum primum, ubi, ut, ut primum, postquam, when.
prius...quam, ante...quam, before (non ante...quam, not
...until).
quando, simulatque (simul ac), simul, as soon as.
dum, usque dum, donec, quoad, until.

i. Final.
ut (uti), quo, in order that.
ne, ut ne, lest (in order that not); neve (neu), nor.
quin (after negatives), quominus, but that (so as to prevent).
k. Interjections.

O, en, ecce, ehem, papae, vah (of astonishment).
io, evae, evoe (of joy).
heu, eheu, vae, alas! (of sorrow).
heus, cho, ehodum, ho! (of calling).
eia, euge (of praise).
proh (of attestation): as, proh pudor, shame!

3. Special Meaning. The following list includes most of the conjunctions whose meaning or use requires special notice:

a. Et, and, connects independent words or clauses; -que (enclitic) combines closely into one connected whole; atque (sometimes ac before consonants) adds with emphasis. In the second member, and not is expressed by neque or nec.

Atque (ac), as, is also used after words of comparison and likeness, as idem, the same, simul, as soon, aliter, otherwise.

b. Sed and verum or vero (more forcible), but, are used to contradict what precedes, — always after negatives; at, yet, introduces with emphasis a new point, especially in argument (at enim almost always) alluding to a supposed statement on the other side; autem is used in the same way, especially in transitions, but with less force.

c. Aut, or, excludes the alternative; vel (-ve) gives a choice; sive (seu) is properly used in disjunctive conditions, but is also used with single words, — especially two names for the same thing. (But of aut and vel the use is not always clearly distinguished.)

d. Nam (namque), for, introduces a sufficient reason; ſnum, an explanatory circumstance; etenim (for, you see; for, you know), something self-evident, or needing no proof (neg. nec enim).

e. Ergo, therefore, is used of things proved logically; itaque, in proofs from the nature of things; igitur, then (a weak ergo), in passing from one stage of the argument to another, often merely to resume; idcirco, for this reason, to call attention to a special point.

f. Quia, because, regularly introduces a fact; quod, either a fact or a statement or allegation; quoniam, since, has reference to motives.

g. Quom (cum), when, is always a relative conjunction, often a correlative with tum; quando is also used as interrogative or indefinite (quando? when? si quando, if ever).

h. Et . . . et, means simply both . . . and; cum (less frequently tum). . . tum has also the meaning not only . . . but also, emphasizing the second member.
4. Autem, enim, vero, always follow one or two words in their clause; the same is generally true of igitur, and often of tamen.

k. Conjunctions are often doubled, for the sake of emphasis, or to bind a sentence more closely to the preceding: as, at vero, itaque ergo (namque, etenim). The same is true of Relatives, which are equivalent to a conjunction and demonstrative combined: as, qui ubi sit nescio, for where he is I know not.

44. Derivation of Words.

The Root is a primitive element of speech. All roots are monosyllabic, and have a short vowel. Stems are formed from roots, and are divided into two main groups; viz., noun-stems (including adjectives) and verb-stems.

1. Noun Forms. Derivative Nominal forms include (1) nouns of agency, (2) names of actions, (3) active and passive adjectives.

Note. — Examples of roots are es, be; i, go; sta, stand; cap, take; duc, lead; fac, make; fer, bear; rap, seize; sed, sit; ten, stretch (see also pp. 72, 78); da (ΔO), give; dha (θE), put.

a. Roots and Stems. Roots may be used as stems (1) without change, as in dūc-is, nēc-is; (2) with vowel-increase, as in lūc-is, pāc-is; (3) with reduplication, as in furtur, marmor; (4) compounded, as in judic-is (jus, dioo), conjug-is (con-jugo). But Stems are more commonly formed by means of suffixes added to the root (primary), or to a stem (secondary), either with or without the above changes.

b. Primary Suffixes. The simplest suffixes are the vowels a (in Latin o, a), i, u. Other primary suffixes are ta, ti, tu; na, ni, nu; va, ra, ya, kā, an.

Note. — The vowel-suffixes a, i, u, are sometimes regarded as if merely added to the root to fit it for inflection; but they are, in fact, true pronominal roots, and must be regarded as formative suffixes. The first is found in nouns and adjectives of a- and o-stems, as ludus, vagus, scriba, toga (root teg); — i is less common, and in Latin has frequently disappeared, especially in the nominative, as in scoius (scobis, root scab); — u is disguised in most adjectives by an additional i, as in suavis (for suāvīs, cf. ὑδαίς), temuis (root ūn in tendo), and remains alone only in nouns of the fourth declension, as acus (root ak, sharp, in acer, acies, ōkis), pecu (root pāk, bind, in paccisor).
The signification of the other primary suffixes is as follows:—

- **ta** (in the form *to*) makes the regular perfect participle, as *tectus, tectum*; sometimes active, as in *potus, pransus*; and is found in a few not recognized as participles, as *putus, altus* (*alo*); — **ti** forms abstracts, rarely nouns of agency, as *messis, vestis, pars, mens*; — **tu** forms abstracts (including supines), sometimes becoming concretes, as *actus, luctus*; — **ma**, forming perfect participles in other languages, in Latin makes adjectives of like meaning, which often become nouns, as *magnus* (= *maetus, root *mag*), *plenus, regnum*; — **ni**, nouns of agency and adjectives, as *ignis, segnis*; — **nu**, rare, as in *manus, sinus*; — **ma**, various, as in *animus, aminus, firmus, forma*; — **va** (commonly *uo*), of active or passive meaning, as in *equus, arvum, conspicucus, exiguus, vacivos* (*vacuus*); — **ra** (or *la*, a passive participle termination in other languages), usually passive, as in *ager, integer, plerique* (= *plenus* = *pletus*), *sella* (for *sed-la*, cf. *topa*); — **ya** (gerundives in other languages), adjectives and abstracts, including many of the first and fifth declensions, as *eximius, audacia, Florentia, purnicie*; — **ma**, sometimes primary, as in *pauci* (cf. *paiope*,) *locus* (for *stlocus*, cf. Sk. *sthara, shala*, Ger. *Stelle, Eng. stall*); — **an** (*in, on*), in nouns of agency and abstracts: as *aspergo, campago* (*finis*), *gero* (*onis*).

The above, with some compound suffixes given below, belong to the original language, and most of them were not felt as living formations in the literary period. But developed forms of these, with a few other primary suffixes, were used consciously, — generally as secondary suffixes. The old primary suffixes thus used are (along with **ta** and **tu**, given above) **man**, **ant**, **vant**, **tar**, **tro**, **as**. (Observe that it is the *stem*, not the nominative, that is formed by the suffix, although the nominative is given for convenience of reference.)

### c. Significant Endings.

The principal classes of regular derivate nouns and adjectives, as indicated by their nominative-ending, are the following:—

1. **Nouns of Agency** (active adjectives or appellatives), ending in —

   - **tor** (lengthened from *tär, m.*), **trix** (tric- = tar + ic, r.), added to the same form of stem that precedes t of the supine (which for convenience may be called the *supine-base*), or to noun-stems by analogy: as *ductor, victrix, viator*. Earlier formations with *tar* are *patër, matër*.

   - **es** (*-tis*), descriptive nouns, as *miles, comes*.

2. **Names of Actions** (passing into abstracts, instruments, results): —

   - **or** (*m.*), **es**, **is** (*F.*), **us**, **ur** (*N.*): as *timor, sedes, decus, robust*.

   - **io** (added to pres. stem), **tio**, **tura**, **tus** (to supine base), verbal abstracts: as *legio, actio, pictura, cultus* (those in *tus* more concrete).

   - **ium** (*ya*) forms neuter abstracts (from verb-stems), as *gaudium*; or from nouns meaning offices or groups: as *hospitalium, servitium, collegium*.
men (man), mentum (man+ta), monia, monium (man+yə), denoting act, means, or result: as flumen, querimonia.

is, tia, tas, tus, tudo, do, go, (f.) abstracts, rarely concrete: as audacia, militia, duritia (ies), bonitas, servitus, altitudo, lanugo.

brum, orum, trum, btllum, tllum, bra: denoting means, usually from verb-stems: as claustrum, vehiculum, turibulum.

3. Adjective Forms, passing often into Nouns.

a. Nominal.

úsus (following a vowel, úlus; following s, n, r, clílus), ellus, illus, diminishíve nouns or adjectives, with endings for gender: as puerculus, puella (puerula), puellula, asellus (asinus), misellus (miserus). Rare forms, eculeus, homuncio.

ádes (r. as), ídes, ídes (f. in, ólis), óus, patronymics, denoting parentage, &c., as Æneádes, Priamides, Priorís.

ánus, ãnus, Ínus; as (-átis), enís; íus ílus, Icius iscus, ácius, denoting belonging to or coming from (often Gentile).

árís, álís, ólís, Ílís, Ílís (all from ra), with Ínus, and Ínus, denoting various ideas of relation or possession: -íle (n. of Ílís) denotes place, as ovile; -ále, -ære (n. of ális, áris) usually losing e, become nouns; -ína, f., from names of animals, often means their flesh; Ínus and Ínus, form adjectives of time, as vernus.

ter (trís), tímus, as campestris, maritimús; ternus, from adverbs of time: as sempiternus, hesternus (from heri, old hesi).

átus, ítus, ñtus, denote provided with: as galeáus, auritus, ver¬sus.

eus, ínus, écus, Icius, (esp. from participles), also Icius, denote material or relation, as aureus, novicíus, créáceus.

áríus, órius (adj.), denote belonging to; árium, órium (n.), place; árius (m.) often of trades. — So too Ious, as bellicus, nauticus.

etum denotes place, as quercetum.

ósus (from van), ólen, ólentus (root òl) denote full of, or prone to, as fluctuosus, vinolentus; bundus, cundus, participial, but denoting continuance of quality: as iracundus.

b. Verbal.

ax, xíus, úlus, vus (nus, Ivus), denoting tendency (-ax often faulty or aggressive, Ivus rather passive): as pugnañus, cupidus, biñulus, protervus, nocuis, captius.

ílís, bílís, íus, generally passive: as fragilis, nobilís, eximius.

mínus, mnus, mna, (Gr. μενος), participles, but no longer significant as such: as terminus, alumnus, autumnus, lamina, àrumna, femina.

ándus, the gerund-ending, forming a few active (middle) adjectives: as secundus, rotundus (cf. volvendis mensibus).
2. Derivation of Verbs. Verbs of the third conjugation, with irregular verbs and vowel-stems dē, stā, are primitive. Most others are either causative or denominative (formed from nouns).

Note.—The consciousness of roots was lost in Latin, so that in forming the parts of verbs only stems are dealt with. Thus monēo, monui (not menui), from root men, as in mens; ceedo, cecidi (not cecidi), from root cād, as in cādo). For modifications of the root in verb-stems, see §§ 28, 30. The derivative suffix in the regular conjugations is original ya added either to the root, the present stem in a, or the noun-stem.

a. The following are the regular conjugalional forms:

1. Verbs of the first conjugation (generally active) may be formed from almost any noun or adjective of the first or second declension, by changing the stem-vowel into the characteristic ā. A few add this vowel to the stem, as vigilare, exculare.

2. A few verbs of the second conjugation are formed in like manner from noun-stems; but most add the characteristic ë to the root, and are intransitive or neuter in their meaning.

3. A few u-stems simply add the characteristic of the third conjugation, becoming either active or intransitive, as acuo, fluo.

4. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation add the characteristic i to the root, as scio, salto; many are formed from i-stems, as sitio, finio, polio (see § 34).

b. The following are regular derivative suffixes:

sco or isco (§ 36, 1) inchoative, denoting the beginning of an action; they imply a primitive verb-stem, which is sometimes found only in the perfect and supine stems.

asso, esso, denote attempt to do a thing; they are of the third conjugation in the present stem, and of the fourth in the perfect and supine.

Note.—These are probably denominative, from nouns originally in as (Latin es or us), but seem as if formed upon verb-roots.

to, ito (first conjugation) denote frequent action, being added to the actual supine, or to another form of it, with a connecting vowel i, changing u to the characteristic a of the first conjugation.

illo (first conjugation) denotes feeble or trifling action like that of some simpler verb, but is formed from some real or supposed diminutive noun.

ūrio (fourth conjugation), added to the supine-base, denotes desire to do the act expressed by some simple verb; but is formed from some noun of agency in tor (sor). Viso is a regular inherited desiderative of an earlier formation.
3. **Compound Words.** In compound words, either (1) the second part is merely added to the first; (2) the first part modifies the second as an adjective; (3) the first part is governed by the second as a verb; or (4) a verb is modified by a preposition or adverb prefixed. In all, only the second part receives inflection.

**Note.**—The Indo-European family had great power of forming compounds with mere stems. This power the Latin for the most part lost, as has English compared with German. Many compounds attempted by poets failed to become established in the language; but there remain many traces of the old usage.

The most usual compounds may be classed as follows:—

a. Meanings added: as suovetaurilia, undecim.

b. Noun with modifying adjective: as latifundium, pancrea, tergeminminus.

c. Noun and Verbal: armiger, cornicen, manifestus, carnisex, mantele.

d. Compound adjectives, in which the last word is a noun, the compound acquiring the meaning of possessed of the property denoted, as alipes, magnanimus, concors, anceps (having a head at both ends), obvius, multiformis, multiplex.

e. Compounds of facio, with an actual or formerly existing verbal stem in e. These are causative in force, as consuefacio, calefacto.

f. An Adverb or Noun and a Verb, which have grown together: as benedico, satago, jurgo, auscullu.

g. Verbs with Prepositions, usually having their original adverbial sense: as, ab, away; ex, out. In those with circum, praeter, trans, and sometimes ad and per, the compound retains the force of the preposition (§ 42, 3).

h. Verbs with the following inseparable Particles, which no longer appear as prepositions in Latin: amb (am, an), around; dis, di, asunder (in two); por, forward; red, re, back; sed, se, apart.
PART SECOND.

USE OF WORDS (SYNTAX).

45. Definitions.

1. Sentence. A Sentence is a form of words which contains either a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

a. A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a declaratory sentence: as, puer venit, the boy came.

b. A sentence in the form of a Question is called an interrogative sentence: as, venitne puer, did the boy come?

c. A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an exclamatory sentence: as, quam celeriter venit! how fast he came!

d. A sentence in the form of a Command is called an imperative sentence: as, veni, puer, ad me, come to me, boy.

2. Subject and Predicate. The Subject of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of; the Predicate is that which is stated of the Subject.

a. The Predicate may be either a neuter verb, a noun or adjective with the copula (esse, fārī, &c.), or a Transitive verb with its Object.

b. The verb esse, to be, when it connects an attribute with its subject, is called the copula; otherwise, it is called the substantive verb.

Thus in the sentence sunt viri fortes, there are brave men, sunt is a substantive verb; in viri sunt fortes, the men are brave, it is a copula.

c. The Object of a verb is that on which its action is exerted: thus in the sentence pater vocat filium, the father calls his son, pater is subject, and filium object, of vocat.

d. One or more words, essential to the grammatical completeness of a sentence, may be unexpressed: this is called ellipsis, and the sentence is called an elliptical sentence.
3. **Modification.** The Subject or Predicate of a sentence may be modified by single words, or by a phrase or clause. The modifying word may itself be modified in the same way.

a. A single modifying word is generally either an Adjective, an Adverb, an Appositive (§ 46), or the oblique case of a Noun. Thus in the sentence *puer formosus venit, a handsome boy came*, the adjective *formosus* modifies the subject *puer*; in the sentence *celeriter venit, he came quickly*, the adverb *celeriter* modifies the predicate *venit*.

b. The modifying word is in some cases said to **limit** the word to which it belongs: thus in the sentence *video pueri patrem, I see the boy's father*, the genitive *pueri* limits *patrem*.

4. **Phrase.** A Phrase is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or Adverb.

Thus in the sentence *puer erat eximiae formae, he was a boy of remarkable beauty*, the words *eximiae formae* are used for the adjective *formosus* (or *formosissimus*), and are called an **Adjective Phrase**; in the sentence *magna celeritate venit, he came with great speed*, the words *magna celeritate* are used for the adverb *celeriter* (or *celerrime*), and are called an **Adverbal Phrase**.

5. **Clause.** A Clause is a group of words forming part of a sentence, and having a subject and predicate of its own.

Thus in the sentence *puer qui heri venit formosus erat, the boy who came yesterday was handsome*, the words *qui heri venit* are a **Relative Clause**; in the sentence *puer si cras veniat acceptus sit, if the boy should come to-morrow he would be welcome*, the words *si cras veniat* are a **Conditional Clause**.

a. When a Clause is used as the Subject or Object of a verb, it is called a **Substantive Clause** (see § 70).

b. When a clause is used to modify the subject or predicate of a sentence, it is called a **Subordinate Clause**. Subordinate Clauses are **Conditional**, **Temporal**, **Causal**, **Consecutive**, and **Final**, like the conjunctions which introduce them (§ 43, 1, b).

c. When two or more clauses in the same sentence are independent of one another, they are said to be **Coördinate**.

d. Any clause introduced by a Relative is called a **Relative Clause**; when used simply by way of explanation, and not otherwise connected with the form of the sentence, it is called an **Intermediate Clause** (§ 66).
e. A clause expressing the purpose of an action is called a Final Clause; one expressing its result is called a Consecutive Clause (see §§ 64, 65).

Note.—In English, a Consecutive clause is introduced by the phrase so that; a Final clause by the phrase in order that.

f. A clause containing a condition, introduced by if or some equivalent (§ 59), is called a Conditional Clause. A sentence modified by a conditional clause is called a Conditional Sentence.

Note.—Observe that these classes are not exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus a relative clause may be subordinate, conditional, or intermediate; and two subordinate clauses may be coördinate with each other.

6. Connectives. Sentences or coördinate clauses are regularly connected by means of Conjunctions; but frequently in Latin—very rarely in English—sentences are connected by Relatives.

In this case, the relative is often best translated in English by a conjunction with a demonstrative: as, quo cum venisset, and when he had come there; quae cum ita sint, but since these things are so (§ 43, 3, k).

7. Agreement. A word is said to Agree with another when it is required to be in the same gender, number, case, or person.

When a word takes the gender or number of some other word implied in that with which it should agree, this use is called Synesis, or constructio ad sensum.

8. Government. A word is said to Govern another, when it requires the latter to be in a particular case.

I. Subject and Predicate.

46. Of Nouns.

A noun used to describe another, and meaning the same thing, agrees with it in Case: as,

Servius rex, Servius the king.
ad urbem Solos, to the city Soli.
spes nostra Cicero, Cicero our hope.
homo nata fuerat, she had been born human.
1. When the noun thus used is in the same part of the sentence (subject or predicate) it is called an appositive, and the use is called apposition.

2. When the noun is used to form a predicate with esse or any other copulative verb, it is called a predicate-nominative (or accusative as the case may be).

externus timor, maximum concordiae vinculum, junegbat animos (Liv. ii. 39), fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united hearts. [Here both nouns belong to the subject.] quattuor hic, primum omen, equos vidi (Æn. iii. 537), I saw here four horses, the first omen. [Here both nouns are in the predicate]

Auncum Marcium regem populus creavit (Liv. i. 32), the people made Ancus Marcius king. [Here regem is called the complementary accusative.]

consules creantur Caesar et Servilius (B. C. iii. 1), Caesar and Servilius are made consuls. [Here consules is predicate-nominative after creantur.]

litteras Græcas senex didici (Cat. M. 8), I learned Greek when an old man. [Here senex is in apposition with the subject of didici, expressing the time, condition, &c., of the act.]

Gnaeus et Publius Scipiones, the Scipios, Cneius and Publius. [Here the appositive is plural, as referring to more than one subject.]

gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur (Tusc. i. 45). [Here the appositive is introduced by way of comparison.]

a. The appositive will agree in gender when it can; sometimes also in number: as,

Aristæus, olivae inventor (N. D. iii. 18), Aristæus, discoverer of the olive.
oleae Minerva inventrix (G. i. 18), Minerva, inventress of the olive.
quia sequuntur naturam, optimam ducem (Læl. 19), because they follow nature, the best guide.
omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athenas (De Or. i. 4), Athens, discoverer of all learning.

b. A common noun in apposition with a locative is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition in: as,

Antiochiae, celebri quondam urbe (Arch. 3), at Antioch, once a famous city.
Albae constiterunt in urbe munita (Phil. iv. 2), they halted at Alba, a fortified town.
ADJECTIVES.

47: 1, 2.] 105

c. The genitive is used in apposition with possessives, taking the gender and number of the implied subject: as,
in nostro omnium fletu (Mil. 34), amid the tears of us all.
ex Anniathan Milonis domo (Att. iv. 3), out of Annian Milo's house.

NOTE.—The proper appositive is sometimes put in the Genitive. See § 50, 1, f. Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Nouns.

47. OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. This rule applies also to adjective pronouns and participles.

vir fortis, a brave man.
cum ducentis militibus, with 200 men.
consularia munera, the duties of consul.
hac lege, by this law.
uno interfecto, one being slain.

REMARK.—The adjective may be either attributive or predicate. An attributive adjective simply qualifies the noun without the intervention of a verb; a predicate adjective is connected with its noun by esse, or a verb of similar meaning, expressed or implied.

An adjective may also be used in apposition like a noun: as,
Hortensium vivum amavi (Off. iii. 18), I loved Hortensius when living.

1. With two or more nouns the adjective is plural (also, rarely, when they are connected with cum): as,
Nisus et Euryalus primi (Æn. v. 394), Nisus and Euryalus first.
Juba cum Labieno capti (B. Afr. 52), Juba and Labienus were taken.

2. When nouns are of different genders, an attributive adjective agrees with the nearest: as,
multa opera ac laboris, of much trouble and toil.
vita moresque mei, my life and character.
si res, si vir, si tempus ullum dignum fuit (Mil. 7), if any thing, if any man, if any time, was fit.

a. A predicate adjective may follow the same rule if the subjects form one connected idea: as,
factus est strepitus et admurmuratio (Verr. i. 15), a noise of assent was made.
b. Generally, a predicate adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean living beings; neuter, if things without life: as,

uxor deinde ac liberi amplexi (Liv. ii. 40), then his wife and children embraced him.
labor (m.) voluptasque (f.) societate quâdam inter se naturali sunt juncta (N.) (id. v. 4), labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural alliance.

c. Abstract nouns of the same gender may have a neuter adjective: as,

stultitia et temeritas et injustitia ... sunt fugienda (Fin. iii. 11), folly, rashness, and injustice must be shunned.
pax et concordia jactata sunt (Tac. Hist. ii. 20), peace and harmony were talked of.

d. A masculine or feminine adjective may belong (by Synesis) to a noun of different gender or number, when the existence of persons is implied: as,

duo milia relict[ae] (Liv. xxxxvii. 39), two thousand were left.
pars certare parati (Æn. v. 108), a part ready to contend.
magna pars raptæ (Liv. i. 9), a large part [of the women] were seized.
colon[iæ] aliquot deductæ, Prisci Latini appellati (id. i. 3), several colonies were led out [of men] called Old Latins.

e. An adjective pronoun agrees in gender with a word in opposition or a predicate rather than with its antecedent: as,

erum caput hoc erat, hic fons (Hor. Ep. i. 17), this was the head of things, this the source.

eam sapientiam interpretantur quam adhuc mortalis nemo est consecutus [for id ... quod] (Læl. 5), they explain that [thing] to be wisdom which no man ever yet attained.

f. Occasionally, an adjective takes the gender of a partitive genitive: as,

velocissimum animalium delphinus est (Plin.), the dolphin is the swiftest of creatures.

3. Adjectives are often used as nouns, the masculine to denote men, and the feminine women: as,

omnes, all men, or everybody; majores, ancestors; veteres, the ancients; barbari, barbarians; amicus, a friend.

instinctu purpuratorum (Curt. iii. 9), at the instigation of the courtiers [those clad in purple].
iniquus noster (Planc. 2.), our foe.
didicit jam dives avarus laudare disertos (Juv. vii. 30), the rich miser has now learned to flatter the eloquent.
Novo.—The singular of adjectives in this use is more rare; the plural is very frequent, and may be used of any adjective or participle, to denote those in general described by it.

a. This is especially frequent with possessives: as,
nostri, our countrymen, or men of our party.
Sullani, the veterans of Sulla’s army.
suos continebat (B. C. i. 15), he held his men in check.

b. The demonstratives is, ille, &c., used in this way, have nearly the force of personal pronouns. They are often thus used in apposition with a noun, or a clause: as,
vincula, eaque sempiterna (Cat. iv. 4), chains, and that for ever.
exspectabam tuas litteras, idque cum multis (Fam. x. 14), I, with many others, am expecting your letter.

c. On the other hand, a noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may be qualified by an adverb (compare § 16, 3, c): as,
victor exercitus, the victorious army.
servum pecus, a servile troop.
admodum puer, quite a boy.
magis vir, more of a man.
fator inepte (Hor.), a stupid admirer.

da. A neuter adjective may be used as a noun—

a. In the singular, to denote either a single object or an abstract quality: as,
rapto vivere, to live by plunder.
in arido, on dry ground.
honestum, an honorable act, or honor (as a quality).

b. In the plural, to signify objects in general having the quality denoted, and hence the abstract idea: as,
honesta, honorable deeds (in general), or honor (in the abstract).
omnium ignarus, ignorant of all.
justis solutis, the due rites being paid.

c. In opposition, or as predicate, to a noun of different gender: as,
turpitudo pejus est quam dolor (Tusc. ii. 13), disgrace is worse than pain.
labor bonum non est (Sen. Ep. 31), toil is no good thing.

da. In agreement with an infinitive or a substantive clause: as,
aliud est errare Cæsarem nolle, aliud nolle misereri (Lig. 5), it is one thing to be unwilling that Caesar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.
Remark. — The neuter of an adjective is ordinarily used as a noun only in the nominative and accusative: as,

omnia, all things (everything); but, omnium rerum, of all things (omnium is usually of all persons); — loquitur de omnibus rebus, he talks about everything (de omnibus, about everybody).

5. Adjectives denoting source or possession may be used for the genitive: as,

Pompeiana acies, Pompey's line.
video herilem filium (Ter.), I spy master's son.
æs alienum, another's money, i.e. DEBT.

a. Possessives are thus regularly used for the genitive of the personal pronouns: as,
domus mea, my house; nostra patria, our country.

b. A possessive in any case may have a genitive in apposition (§ 46, c): as,
mea solius causa, for my sake only.
nostra omnium patria, the country of us all.

c. An adjective is occasionally thus used for the objective genitive (§ 50, 3, b): as,
metus hostilis (Jug. 41), fear of the enemy.
femincæ in pænâ (Virg.), in punishing a woman.
periculo invidiæ meæ (Cat. ii. 2), at the risk of odium against me.
studiose cædis ferinæ (Ov. M. vii. 675), eager to slaughter game.

6. An adjective, with the subject or object, is often used to qualify the act, having the force of an adverb: as,

primus venit, he came first (was the first to come).
nullus dubito, I no way doubt.
læti audiēre, they were glad to hear.
patre invito discissit, he departed against his father's wishes.
erat Romæ frequens (Rosc. Am. 6), he was often at Rome.
serus in cælum redeas (Hor. Od. i. 2), may'st thou return late to heaven.

7. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives (or adverbs) are in the comparative: as,
longior quam latior acies erat (Liv. xxvii. 48), the line was longer than it was broad (or, rather long than broad).
ADJECTIVES: RELATIVES.

a. But not where magis is used: as,
clari magis quam honesti (Jug. 8), more renowned than honorable.

b. A comparative with a positive, or even two positives, may be thus connected by quam (a rare and less elegant use): as,
vehementius quam caute (Agric. 4), with more zeal than good heed.
claris majoribus quam vetustis (Ann. iv. 61), of a family more famous than old.

8. Superlatives denoting order and succession often designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant: as,
summus mons, the top of the hill.
in ultima platea, at the end of the avenue. So,
prior actio, the earlier part of an action.
Also, medius, midst; ceterus, other; reliquus, remaining: as,
reliqui captivi, the rest of the prisoners.
in colle medio (B. G. i. 24), on the middle of the hill.
inter ceteram planitiem (Jug. 92), in a region elsewhere level.
Similarly, serā nocte, late at night; nos omnes, all of us (§ 50, 2).

9. The expressions alter . . . alter, alius . . . alius (as also the adverbs derived from them), may be used reciprocally; or may imply a change of predicate as well as of subject: as,
hi fratres alter alterum amant, these brothers love each other.
alius alius petit, one man seeks one thing, one another.
alius alius ex navi, out of different ships.
alius alius viae civitatem auxerunt (Liv. i. 21), they enlarged the State each in his own way.

For the use of Adjectives as Adverbs, see § 16, 3, f.
For the ablative used adverbially with Comparatives, see § 54, 6, e.

48. Of Relatives.

A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands: as,
puer qui venit, the boy who came; liber quem legis, the book you are reading; via quā ambulat, the way he walks in.
NOTE.—A Relative is properly an adjective pronoun, of which the proper noun (the Antecedent) is usually omitted. The full construction would require a corresponding demonstrative, to which the relative refers. Hence, relatives serve two uses:—1. As Nouns in their own clause; 2. As Connectives, and are thus often equivalent to a demonstrative and conjunction combined (see § 69). The connective force is not original, but is developed from a demonstrative or indefinite meaning; the relative and the antecedent clause being originally co-ordinate.

1. A Verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent: as,
   adsum qui feci (Æn. ix. 427), here am I who did it.

2. A relative generally agrees in gender with a noun (appositive) in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender: as,
   mare etiam quem Neptunum esse dicebas (N. D. iii. 20), the sea, too, which you said was Neptune.
   a. A relative may (rarely) by Attraction agree with its ante-
      cedent in case: as,
      si aliquid agas eorum quorum consuéstī (Fam. v. 14), if you do
      something of what you are used to.
   b. A relative may agree in gender and number with an implied antecedent: as,
      quartum genus ... qui premuntur (Cat. ii. 10), a fourth class,
      that are sinking.
      unus ex eo numero qui parati erant (Jug. 35), one of the number
      [of those] who were ready.
      conjuravère pauci ... de quà [conjuratione] dicam (Sall. C. 18),
      a few have conspired ... of which [conspiracy] I will speak.

3. The antecedent noun sometimes appears in both clauses; usually only in the one that precedes; sometimes it is wholly omitted: thus—
   a. The noun may be repeated in the relative clause: as,
      loci natura erat hæc quem locum nostri delegerant (B. G. ii. 18),
      the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.
   b. The noun may appear only in the relative clause: as,
      quas res in consulatu nostro gessimus attigit hic versibus
      (Arch. 11), he has touched in verse the things which we did
      in our consulship.
      urbem quam statuo vestra est (Æn. i. 573), yours is the city
      which I found.
In such cases the demonstrative *is* or *hic* usually stands in the antecedent clause: as,

quae pars civitatis calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps aetas persolvit (B. G. i. 12), *that part of the State which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty."

**Remark.** — In a sentence of this class, the relative clause in Latin usually stands first; but, in translating, the noun should be transferred, in its proper case, to the antecedent clause, as in the example just quoted.

c. The antecedent noun may be omitted: as,

qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.
qui cognoscerent misit (id. i. 21), he sent men to reconnoitre.

d. A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) agreeing with the antecedent may stand in the relative clause: as,

vasa ea quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat (Verr. iv. 27), *those most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house."

e. The phrase *id quod* or *quae res* is used (instead of *quod* alone) to relate to an idea or group of words before expressed:

*[obtrectatum est] Gabinio dicam an Pompeio? an utrique — id quod est verius? (Manil. 19), an affront is offered shall I say to Gabinus or Pompey? or — which is truer — to both?*

4. A relative often stands at the beginning of a clause or sentence, where in English a demonstrative must be used: as,

quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.*
quorum quod simile factum? (Cat. iv. 8), *what deed of theirs like this?*
qui illius in te amor fuit (Fam. iv. 5), *such was his love for you."

5. A Relative Adverb is often equivalent to the relative pronoun with a preposition: as,

quo (— ad quem), *to whom; unde (— a quo), from whom, &c.*: as,
apud eos quo se contulit (Verr. iv. 18), *among those to whom he resorted.*
qui eum necasset unde ipse natus esset (Rosc. Am. 26), *one who should have slain his own father.*

A similar use is found with the demonstratives *eo, inde, &c.*: as,
eo imponit vasa (Jug. 75), *upon them [the beasts] he puts the baggage.*
49. Verbs.

A Verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person: as,

ego statuo, I resolve; oratio est habita, the plea was spoken.

Remark.—The verb in the periphrastic forms sometimes agrees in gender and number with the predicate, or with a noun in opposition: as,

non omnis error stultitia est dicenda (Parad. vi. 3), not every error should be called folly.
Corinthus lumen Græcie extinctum est, Corinth the light of Greece is put out.
deliciae meæ Dicearchus disseruit (Tusc. i. 31), my pet Dicearchus discoursed.

1. Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural; also, rarely, when one is in the ablative with cum: (compare § 47, 1), as,

pater et avus mortui sunt, his father and grandfather are dead.
dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur (Liv. xxi. 60), the general and several chiefs are taken.

a. When the subjects are of different persons, the verb will be in the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as,

si tu et Tullia valetis ego et Cicero valemus (Fam. xiv. 5), if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

b. If the subjects are joined by disjunctives, or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is singular: as,

neque fides neque jusjurandum neque illum misericordia represit (Ter. Ad.), not faith nor oath, may, nor mercy, checked him.

Senatus populusque Romanus intellegit (Fam. v. 8), the Roman Senate and people understand.

c. A collective noun — also such distributives as quisque, every; uterque, each — may take a plural verb: as,

pars praedas agebant (Jug. 32), a part brought in booty.
sum quisque habeant quod suum est (Plaut. Curc.), let every one keep his own.

This is most common in poetry.
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

49: 1, 2. 50.]  

d. When the action of the verb belongs to the subjects separately, it may agree with one and be understood with the others: as, intercedit M. Antonius et Cassius tribuni plebis (B. C. i. 2), Antony and Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.

2. The Subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.

Defin. — A Finite Verb is a verb in any mood except the Infinitive.

a. The personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic: thus,  
loquor, *I speak*; ego loquor, *it is I that speak*.

b. An indefinite subject is often omitted: as,

dicunt (terunt, perhibent), *they say*.

c. The verb is sometimes omitted in certain phrases: as,
quorum hæc [spectant]? *what does this aim at?*

ex ungue leonem [cognoscès], *you will know a lion by his claw*.

The indicative and infinitive of esse are most frequently omitted.

(For the Historical Infinitive, see § 57, 8, h.)

II. Construction of Cases.

Note. — The Oblique Cases of nouns express their relations to other words in the sentence. Originally, the family of languages to which Latin belongs had at least seven cases, besides the vocative, all expressing different relations. Of these the Locative and Instrumental cases were lost, and their functions divided among the others (p. 287).

The names of the cases, except the Ablative, are of Greek origin. The name genitive — Gr. γενετής, from γένος — refers, originally, to the class to which anything belongs. The dative — δοτική — is the case of giving. The name accusative is a mistranslation of αιτοντική, signifying that which is effected or caused (alrima).

50. Genitive.

A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the genitive.

Note. — This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition of. The genitive seems originally to have meant that from which something springs; hence, that to which it belongs. From this signification most of its others may be deduced.
1. **Subjective Genitive.** The Genitive is used to denote the Author, Owner, Source, and (with an adjective) Measure or Quality: as,

libri Ciceronis, *the books of* Cicero.
Caesaris horti, *Caesar's gardens.*
culmen tecti, *the roof of the house.*

a. For the genitive of possession a possessive adjective is often used,—regularly for that of the personal pronouns: as,

liber meus, *my book.*
aliena pericula, *other men's dangers.*
Sullana tempora, *the times of Sulla.*

b. The noun limited is understood in a few expressions: as,

Castoris [aedes], *the [temple] of Castor.*

c. The genitive is often in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb, like a predicate appositive: as,

hæc domus est patris mei, *this house is my father's.*
tutelæ nostræ [eos] duximus (Liv.), *we held them to be in our protection.*
Thrasybuli facta lucri fecit (Nep. viii. 1), *he made profit of the deeds of Thrasybulus.*
Tyros mare diciones suæ fecit (Curt. iv. 4), *Tyre brought the sea under her sway.*
hominum non causarum toti erant (Liv. iii. 36), *they belonged wholly to the men, not to the cause.*

d. A phrase or clause often stands for the limited-noun; this is most frequent with the genitive of adjectives or abstract nouns: as,

neque sui judici [erat] decernere (B. C. i. 35), *it was not for his judgment to decide.*
timidi est optare necem (Ov. M. iv. 15), *it is for the coward to wish for death.*

REMARK.—The genitive of an adjective (especially of the third declension) is thus used instead of the neuter nominative: as,
sapientis [not sapiens] est paucæ loqui, *it is wise [the part of a wise man] to say little.*

The neuter of possessives is used in the same way: as,

mentiri non est meum, *it is not for me to lie.*
humanum [for hominis] est errare, *it is man's to err.*

e. A genitive may denote the substance of which a thing consists (a modified form of the idea of source): as,
talentum auri, *a talent of gold.*
flumina lactis, *rivers of milk.*
navis auri (compare Part. Gen.), *a shipload of gold.*
f. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition: as,
   nomen insaniæ, the word madness.
   oppidum Antiochiae, the city of Antioch.

g. The genitive is used to denote quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective (usually an indefinite one): as, vir summæ virtutis, a man of the highest courage.
magni est deliberationis, it is an affair of great deliberation.
magni formica laboris, the ant, [a creature] of great toil.
So ejus modi, of that sort.
(Compare the Ablative of Quality, § 54, 7.)

h. The genitive (of quality), with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, &c.: as,
   fossa trium pedum, a trench of three feet [depth].
   murus sedecim pedum, a wall sixteen feet [high].
   minor nulla erat duōm milium amphorōm (Fam. xii. 15), none held less than 2000 fars.

i. Certain adjectives of Quantity — as magni, pluris, and the like — are used in the genitive to express indefinite value. (Also the nouns nibili, floci, nauci, pili, pensi, terunci, assis, see Ablative of Price, § 54, 8.)

Remark.—The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, gratiā, for the sake of; ergo, because of; and the indeclinable instar, like.

2. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.
Partitive words are the following: —

a. Nouns or Pronouns: as,
   pars militum, part of the soldiers.
   quis nostrum, which of us? (but nos omnes, all of us).
   nihil erat reliqui, there was nothing left.
   vastatur agri [id] quod . . . (Liv. i. 14), so much of the land is wasted as, &c.

b. Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives: as,
   alter consulum, one of the [two] consuls.
   unus tribunorum, one of the tribunes.
   plurimum totius Galliæ equitatu valet (B. G. v. 3), is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul.

c. Neuter adjectives and pronouns used as nouns: as,
   tantum spati, so much space.
   aliquid nummorum, a few pence.
   id loci (or locorum), that spot of ground.
id temporis, at that time.
plana urbis, the level parts of the town.
quid novi, what news?

REMARK.—Of adjectives of the third declension the genitive is only rarely used in this way: thus,
nihil novi (gen.), nothing new; but
nihil memorabile (nom.), nothing worth mention.

d. Adverbs, especially of Quantity and Place: as,
satis pecuniae, money enough.
parum oti, not much ease.
ubinam gentium sumus, where in the world are we?
inde loci, next in order.
istuc æqui bonique, to that degree of equity and goodness.
tum temporis, at that point of time.
 eo misericium (Sall.), to that pitch of misery.

e. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case: as,
sequimur te sancte deorum (Æn. iv. 576), we follow thee, O holy deity.
nigræ lanarum (Plin. H. N. viii. 48), black wools.
electi juvenum (Liv. xxx. 9), the choice of the young men.

REMARK.—1. Cardinal numbers, with quidam, a certain one, more commonly, other words rarely, take the ablative with e (ex) or de, instead of the genitive: as,
unus ex tribunis, one of the tribunes.
minumus ex illis (Jug. ii), the youngest of them.
medius ex tribus (ib.), the midst of the three.

2. With nouns uterque generally agrees as an adjective; but with pronouns it always takes a genitive: as,
uterque consul, both the consuls.
uterque nostrum, both of us.

3. Numbers and words of quantity including the whole of anything — as omnes, all; quot, how many — take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive: as,
nos omnes, all of us.
qui omnes, all of whom.
quot sunt hostes, how many of the enemy are there?
cave inimicos qui multi sunt, beware of your enemies, of whom you have many.

So when no others are thought of, although such exist: as,
multi milites, many of the soldiers.
ömò Romanus, not one Roman.
4. Rarely two genitives are used with one noun: as, animi multarum rerum percursio (Tusc. iv. 13), the mind's traversing of many things.

5. The Partitive genitive of the Personal Pronouns is the form in um (nostrum, vestrum); that in i (mei, nostri, &c.) is Objective.

3. Objective Genitive. With many nouns and adjectives implying action, the genitive is used to denote the object.

Not. — This is an extension of the idea of belonging to; as in the phrase odio Caesaris, hate of Caesar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Caesar, though in its active sense he is the object of it.

a. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the genitive of the object: as,

desiderium oti, longing for rest.
vacatio militiae, a respite of military service.
gratia beneficii, grateful for a kindness.
fuga malorum, refuge from disaster.
laudator temporis acti, a praiser of the past.
injuria mulierum Sabinarum (Liv.), the wrong done to the Sabine women.
memoria nostri tua (Fam. xiii. 17), your memory of us.
consensio divinarum humanarumque rerum (Lael. 6), a harmony in divine and human things.
vim suorum pro suo periculo defendebant (B.C. iii. 110). they parried the attack on their comrades as if it were their own peril.

Occasionally possessive adjectives are used in the same way (see § 47, 5, c).

b. Adjectives requiring an object of reference (relative adjectives) govern the genitive.

These are — 1. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites; 2. Verbals in as; 3. Participles in as when used to denote a disposition and not a particular act, so that they become adjectives: as,

avidus laudis, greedy of praise.
fastidiosus literarum, disdainful of letters.
juris peritus, skilled in law.
habetis ducem memorem vestri oblitum sui (Cat. iv. 9), you have a leader who thinks of you and forgets himself.
plena consiliorum inania verborum (De Or. i. 9), full of wisdom, void of words.
rationis et orationis experteris (Off. i. 16), devoid of reason and speech.
virtutis compos (id.), possessed of virtue.
paternorum honorum exheres (De Or. i. 38), ousted from his father's estate.
rei capitalis affinis (2 Verr. ii. 43), accessory to a capital crime.
justum ac tenacem propositi virum (Hor. Od. iii. 3), a man just and steadfast to his purpose.
si quem tui amantiorem cognovisti (Q. Fr. ix. 1), if you have
known any more fond of you.
multitudo insolens belli (B. C. ii. 36), a crowd unused to war.
sitiens sanguinum, thirsting for blood. But,
Tiberius sitiens sanguinem (Tac.), Tiberius [then] thirsting
for blood.

c. Some other adjectives of similar meaning occasionally take
the genitive; and the poets and late writers use almost any adject-
ive with a genitive of specification: as,
callidus rei militaris (Tac. H. ii. 31), skilled in soldiership.
pecuniae liberales (Sall. C. 7), lavish of money.
virtutum sterile seculum (id. i. 3), a century barren in virtue.
pauper aquarium (Hor.), scant of water.
prodigus æris (id.), a spendthrift of wealth.
notus animi, of known bravery.
sessi rerum (Virg.), weary of toil.
læta laborum (id.), glad of work.
modicus voluptatis, moderate in pleasure.
integer vitae scelerisque purus (Hor.), upright in life, and
clear of guilt.
docilis modorum (id.), teachable in measures.

Remark. — Animi (strictly a locative, plural animis), is added
to adjectives of feeling: as,
æger animi, sick at heart.
confusus animi, disturbed in spirit.

d. A few adjectives of likeness, nearness, belonging — requir-
ing the dative as such — take the possessive genitive: these are,
aequalia, affinis, communis, finitimus, par, propinquus, proprius (regularly), similis, vicinus (see p. 129).

Remark. — One noun limiting another is regularly used in the
genitive, and not with a proposition, — prepositions being origi-
nally adverbs, and requiring a verb. Sometimes, however, one
noun has another connected with it by a preposition. This hap-
pens with nouns of action, feeling, and motion; some relations of
place to or in which or from which (including origin); accompani-
ment, &c.: as,
odium in Cæsarem (or odium Cæsaris), hate of Caesar.
merita erga me (Cic.), services to me.
auxiliium adversus inimicos (id.), help against enemies.
reditus in cælum (id.), return to heaven.
impetus in me (id.), attack on me.
excessus e vitæ (id.), departure from life.
e prælio nuntius, a messenger from the battle.
castra ad Bagradam (Cæs.), camp near the Bagrada.
invidia ob scelera (Sall.), odium for his crimes. So,
domum reditionis spes (B. G. i. 5), hope of returning home.
4. Genitive after Verbs. The genitive is used as the object of several classes of Verbs.

a. Verbs of Remembering, Forgetting, and Reminding, take the genitive of the object when they are used of a continued state of mind, but the accusative when used of a single act: as,

pueritiæ memoriam recordari (Arch. i.), to recall the memory of childhood.

animus meminit præteritorum (Div. i. 30), the soul remembers the past.

venit mihi in mentem illius diei, I betothefted me of that day.

obliviscere cædis atque incendiorum (Cat. i. 3), turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations.

bona præterita non meminerunt (Fin. ii. 20), they do not remember past blessings.

memineram Paulum (Cat. M. 2), I remembered Paulus.

memini etiam quæ nolo (Fin. ii. 33), I remember even what I would not.

totam causam obítus est (Brut. 60), he forgot the whole case.

Remark. — The above distinction is unimportant as to verbs of reminding, which take the genitive except of neuter pronouns: as, hoc te admoneo, I warn you of this. The accusative is always used of a person or thing remembered by an eye-witness. Recórdor is almost always construed with an accusative, or with a phrase or clause.

b. Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the genitive of the charge or penalty: as,

arguit me furti, he accuses me of theft.

peculatūs damnatus (pecuniæ publicæ damnatus) (Flac. 18), condemned for embezzlement.

capitis damnatus, condemned to death.

Peculiar genitives, under this construction, are —

capitis (damnare capitis, to sentence to death);
majestatis, treason (crime against the dignity of the State);
repetundarum, extortion (lit. of an action for claiming back money wrongfully taken);
voti (damnatus or reus voti, bound to the payment of one's vow, i.e. successful in one's effort).

Remark. — The crime may be expressed by the ablative with de; the punishment by the ablative alone: as,

de vi et majestatis damnati (Phil. i.), condemned of assault and treason.

vitia autem hominum atque fraudes damnis, ignominiis, vinculis, verberibus, exiliis, morte damnantur (De Or. i 43), but the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourging, exile, death.

But, inter sicarios accusare (defendere), to accuse of murder.
c. Many verbs of Emotion take the genitive of the object which excites the feeling (Gen. of source). These are—

1. Verbs of pity, as misereor and miserescō: as,
   miserescite regis (Æn. viii. 573), pity the king.
   misere re animi non digna ferentis (id. ii. 144), pity a soul that endures unworthy things.

But miseror, commiseror, bewail, take the accusative.

2. The impersonals miseret, piget, paenitet, pudet, taedet (or pertaesum est), which take also the accusative of the person affected (§ 39, 2): as,
   hos homines infamia suae neque pudet neque taedet (Verr. i. 12), these men are neither ashamed nor weary of their dishonor.

Remark.—An infinitive or clause may be used with these verbs instead of the genitive of a noun: as,
   me paenitet hæc fecisse, I repent of having done this.
Sometimes they are used personally: as,
   nonne te hæc pudent (Ter. Ad.), do not these things shame you?

d. The impersonals interest and rēferē, it concerns, take the genitive of the person affected,—the subject of the verb being a neuter pronoun or a substantive clause: as,
   Clodi intererat Milonem perire (Mil. 21), it was the interest of Clodius that Milo should die.

But instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun the possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine: as,
   quid tua id rēferē?—magni (Ter. Ph.), how does that concern you? much.

rēferē is seldom used in any other way; but it takes, rarely, the dativus commodi (Hor. Sat. i. 1, 49). The object of interest is sometimes in the accusative with ad: as,

magni ad honorem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), it is of consequence to our honor.

Note.—The word interest may be used (1) impersonally with the genitive, as above; (2) personally with the dative: as, interest exercētūm, he is present with the army; (3) with the accusative and prepositions: as, interest inter exercētūm et castra, he is between—or, there is a difference between—the army and camp.

e. Some verbs of plenty and want govern the genitive (rarely, except ego and indīgeo, need, see § 54, 1, e): as,
   quid est quod defensionis indigēt? (Rosc. Am. 12), what is there that needs defence?
   satagīt rerum suarum, he has his hands full with his own affairs.
Also, sometimes, potior, get possession of; as always in the phrase potiri rerum, to be master of affairs. But these verbs more commonly take the ablative.

Remark. — The genitive is also used after the adverbs pridie, the day before; postridie, the day after; tenus, as far as: ergo, on account of (properly an ablative).

51. Dative.

The Dative is used of the object indirectly affected by the action: this is usually denoted in English by to or for (Indirect Object).

Note. — The dative seems to have the primary meaning of towards, and to be closely akin to the Locative. But this meaning is lost in Latin, except in some adverbial forms (eo, illo, &c.) and in the poets. In most of its derived meanings, it denotes an object not merely (like the Accusative) as passively affected by the action, or caused by it; but as reciprocally sharing in the action, or receiving it actively. Thus, in dedit mihi librum, he gave me a book, or fecit mihi injuriæ, he did me an injury; it is I that receive the book or feel the wrong. Hence persons, or objects personified, are most likely to be in the dative. So in the Spanish, the dative is used whenever a Person is the object of an action: as, yo veo al hombre, I see the man.

As this difference between the accusative and dative (direct and indirect object) depends on the view taken by the writer, verbs of similar meaning in different languages, or even in the same, differ in the case of the object. In English, especially, owing to the loss of its cases, many verbs are construed as transitive, which in Latin require the dative. Thus believe, which in English originally governed the genitive, has become transitive; while the corresponding verb in Latin, credo (a compound of cred and do (θέ), to place confidence in) takes the dative.

1. Dative with Transitives. Transitive verbs, whose meaning permits it, take the dative of the indirect object, with the accusative of the direct.

These are, especially, verbs of Giving, Telling, Sending, and the like: as,

do tibi librum, I give you a book.
valeatudini tribuamus aliquid (Tusc. i. 118), let us allow something to health.
illud tibi affirmō (Fam. i. 7), this I assure you.
Pompeio plurimum debebam (id. i. 9), I owed much to Pompey.
id omne tibi pollicescor ac deero (Man. 24), all this I promise you and bestow.
commendo tibi ejus omnia negotia (Fam. i. 1), I put all his affairs in your hands.
amico munusculum mittere (id. ix. 12), to send a slight tribute
to a friend.
illi inimico servum remisit (Deiot. ii.), to him, his enemy, he
returned a slave.
dabis profecto misericordiæ quod iracundiaæ negavisti (id. 14),
you will surely grant to mercy what you refused to wrath.
Karthagini bellum denuntio (Cat. M. 6) I announce war to
Carthage.
curis gaudia misces (Catull. only poet.), thou minglest joy
with care.

a. In the passive, such verbs retain the dative of the indirect
object (see 2, f): as,
hæc nobis nuntiantur, these things are told us.

b. When the idea of motion is distinctly conveyed, a preposition
is used (except by poetic use): as,
has litteras ad te mitto, I send you this letter.

c. A few verbs of this class—under a different view of the
action—may take the accusative of a person, with an ablative of
means.

Such verbs are dono, impertio, induo, exuo, adspargo,
inspergo, circumdo, circumfundio, prohibeo, intercludo.

Thus—
donat coronas suis, he presents wreaths to his men; or,
donat suos coronis, he presents his men with wreaths.
pomis se induit arbos (G. iv. 143), the tree decks itself with
fruits.
copii (dat.) armis exutis (B. G. iii. 6), the forces being stripped
of arms.
aram sanguine adspargere (N. D. iii. 36), to sprinkle the altar
with blood.

2. Dative after Intransitives. Intransitive verbs take
the dative of the indirect object only: as,

cedant arma togæ (Phil. i. 8), let arms give way to the gown.
quid homini potest turpissimus usuvenire (Quintct. 15), what
more shameful can befall a man?
respondi maximis criminibus (Phil. i. 14), I have answered the
heaviest charges.

ut ita cuique eveniat (id. 46), that it may so turn out to each.
manent ingenia senibus (Cat. M. 7), old men keep their powers
of mind.
vento et fluctibus loqui (Lucr. iv. 491), to talk to wind and
wave.
nec quereris patri (Juv. ii. 131), you complain not to a father.
non cuvis homini contingit adire Corinthum (Hor. Ep. i. 17),
it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth.

α. Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, serve, trust,
and their contraries,—also, to believe, persuade, command, obey,
envy, threaten, pardon, and spare,—take the Dative in Latin,
though transitive in English.
These include, among others, the following: adversor, credo,
faveo, fido, ignosco, impěro, invideo, trasco, noceo, parco,
pareo, placeo, servio, studeo, suădeo (persuadeo): as,

cur mihi invides, why do you envy me?
civitati serviebat, he served the state.
tibi favemus, we favor you.
mihi parcit atque ignoscit, he spares and pardons me.
sonitus opitulari poteram (Fam. iv. 13), I was able to help the
guilty.
bonis invičent (Sall.), they envy the good.
Catoni resistimus (Fam. i. 1), we withstand Cato.
non omnibus servio (id. xvi. 13), I am not a servant to every
man.
cum ceteris tum mihi ipsi displiceo (id. iv. 13), I dissatisfy
other people and myself too.
non parcam operae (id. xvi. 13), I will spare no pains.
sic mihi persuasi (Cat. M. 21), so I have persuaded myself.
hiic legioni Čazar confidebat maxime (B. G. i. 40), in this
legion Čazar had special confidence.
ex quo efficietur hominem naturae obedientem homini nocere
non posse (Off. iii. 5), whence it appears that a man while
obeying Nature cannot harm a fellow-man.

Remark.—1. Some verbs of the same meanings take the ac-
cusative: as, juvo, adjúvo, help; laedo, injure; jubeo, order;
deficio, fail.

2. Some take the dative or accusative indifferently: as, adúlor,
flatter; aemúlor, rival; comítor, attend; despěro, despair;
praestélor, await; medeor, medicor, heal.

3. Some take the dative or accusative according to their mean-
ing: as,

parti civium consulunt (Off. i. 25), they consult for a party
of the citizens.
cum te consuluissem (Fam. xi. 29), when I had consulted you.
metuens pueris (Plaut. Am. v. 1), anxious for the boys.
nec metuunt deos (Ter. Hec. v. 2), they fear not even the gods
(so also timeo.)
ei cavere volo (Fam. iii. 1), I will have a care for him.
caveto omnia (id. xi. 21), beware of everything.
prospicite patriæ (Cat. iv. 2), have regard for the state.
prospicere sedem senectuti (Liv. iv. 49), to provide a habitation for old age [so also providere].
nequeo mihi temperare (Plin. xviii. 6), I cannot control myself.
rempublicam temperare (Tusc. i. 1), to govern the state [so also moderor].

See Lexicon, under convenio, cupio, fido (abl.), insisto, maneo, praesto, praevento, recipio, renuntio, solvo, succedo.

b. The dative is used after the Impersonals libet, licet; after verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male; together with the following: — gratificor, gratulor, haereo (rarely), jungo, medeor, medicor, misceo (poetic), nubo, permitto, plaudo, probo, studeo, supplico; and the phrases auctor esse, gratias agere (habere), morem gerere (morigeror), supplex (dicto audiens) esse: as,

quod mihi maxime lubet (Fam. i. 18), what most pleases me.
Di isti Segulio male faciant (id. xi. 21), may the gods send evil upon that Segulius.
mihi ipsi nonquam satisfacio (id. 17), I never satisfy myself.
Pompeio se gratificari putant (id. i. 1), they suppose they are doing Pompey a service.
sed tibi morem gessi (id. ii. 18), but I have deferred to you.
tibi permitto respondere (N. D. iii. 1), I give you leave to answer.
armatus adversario maledixi (Fam. vi. 7), in arms I cursed the foe.
voluptati aurium morigerari (Or. 48), to humor the lust of the ears.
habeo senectuti maximam gratiam (Cat. M. 14), I owe old age much thanks.
maximas tibi gratias ago, I return you the warmest thanks.

c. Many verbs of the above classes take an accusative of the thing, with a dative of the person: as,
cui cum rex crucem minitaretur (Tusc. i. 43), when the king threatened him with the cross.
invectum nobis optimam magistram (id. iii. 2), they grudge us our best of teachers [Nature].
frumento exercitui proviso (B. G. v. 44), when the army was supplied with corn.
puerum [vocare] cui cenam imperaret (Ros. Am. 21), to call a boy and order supper of him.
imperat oppidanis decem talenta, he exacts ten talents of the townspeople.
omnia sibi ignoscere (Vell. ii. 30), to pardon one’s self every-thing.
Most verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super—and some with circum—take the dative of the object on account of their acquired meaning (many take also the accusative, being originally transitive): as,

neque enim assentior iis (Læl. 3), for I do not agree with them. tempestati obsequi artis est (Fam. i. 9), it is a point of skill to yield to the weather. omnibus negotiis non interfuit solum sed praeuit (id. i. 6), he not only had a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them. pueritia adulescencia obrept (Cat. M.), youth steals upon childhood. [Archiæ] antecellere omnibus contigit (Arch. 3), it was his good fortune to outvie all. quantum natura hominis pecudibus antecedit (Off. i. 30), so far as man’s nature is superior to brutes. nos ei succedimus (Fam. vii. 31), we succeed him. criminiis illis pro rege se supponit reum (Deiot. 15), he takes those charges upon himself in the king’s behalf. nec unquam succumbet inimicis (id. 13), he will never bend before his foes. illis libellis nomen suum inscribunt (Arch. 13), they put their own name to those papers. tibi obtempera (F. ii. 7), restrain yourself. hibernis Labienum praeposuit (Cæs.), he set Labienus over the winter-quarters. cur mihi te offers, ac meis commodis officis et obetas (Ros. Am. 38), why do you offer yourself to me, and then hinder and withstand my advantage?

So excellere: as,

tu longe aliis excellis (De Or. ii. 54), you far excel others.

**Remark.**—1. Some of the above compounds acquire a transitive meaning, and take the accusative: as, aggredior, approach; adire, go to; antecedo, anteo, antegradior, precede (both cases); convenio, meet; ineo, enter; obee, encounter; offendo, hit; oppugno, oppose; subeo, go under (take up): as,

nos oppugnat (Fam. i. 1), he opposes us. quis audeat bene comitatum aggredi, who would dare encounter a man well-attended?
munus obire (Læl. 2), to attend to a duty.

2. The adjective obvius—also the adverb obviam—with a verb takes the dative: as,

si ille obvius ei futurus non erat (Mil. 18), if he was not intending to get in his way. mihi obviam venisti (Fam. ii. 16), you came to meet me.
e. Many compounds of ab, de, ex, with adimo, take the dative (especially of persons) instead of the ablative of separation, —
the action being more vividly represented as done to the object
affected by it (so rarely other verbs by analogy): as,

vitam adolescensibus vis ausert (C. M. 19), force deprives young
men of life.
nihil enim tibi detraxit senectus (id. 1), for age has robbed you
of nothing.
nec mihi hunc errorem extorqueri volo (id. 23), nor do I wish
this error wrested from me.
cum extorta mihi veritas esset (Or. 48), when the truth had
been forced from me (compare furatur, Off. ii. 11).

Remark. — The distinct idea of place, — and, in general, names
of things, — require the ablative with a preposition; or both con-
structions may be used together: as,

illum ex periculo eripuit (B. G. iv. 12), he dragged him out of
danger.
victoriam eripi sibi e manibus, that victory should be wrested
from his hands.

f. Intransitive verbs governing the dative can be used in the
Passive only impersonally: as,
cui parci potuit (Liv. xxi. 12), who could be spared?
non modo non invidetur illi ætati verum etiam favetur (Off. ii.
13), that age [youth] is not only not envied, but is even favored.
mihi quidem persuaderi nunquam potuit (C. M. 22), I for my
part could never be persuaded.
resistendum senectuti est (id. 11), we must resist old age.
plaudi tibi non solere (Deiot. 12), that you are not wont to be
applauded.
tempori serviendum est (Fam. ix. 7), we must serve the time.

g. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which
would strictly require another case with a preposition: as,
differ sermoni (Hor.), differs from prose [a sermon].
tibi certet (Virg.), may vie with you [tecum].
lateri abdidit ensem (id.), buried the sword in his side [in laterè].
solstitium pecori defendite (Ecl. vii. 47), keep the noontide from
the flock [a pecore].

Here the poets regard the acting as done to the thing affected, for
greater vividness of expression.

3. Dative of Possession. The dative is used with esse
and similar words to denote the Owner: as,
est mihi liber, I have a book.
**REMARK.** — The Genitive or a possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative the fact of possession: as, liber est meus, the book is mine (and no one's else); est mihi liber, I have a book (among other things). This is the usual form to denote simple possession; habeo, I have, generally signifying hold, often with some secondary meaning: as,

legionem quam secum habebat (B. G. i. 8), the legion which he had with him.
domitas habere libidines (De Or.), to keep the passions under.

* a. Compounds of esse take the dative (excepting abesse and posse; for other compounds, see above, 2, d).

* b. After nomen est, and similar expressions, the name is usually put in the dative by a kind of apposition with the person: as,
puer ab Ínopiá Egerio inditum nomen (Liv. i. 34), the boy was called Egerius from his poverty.
cui Africano fuit cognomen (Liv. xxv. 2), whose surname was Africanus.

But the name may be in apposition with nomen; or in the genitive (§ 50, 1, f): as,
cui nomen Arethusa (Verr. iv. 52), [a fount] called Arethusa.
nomen Mercuri est mihi (Plaut. Am.), my name is Mercury.

4. Dative of Agency. The dative is used, after some passive forms, to denote the agent: viz.

* a. Regularly with the Gerund or Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests: as,
hæc vobis provincia est defendenda (Man. 6), this province is for you to defend [to be defended by you].
mihi est pugnandum, I have to fight [i.e., the need of fighting is mine; compare mihi est liber].

* b. The dative is often used after perfect participles, especially when used in an adjective sense, — rarely after other parts of the verb: as,
mihi deliberatum et constitutum est (Rull. i. 8), I have deliberated and resolved.
oratori omnia quaësta esse debent (De Or. iii. 14), an orator should search everything.
acceptus mihi, acceptable to me.

* c. By the poets and later writers it is used in this way after almost any passive verb: as,
neque cernitur ulli (Æn. i. 440), and is seen by none.
felix est dicta sorori (Fast. iii.), she was called happy by her sister.
REMARK.—The dative is regularly used after the passive of \textit{videor} (usually to be rendered \textit{seem}): as,

\textit{videtur mihi, it seems (or seems good) to me.}

5. Dative of Service. The dative is used to denote the \textit{purpose} or \textit{end}; often with another dative of the person or thing affected: as,

\textit{reipublicae cladi sunt (Jug. 85), they are ruin to the State.}
\textit{rati sese dls immortalibus curae esse (id. 75), thinking themselves to be the special care of the gods.}
\textit{magno usui nostris fuit (B. G. iv. 25), it was of great service to our men.}
\textit{tertiam aciem nostris subsidio misit (id.), he sent the third line as a relief to our men.}
\textit{omnia dequant quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui (id. 29), all things were wanting which were of use for repairing the ships.}

REMARK.—In this use the dative is nearly equivalent to a noun in apposition with the subject or object of the verb. It is common with the words \textit{cordi, a delight (lit. to the heart)}; \textit{dono, a gift}; \textit{emolumento, a gain}; \textit{usui, an advantage}; \textit{vitio, a fault}. The indeclinable adjective \textit{frugi} is properly a dative of service.

6. Dative of Nearness, \\textit{&c.} The dative is used after Adjectives and Adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, or for which it exists.

Such are especially words of \textit{fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination}, and their opposites: as,

\textit{nihil est tam naturae aptum (Læl. 5), nothing is so fitted to nature.}
\textit{carus omnibus exspectatopus venies (F. xvi. 7), you will come loved and longed for by all.}
\textit{locum divinæ naturæ æternitatisque contrarium (Cat. M. 21), a point opposed to the divine nature and eternity.}
\textit{nihil difficile amanti puto (Or. 10), I think nothing hard to a lover.}
\textit{pompeæ quam pugnæ aptius (id. 13), fitter for a procession than a battle.}
\textit{consentaneum tempori et personæ (id. 22), adapted to the time and the party.}
\textit{rebus ipsis par et æqualis oratio (id. 36), a speech equal and level with the subject.}

Also, in poetic and colloquial use, \textit{idem, the same}: as,

\textit{in eadem arma nobis (Cic.), to the same arms with us.}

\textit{a.} Adjectives of Usefulness or Fitness take oftener the accusative with \textit{ad}, but sometimes the dative: as,
aptus ad rem militarem, *fit for a soldier's duty.*
locus ad insidias aptior (Mil. 20), *a place better for lying-in-a*-
ad amicitiam idoneus (Lael. 17), *apt to friendship.*
castris idoneum locum deligit (B. G. vi. 10), *he selects a suit-
able camping-ground.*

b. Adjectives and nouns of *inclination* may take the accusative
with *in* or *erga:* as,
comis in uxorem (Hor. Ep. ii. 2), *kind to his wife.*
divina bonitas erga homines (N. D. ii. 23), *the divine goodness*
towards men.

c. The following may take also the possessive genitive:—
sequalis, affinis, amicus, cognatus, communis, consanguineus, dispersa, familiaris, inimicus, necessarius, par, peculiaris, proprius, superteres (see p. 118).

Remark. — After *similius, like,* with early writers, the genitive
is more usual; Cicero uses the genitive of *persons,* and the genitive
or dative of *things.*

d. The following take the accusative:—*propior, proximus*
(sometimes), *propius, proxime* (more commonly)—as if preposi-
tions, like *prope.*

e. Verbal nouns take (rarely) the dative, like the verbs from
which they are derived: as,
invidia consuli (Sall.), *ill-will against the consul.*
ministri sceleribus (Tac.), *servants of crime.*
obtemperatio legibus (Leg. i. 15), *obedience to the laws.*
sibi ipsi responsio (De Or. iii. 54), *an answer to himself.*

7. Dative of Reference. The dative is often required
not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the
sentence (*dativus commodi et incommodi*).

Note. — In these cases there may be only one word in the sen-
tence; but they are distinguished by the fact that the meaning of the
verb is complete without the dative, while in the preceding cases it is
required to complete the sense of some particular word.
tibi aras (Pl. Merc. i. 1), *you plough for yourself.*
non solum nobis divites esse volumus sed liberis (Off. iii. 15),
*it is not for ourselves alone but for our children that we would be rich.*
tes tuas tibi habe (formula of divorce), *keep your goods.*
laudavit mihi fratrem, *he praised my brother [out of regard for
me; laudavit fratrem meum would imply no such motive].*
a. The dative of reference is often used instead of the possessive genitive to qualify the whole idea rather than a single word:

iter Paenis vel corporibus suis obstruere (Cat. M. 20), to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their bodies.
se in conspectum nautis dedit (Verr. vi. 33), he put himself in sight of the sailors.
versatur mihi ante oculos (id. 47), it comes before my eyes.

b. The dative of reference is used in relations of direction, answering to the English as you go in (on the right, in the front, &c.):
as,

oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Epiro (B. C. iii. 80), the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus.
lavâ parte sinum intrantibus (Liv. xxxvi. 26), on the left as you sail up the gulf.

c. The dative of reference is used, rarely (by a Greek idiom), with the participle of volo or nolo, and similar words:
as,

ut quibusque bellum invitis aut volentibus erat (Tac. Ann. i. 59), as they might receive the war reluctantly or gladly.
ut militibus labos volentibus esset (Jug. 100), that the soldiers might assume the task willingly.

d. Ethical Dative. The dative of the personal pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person referred to (dativus ethicus: compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together."—As you Like it.):
as,

quid mihi Celsus agit (Hor.), what is Celsus doing?
at tibi repente venit mihi Cominius (F. ix. 2), but, look you, of a sudden comes to me Cominius.
hem tibi talentum argenti (Pl. Trin. v. 1), hark ye, a talent of silver.
quid tibi vis? what would you have?
avaritia senilis quid sibi velit non intelligo (Cat. M. 18), I do not understand what an old man's avarice means.

Remark.—To express for—meaning instead of, in defence of, in behalf of—the ablative with pro must be used, not the dative:
as,

pro patria mori (Hor. Od. iii. 2), to die for one's country.
pro rege, lege, grege (prov.), for king, law, people.
egeo ibo pro te (Pl. Most.), I will go instead of you.
non pro me sed contra me (De Or. iii. 20), not for me but against me.
52. ACCUSATIVE.

The Accusative denotes that which is immediately affected by the action of a verb (Direct Object).

1. General Use. The Accusative is the case of the direct object of a transitive verb: as,

legationem suscipit, he undertook the embassy.
Caesar vicit Pompeium, Caesar conquered Pompey.

Remark. — The Object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its Subject in the Passive, and is put in the nominative: as,

legatio suspicitur, the embassy is undertaken.
Pompeius a Cæsare victus est, Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

a. Many verbs which express Feeling, apparently intransitive, may take an accusative in Latin: as,

fidem supplicis erubuit (Virg.), he respected [blushed at] the faith of a suppliant.
plebat mortuos vivosque, he wept the dead and living.
meum casum luctumque doluerunt (Sest.69), they grieved [at] my calamity and sorrow.
horreo conscientiam (Fin. i. 16), I shudder at conscience.

Such verbs may accordingly be used in the passive: as,

ridetur ab omni conventu (Hor.), he is laughed [at] by the whole assembly.

b. Cognate Accusative. A neuter verb often takes an accusative of kindred meaning, almost always modified by an adjective, or in some other manner (Accusative of Effect): as,

vivere eam vitam (Cic.), to live that kind of life.
ætatem tertiam vivebat, he was living his third age.

Similarly, in such phrases as vincere judicium, to gain one's case at court, and in poetic use: as,

saltare Cyclopa (Hor. Sat. v. 1), to dance the Cyclops.
Bacchanalia vivere (Juv. ii. 2), to live in revels.

c. Verbs of taste, smell, &c., take an accusative of the quality: as,

vinum redolens (Cic.), smelling of wine.
herbam mella sapiunt (Plin.), the honey tastes of grass.
a. Verbs of motion, and a few others, compounded with prepositions, especially compounds of circum and trans, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative: as,

mortem obire, to die.
consulatum ineunt (Livy iii. 6), they assume the consulship.
neminem conveni (Fam. ix. 14), I met no one.
tectum subire, to enter [go under] a place of shelter.
coloquium haud abnuit (Livy xxx. 29), he did not refuse the interview.
si insulam adisset (B. G. iv. 20), if he should go to the island.
cives qui circumstant senatum (Cat. i. 8), the citizens who throng about the senate.

e. Construction Prægnana. The accusative is used in certain phrases constructively, the real object of the verb being something understood: as,

coire societatem, to [go together and] form an alliance.
scriber foedus, to strike a treaty [i.e. to sanction by striking down the victim].
mare navigare, to sail the sea [i.e. to sail a ship upon the sea].

f. The accusative is used after the Impersonals decet, it becomes; delectat, juvat, it delights; oportet, it behooves; fallit, it deceives; fugit, præterit, it escapes: as,
te non præterit (Fam. i. 8), it has not escaped your notice.
(For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 50, 4, c.)

2. Two Accusatives. Several classes of verbs, besides the direct object, take another accusative, either in apposition or as a secondary object.

a. The accusative is used in apposition after verbs of naming, choosing, &c. (See § 46.)

b. A second accusative is sometimes used after transitive verbs compounded with prepositions: as,

Hiberum copias trajecit (Liv. xxi. 23), he threw his forces across the Ebro.

But with these verbs the preposition is oftener repeated.

c. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, either of which may be regarded as the direct object of the action: as,

hoc vos doceo (Cic.), I teach you this.
hoc te vehementer rogo (id.), this I urgently beg of you.

Remark. — The accusative of the Thing may remain with the passive of verbs of teaching, also rogo. But generally with verbs of asking, the Thing becomes subject-nom., while the Person asked is put in the ablative with a preposition. The preposition is
always used, to denote the person after peto, postulo (ab), quaero (ex or de): as,
pacem ab Romanis petere (Cæs.), to beg peace of the Romans.

a. The transitive celo, conceal, and the usually neuter lateo,
lie hid, take the accusative of the person: as,
hoc me celavit, he hid this from me.
latet plerosque (Plin.), it is hid from most.

3. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is used adverbially, or for specification. This is found —

a. With many verbs usually intransitive, which take a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative: as,
quid moror, why do I delay?
pauca milites hortatus (Sall.), having briefly exhorted the men.
dulœ loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22), sweetly speaking.
acerba tuens (Æn. ix. 793), looking cruelly.
torvum clamat (id. vii. 599), he cries harshly.
idem gloriar, to boast the same thing.

Note. — Many of these are cognate accusatives.

b. In a few adverbial phrases, such as id temporis, at that time; meam vicem, on my part; quod si, but (as to which) if.

c. In the so-called synecdochical or Greek accusative, used by the poets to denote the part affected: as,
caput nectentur (Virg.), their head shall be bound [they shall be bound about the head].

The part is strictly in apposition with the whole, and remains (as above) after the passive.

Remark. — The accusative after passive verbs used reflexively is sometimes wrongly referred to this construction: as,
inutille ferrum cingitur (Virg.), he girds on the useless steel.

4. Special Uses. Peculiar uses are the following:—

a. The accusative is used in Exclamations: as,
O fortunatam rempublicam (Cic.), O fortunate republic!
O me miserum! Ah wretched me!

b. The subject of the Infinitive Mood is in the accusative.
This is especially frequent after words of knowing, thinking, and telling (verba sentiendi et declarandi, § 67, i. In its origin, the accusative is strictly the Object of the leading verb).

c. Time how long, and Distance how far, are in the accusative.
(See § 55.)

For the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 56.
53. Vocative.

The Vocative is the form of direct Address: as,

Tiberine pater, te sancte precor (Liv. ii. 103), O fuiher Tiber! 
thee, holy one, I pray.

Note.—The Vocative can hardly be called a case, as it properly 
has no case termination, and forms no part of the sentence.

a. Sometimes the nominative of a noun is used instead of the 
vocative, in apposition with the subject of the Imperative: as,

audi tu, populus Albanus (id. i. 24), hear, thou people of Alba.

b. Sometimes the vocative of an adjective is used instead of the
nominative, where the verb is of the second person: as,

censorem trabeate salutas (Pers.), robed you salute the censor.

So in the phrase,

macte [= magne, root mag] virtute esto (Hor.), be enlarged
in manliness [bravo, well done].

54. Ablative.

The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions from, in, 
at, with, by.

Note.—The Ablative form contains three distinct cases,—the 
ablative proper, expressing the relation from; the locative, in; and 
the instrumental, with or by. This confusion has arisen partly 
from phonetic decay, by which the cases have become identical in 
form, and partly from the development by which they have ap 
proached one another in meaning. Compare, for the first, the like 
forms of the dative and ablative plural, the old dative in e of the fifth 
decension, and the loss of the original d in the ablative; and, for 
the second, the phrases a parte dextra, on the right; quam ob causam, 
from which cause; ad famam, at (in consequence of) the report.

The relation of from includes separation, source, cause, agent, and 
comparison; that of in or at, place, time, circumstance; that of with or 
by, accompaniment, instrument, means, manner, quality, and price. It is 
probable that, originally, the idea of accompaniment had a separate case, 
which became confounded with the instrumental before the Latin was 
separated from the kindred tongues.
1. **Ablative of Separation.** Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, are followed by the ablative: as,

*levamur superstitione, liberamur mortis metu (Fin. i. 19), we are relieved from superstition, freed from fear of death.*

*oculis se privavit (id. v. 29), he deprived himself of eyes.*

*consilio et auctoritate orbati (Cat. M. 6), to be bereft of counsel and authority.*

*legibus solutus, relieved from the obligation of laws.*

*ea philosophia quæ spoliat nos judicio, privat approbatione,*

*omnia orbat sensibus (Acad. ii. 19), that philosophy which despoils us of judgment, deprives of approval, bereaves of every sense.*

*omni Galliâ interdicit Romanos (B. G. i. 46), he [Ariovistus] bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.*

*ei aqua et igni interdicitur (Vell. Pat. ii. 45), he is debarred the use of fire and water.*

*[cives] calamitate prohibere (Manil. 7), to keep the citizens from ruin.*

*carere febri (Fam. xvi. 16), to be free from fever.*

*voluptatibus carere (Cat. M. 3), to lack enjoyments.*

*non egeo medicinâ (Læl. 3), I want no physic.*

*magnno me metu liberabis (Cat. i. 5), you will relieve me of great fear.*

*Ephorus calcaribus eget (Quint.), Ephorus needs the spur.*

**a.** Compounds of *a, ab, de, ex,* take the ablative when used figuratively; but in their literal meaning, implying motion, they usually follow the rules of place from which (see § 55, 3): as,

*conatu desistere (B. G. i. 8), to desist from the attempt.*

*exsolvere se occupationibus (Fam. vii. 1), to get clear of occupation.*

*prius quam ea cura decederet patribus (Liv. ix. 29), before that anxiety left the fathers.*

*desine communibus locis (Ac. ii. 25), quit commonplaces.*

*abire magistratu, to leave the office.*

*abscedere incepto, to relinquish the undertaking.*

*abstinere injuriâ, to refrain from wrong.*

*exire aere alieno, to get out of debt.*

**b.** More rarely, the ablative is used after verbs without a preposition to denote the place from which: as,

*cessisset patriâ (Mil. 25), he would have left his country.*

*loco movere (Liv. i. 35), to move from its place.*

*patriâ pellere, to drive out of the country.*

*Galliâ arcer (Phil. v. 13), to keep out of Gaul.*

*manu mittere, to emancipate [let go from the hand].*
c. Adjectives denoting *freedom* and *want* are followed by the ablative: as,

liber cura et angore (Fin. i. 15), *free from care and anguish.*
vacuos curis (ib. ii. 14), *void of care.*
urbs nuda præsidio (Att. vii. 13), *the city naked of defence.*
immunis militiâ (Liv. i. 43), *free of military service.*
plebs orbâ tribunis (Leg. iii. 3), *the people deprived of tribunes.*

d. *Opus* and *usus* signifying *need* (with *esse*) are followed by the ablative (often by the ablative of the *perfect participle*, with or without a noun): as,

magistratibus opus est (Leg. iii. 2), *there is need of magistrates.*
curatore usus est (id. 4; — chiefly ante-classical), *there is need of a manager.*
properato opus esset (Mil. 19), *there were need of haste.*
ut opus est facto (Ter. Hæaut.), *as there is need to do.*

Remark.—The nominative is often used with *opus* in the predicate: as,

multi opus sunt boves (Varro R. R. i. 18), *there is need of many cattle.*
dux nobis et auctor opus est (Fam. ii. 6), *we need a chief and adviser.*

e. *Egeo* and *indigo* are often followed by the genitive: as,

ne quis auxili egeat (B. G. vi. 11), *lest any require aid.*
qua ad consolandum majoris ingenii et ad serendum singularis
virtutis indigent (Fam. vi. 4), [sorrows] *which for comfort need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage.*

Remark.—With all words of separation and want, the poets frequently, by a Greek idiom, use the genitive (see § 50, 4, 6): as,

desine mellium tandem querelarum (Hor. Od. ii. 9), *cease at length from weak complaints.*
abstineto irarum (id. iii. 27), *abstain from wrath.*
operum solutis (id. 17), *free from toils.*

2. **Ablative of Source.** The ablative is used to denote the source from which anything is derived, or the material of which it consists.

a. Participles denoting *birth* or *origin* are followed by the ablative. Such participles are *natus, satus, editus, genitus,*

*ortus*: as,

Jove natus et Maia (N. D. iii. 22), *son of Juniper and Maia.*
ortus equestri loco (Leg. Agr. i. 9), *born of equestrian rank.*
edite regibus (Hor. Od. i. 1), *descendant of kings.*
quo sanguine cretus (Æn. ii. 74), *born of what blood.*
**Ablative.**

**Remark.**—A preposition (ab, de, ex) is usually expressed with the name of the *mother*, and with that of distant ancestors.

b. Rarely, the *place of birth* is expressed by the ablative: as, desideravit C. Felginatem Placentiâ, A. Granium Puteolis (B. C. iii. 71), *he lost C. F. of Placentia, A. G. of Puteoli*.

c. The ablative is used with *constare* and similar verbs, to denote *material* (but with other verbs a preposition is generally used, except by the poets): as, animo constamus et corpore (Fin. iv. 8), *we consist of soul and body*.

**Note.**—The ablative with *consistere* and *contineri* is *locative* (see below, 10).

d. The ablative of *material* is used with *facere*, * fieri*, and similar words: as,

quid hoc homine facias (Verr. ii. 16), *What are you going to do with this man?* [Or, de hoc homine.]
quid Tulliolâ meâ fiet (Fam. xiv. 4), *what will become of my dear Tullia?*
quid te futurum est (Verr. ii. 64), *what will happen to you?*

**3. Ablative of Cause.** The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express the *cause*.

**Note.**—The cause, in the Ablative, is considered as *source*, as is shown by the use of *ab*, *de*, *ex*; while with *ad*, *ob*, the idea of cause arises from *nearness*. But occasionally it is difficult to distinguish between *cause* and *means* (which is instrumental) or *circumstance* (either locative or instrumental).

nimio gaudio pæne desipiebam (Fam. i. 13), *I was almost a fool with excess of joy.*
negligentiâ plectur (Læl. 22), *we are chastised for negligence.*
cæcus avaritiâ (Liv. v. 51), *blind with avarice.*
gubernatoris ars utilitae non arte laudatur (Fam. i. 13), *the pilot’s skill is praised as service not as skill.*

a. The ablative is used with the adjectives *dignus, indignus,* and with the verbs *dignor, laboro* (also with *ex*), *exsillo,* *exsulto, triumpho, lacrimo, ardeo.*

vir patre, avo, majoribus suis dignissimus (Phil. iii. 10), *a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.*
doleo te aliis malis laborare (Fam. iv. 3), *I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.*
ex ære alieno laborare (B. C. iii. 22), *to labor under debt.*
exsultare lætitiâ ac triumphare gaudio cœpit (Clu. 5), *she began to exult in gladness, and triumph in joy.*
b. The motive which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative alone; the object exciting the emotion often by ob or propter with the accusative: as,
non ob prædam aut spoliandi cupidine (Tac. H. i. 63), not for booty or through lust of plunder.

c. The ablatives causā and gratiā, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a possessive in agreement: as,
causā on account of this; meā causā, for my sake.
et ipsorum et reipublicae causā (Manili. 2), for their own sake and the republic's.
sul purgandi gratiā, for the sake of clearing themselves.

With possessives the use of gratiā in this sense is rare.

4. Ablative of Agent. The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with ab (see § 56, 4): as,
laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis (Hor. Sat. i. 2), he is praised by these, blamed by those.
ab animo tuo quidquid agitur id agitur a te (Tusc. i. 22), whatever is done by your soul is done by yourself.

a. This construction is sometimes used after neuter verbs having a passive sense: as,
perire ab hoste, to be slain by an enemy.

b. The agent, considered as instrument or means, is expressed by per with the accusative, or by operā with a genitive or possessive: as,
per Antiochum (Liv.), by means of Antiochus.
meā operā (Cic.), by my means.

So per vim, as well as vi (B. G. i. 14), by force.

5. Ablative of Comparison. The Comparative degree is followed by the ablative (signifying than): as,
quis me beatior (Tusc. i. 4), who more blest than I?
quid nobis duobus laboriosius est (Mil. 2), what more burdened than we two?

Note.—Here the object of comparison is the starting-point from which we reckon, as itself possessing the quality in some degree. That this is the true explanation is shown by the ablative in Sanskrit, and the genitive in Greek.

a. Quam with the same case as the adjective may also be used, and must regularly be used when the adjective is not either nominative or accusative. But the poets sometimes use the ablative even then: as,
pane egeo jam mellitis potiore placentis (Hor. Ep. i. 10), *I want bread better than honey-cakes.*

**Remark.** — *Quam* is never used in this construction with relative pronouns having a definite antecedent.

b. Particularly the idiomatic ablatives *opinione, spe, solito, dicto, aequo, credibili, and justo,* are used instead of a clause: as,
celerius opinione (Fam. iv. 23), *faster than one would think.*
amnis solito citation (Liv. xxii. 19), *a stream swifter than its wont.*

c. *Plus, minus, amplius, longius,* are often used with words of measure or number without affecting their case (being in a kind of apposition): as,

plus septingenti capti (Liv. xlii. 12), *more than 700 were taken.*
plus tertia parte interfecta (Cæs.), *more than a third part being slain.*

spatium non amplius sexcentorum pedum (id.), *a space of not more than 600 feet.*

**Note.** — *Alius* is used by the poets with the ablative, perhaps in imitation of the Greek; but the construction is found also in Sanskrit, and is probably original: as, *alium sapienti bonoque* (Hor. Ep. i. 16). Under comparatives belong the adverbs *antea, antidea, postilla, postea, praeterea, earlier than this,* &c. (see § 50, 3).

[For Ablative of Difference, see below, 6, c.]

6. **Ablative of Means.** The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, means, or instrument: as,
vultu Milonis perterritus (Mil. 15), *scared by the face of Milo.*
animum appellat novo nomine (Tusc. i. 10), *he calls the mind by a new name.*
probabilia conjecturâ sequens (id. 9), *following probabilities by conjecture.*
excultus doctrinâ (id. 2), *thoroughly trained in learning.*
fidibus canere (id.), *to sing to the lyre.*
Fauno immolare agnâ (Hor. Od. i. 4), *to sacrifice to Faunus with a ewe-lamb.*
pol pudere quam pigere præstat totemdem literis (Plaut. Trin. 345), *by Pollux better shame than blame, although the letters count the same* [lit. with as many letters].

a. The ablative of accompaniment regularly takes *cum* (except sometimes in military phrases, and a few isolated expressions, especially in the early writers): as,
cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi (B. G. ii. 19), *having crossed the river with the slingers and archers.*
subsequebatur omnibus copis (ib.), *he followed close with all his forces.*
[out.
hoc præsidio predictus est (Verr. ii. 34), *with this convoy he set*

Remark. — *Misceo* and *jungo*, with their compounds, may take the ablative of accompaniment, without *cum*, or sometimes the dative.

b. Words of *contention* require *cum* (but often take the dative in poetry): as,

*armis cum hoste certare* (Cic.), *to fight with the enemy in arms.*
est mihi tecum certamen (id.), *I have a controversy with you.*
*solus tibi certat Amyntas* (Ecl. v. 8), *Amyntas alone vies with you.*

c. The ablative of *means* is used with words of *filling, abounding*, and the like: as,

*Deus bonis omnibus explevit mundum* (Univ. 3), *God has filled the world with all good things.*
dialecticis imbutus (Tusc. i. 7), *tinctured with logic.*
circumfusi caligine (id. 19), *overspread with darkness.*
opimus praedā (Verr. i. 50), *rich with spoil.*
vita plena et conferta voluptatibus (Sext. 10), *a life full and crowded with delights.*
*Forum Apell dieritum nautis* (Hor. Sat. i. 5), *Forum Apell crammed with bargemen.*

Remark. — These verbs and adjectives take the genitive in the poets by a Greek idiom: as,

terra scatet serarum (Lucr. v. 41), *the land abounds in wild creatures.*
explere ultrices flammeae (AEn. ii. 586), *fill with avenging flame.*
*Compleo, impleo, and plenus*, often take the genitive in prose.

d. The deponents utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescoor, with several of their compounds, govern the ablative: as,

*utar vestrâ benignitate* (Cic.), *I will avail myself of your kindness.*
Numidâ plerumque lacte et serina carne vescebantur (Jug. 88),
*the Numidians fed mostly on milk and game.*

*Potior* also takes the genitive, as always in the phrase *potiri rerum, to get the power.* In early Latin, the accusative is sometimes found with these verbs.

e. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison, to denote the *degree of difference*: as,

duoibus millibus plures, *more numerous by 2000.*
quinque millibus passuum distat (Liv.), *it is five milse distant.*

Remark. — This use is especially frequent with the ablatives *eo . . . quo; quanto . . . tanto* (see § 22, c): as,

*quo minus cupiditatis eo plus auctoritatis* (Liv. xxiv. 28), *the less greed the more weight.*
7. Ablative of Quality. The ablative is used, with an adjective or limiting genitive, to denote manner and quality: as, animo meliore, of better mind. more hominum, after the manner of men. non quærro quantà memorìa fuisse dicatur (Tusc. i. 24), I do not ask how great a memory he is said to have had.

a. The ablative of description (with adjectives) is always used to denote physical characteristics (other qualities may be in the genitive, § 50, 1, g): as, vultu sereno, of calm face. capillo sunt promisso (B. G. v. 14), they have long hanging locks.

b. The ablative of manner more commonly takes cum, unless it has a modifying adjective: as, minus cum curâ (Plaut.), less carefully. hoc onus feram studio et industriâ (Rosc. Am. 4), I will bear this burden with pains and diligence.

But words of manner, modo, ratione, via, &c.—with such expressions as silentio, in silence, injuriâ, wrongfully—hardly ever have cum. Verbs of exchanging may take cum.

8. Ablative of Price. The price of a thing (or that which is given in exchange) is put in the ablative: as, agrum vendidit sestertium sex milibus, he sold the field for 6000 sestertius. exsilio patria sede mutavit (Q. C. iii. 8), he exchanged his native land for exile.

a. Certain genitives of Quantity are used to denote indefinite value. Such genitives are magni, parvi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris: as, est mihi tanti (Cat. ii. 7), it is worth my while. meâ magni interest, it is of great consequence to me.

Remark. — With verbs of buying and selling, the ablative of price (magnus, &c.) must be used, except the following genitives: tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris.

b. The genitive of certain nouns is used in the same way: as, non floci faciunt (Pl. Trin.), they care not a straw.

The genitives so used are nihil, nothing; assis, a farthing; floci, a lock of wool, and a few others (see § 50, 1, i).

[For the Ablative of Penalty, see § 50, 4, b, Rem.]
9. Ablative of Specification. The ablative denotes that in respect to which anything is said to be or be done, or in accordance with which anything happens: as,

virtute precedent (B. G. i. 1), they excel in courage.
incluta bello mœnia (Æn. ii. 24), walls famous in war.
claudus altero pede (Nep. Ages.), lame of one foot.
linguâ hæsitantes, voce absoni (DeOr. i.), hesitating in speech, harsh in voice.
tanta caritas patriæ est, ut eam non sensu nostro sed salute ipsius metiamur (Tusc. i. 37), such is our love of country, that we measure it not by our own feeling, but by her own welfare.

10. Locative Ablative. The ablative of the place where is retained in many idiomatic expressions: as,

jure peritus, skilled in law [compare Sanskrit usages].
pendemus animis (Tusc. i. 40), we are in suspense of mind.
socius periculis vobiscum adero (Jug. 85), I will be present with you a companion in dangers.
premit altum corde dolorem (Æn. i. 209), he keeps down the pain deep in his heart.
consertâ légione (B. G. iv. 33), as they were in close order.
pedibus præliantur (id. 34), they fight on foot.
quibus rebus (id. 35), under these circumstances.

a. The verbs acquiesco, delector, laetor, gaudeo, glorior, nitor, sto. maneo, fido (confido), consisto, contineor, — with the verbals fretus, contentus, laetus,—are followed by the ablative (for facio, fio, see 2, d): as,

spe niti (Att. iii. 9), to rely on hope.
prudentiâ fidens (Off. i. 33), trusting in prudence.
lætari bonis rebus (Læl. 13), to rejoice in good things.

Remark. — The above verbs also take the preposition in.

b. Ablative Absolute. A noun or pronoun, with a participle, is put in the ablative, to define the time or circumstances of an action (compare § 72). An adjective, or another noun, may take the place of the participle.

vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus (B. G. iv. 20), having called to him the traders from all quarters.
exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ (id.), when but a small part of the summer was left.
M. Messalâ et M. Pisonem consulibus (id. i. 2), in the consulship of Messala and Piso.

Note. — In this use the noun is equivalent to the Subject, and the participle to the Predicate, of a subordinate clause; and so they should
generally be translated. But, as the copula esse has no participle in Latin, a noun or adjective is often found alone as predicate, while the participle is found, in this construction, in Sanskrit and Greek. The noun originally denotes *circumstance*, considered as *place or time* (locative); then, being modified by a participle, it becomes fused with it into a single idea, equivalent to that contained in a subordinate clause (compare *ab urbe condita*, lit. *from the city built*).

c. Sometimes a participle or adjective (under the construction of the ablative absolute) is put in agreement with a phrase or clause, or is used adverbially: as,

incerto quid peterent, *since it was uncertain what they sought*.

auspicato (Tac. H. i. 84), *after taking the auspices* [the auspices having been taken].

consulto et cogitato (Off i. 8), *on purpose and with reflection* [the matter having been deliberated and thought on].

sereno (Liv. xxxi. 12), *under a clear sky*.

d. The ablative is often used to denote the *place where*, or the *time when* (see § 55, 1 ; 3, f).

[For the government of the Ablative by Prepositions, see § 56.]

55. **Time and Place.**

1. **Time.** Time *when* (or *within which*) is put in the Ablative; time *how long* in the Accusative: as,

constitutâ die, *on the set day*.

quotâ hora? *at what o'clock?*

tribus horis annis (Jug. 11), *within the last three years*.

dies continuos triginta, *for a month together*.

paucis post diebus (or paucos post dies), *after a few days*.

[Here *diebus* is the ablative of *difference* (§ 54, 6, e), and *post* an adverb (§ 56, 2, d).]

Note.—The ablative of time is *locative*; the accusative is the same as that of *extent of space* (see below, 3, d).

a. The use of a preposition gives greater precision and clearness: as,

in diebus proximis decem (Sall.), *within the next ten days*.

ludi per decem dies (Cat. iii. 8), *games lasting ten days*.

b. The ablative is rarely used to express duration of time: as,

milites quinque horis praedem sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), *the men had sustained the fight five hours*. [This use is locative.]
2. Space. Extent of space is put in the Accusative: as, fossas quindecim pedes latas (B. G. vii. 72), trenches 15 feet broad.

Note.—This accusative is the object through or over which the action takes place, and is kindred with the accusative of the end of motion.

a. Measure is often expressed as a quality by the Genitive (§ 50, 1, h): as,
vallo pedum duodecim (B. G. ii. 30), in a rampart of 12 feet [in height].

b. Distance is put in the Accusative (as extent of space), or Ablative (as degree of difference): as,
quinque dierum iter abest (Liv. xxx. 29), it is distant five days' march.
triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), thirty miles below that place.
tanto spatio secati (B. G. iv. 35), having followed over so much ground.

3. Place. To express relations of Place, prepositions are necessary, except with the names of Towns and small Islands; except also with domus, rus, and a few other words in special relations.

Note.—Originally these relations were expressed with all words by the cases alone,—the Accusative denoting the end of motion as in a certain sense the object of the action; and the Ablative (in its proper meaning of separation) denoting the place from which. For the place where there was a special case, the Locative, the form of which was partially retained and partially merged in the Ablative (see Note, p. 184). The Prepositions (originally Adverbs) were added to define more exactly the direction of the motion, and by long usage at length became necessary, except in the cases given above.

a. The name of the place from which is in the Ablative: as,
Româ profectus, having set out from Rome.
rure reversus, having returned from the country.

b. The name of the place to which is in the Accusative: as,
Romam redit, he returned to Rome.
rus ibo, I shall go into the country.

Remark.—The old construction is retained in the phrases exsequias ire, to attend a funeral; infittias ire, to make denial; pessum ire, to go to ruin; pessum dare, to undo; venum dare (vendere), to set to sale; venum ire, to be set to sale; foras, out of doors; and the Supine in um (see § 74, 1).
c. The name of the place *where* takes the Locative form, which in the first and second declensions singular is the same as the genitive; in the plural, and in the third declension, the same as the dative: as,

*Romae*, at *Rome*; *Corinthi*, at *Corinth*; *Lanuvii*, at *Lanuvium*; *Karthagini*, at *Carthage*; *Atheniis*, at *Athens*; *Curibus*, at *Cures*.

**Remark.** — In names of the third declension the ablative is often found, especially where the metre requires it in poetry: as,

*Tibure vel Gabiis* (Hor. Ep. ii. 2), at *Tibur* or *Gabii*.

d. The words *domi* (rarely *domui*), at *home*; *belli, militiae* (in contrast to *domi*), abroad in military service; *humi, on the ground*; *ruri, in the country*; *foris, out-of-doors*; *terrae marique, by land and sea*, are used like names of towns, without a preposition; also *heri, vesperi, infelici arbori* (Liv.).

e. A possessive, or *alienus*, may be used with *domus* in this construction; but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally used: as,

*domi sue* (Mil. 7), at *his own house*.

in *M. Laecae domum* (Cat. i. 4), to *Laeca’s house*.

f. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *place where*, in many general words — as *loco, parte* — regularly; frequently with nouns when qualified by adjectives (regularly where *totus* is used); and in poetry in any case: as,

*quibus loco positis* (De Or. iii. 38), *when these are put in their places*.

*qua parte victi erant* (Att. ix. 11), *on the side where they were beaten*.

*se oppido tenet* (id.), *keeps himself within the town*.

*media urbe* (Liv. i. 33), *in the midst of the city*.

*totae Siciliae* (Verr. iv. 23), *throughout Sicily*.

*litore curvo* (Æn. iii. 16), *on the bending shore*.

**Remark.** — To denote the neighborhood of a place (*to, from, in the neighborhood*), prepositions must be used.

4. The way *by which* is put in the Ablative (*of instrument*): as,

*via breviore equites præmisit* (Fam. x. 9), *I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road*.

*Ægeo mari trajecit* (Liv. xxxvii. 14), *he crossed by way of the Ægean sea*. 

7
56. Use of Prepositions.

1. Prepositions govern either the Accusative or Ablative.

a. The following govern the Accusative: — ad, adversus, adversum, ante, apud, circa, or circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus.

b. The following govern the Ablative: — a, ab, abs, absque, corum, cum, de, e, ex, prae, pro, sine, tenuas.

c. In and sub take the Accusative when they denote motion; when rest, the Ablative: as,

in continentem venit (Off. iii. 11), he came into the meeting.
dixit in continent (ib.), he said in the meeting.
sub jugum mittere (Cæs.), to send under the yoke.
sub monte consedit (id.), he halted below the hill.

Remark. — The verbs of placing, — such as pono and its compounds, (except impone), loco, statuo, &c., — though implying motion, take in Latin the construction of the place in which: as, qui in sede ac domo colonocavit (Parad. iii. 2), who put one into his place and home.

da. When it means concerning, super takes the Ablative; otherwise the Accusative (unless in poetry): as,

hac super re (Cic.), concerning this thing.
super culmina tecti (Virg.), above the house-top.

c. After subter, the Accusative is used, except sometimes in poetry: as,

subter togam (Liv.), under his mantle.
subter litore (Catull.), below the shore.

f. In Dates, the phrase ante diem (a. d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may be governed by a preposition: as, is dies erat a.d. quintum kalendas Aprilis (B. G. i. 6), that day was the 5th before the calends of April [March 28].
in a.d. v. kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 3), to the 5th day before the calends of November [Oct. 28].

xv. kal. Sextilis, the 5th day before the calends of August (July 18). [Full form, quinto decimo die aete.]

g. Tenus (which follows its noun) regularly takes the Ablative: as,

Tauro tenus (Dej. 13), as far as Taurus.
capulo tenus (Æn. v. 55), up to the hilt.
REMARK. — Tenus is found especially with the feminine of the adjective pronouns, in an adverbial sense: as, hacetenus, hitherto; quatenus, so far as, &c.

Sometimes it takes the Genitive: as, Corcyrae tenus (Liv. xxv. 24), as far as Corcyra.

2. Many words may be construed either as Prepositions or as Adverbs: thus —

a. The adverbs pridie, postridie, proptius, proxime, usque — also (less frequently) the adjectives propter and proximus — may be followed by the Accusative: as,

pridie Nonas Junias (Cic.), the day before the Nones of June (June 4).
postridie ludos (id.), the day after the games.

b. The adverbs palam, procul, simul, may take the Ablative: as,

palam populo (Liv.), in the presence of the people.

c. The adverb clam may take either case (dat. rare): as,

clam matrem suam (Plaut.), unbeknown to the mother.
clam mihi (id.), in secret from me.
clam vobis (Cas.), without your knowledge.

d. Prepositions often retain their original meaning as Adverbs. This is especially the case with ante and post, in relations of time; adversus, contra (on the other hand), circiter, prope, and, in general, those ending in á. Clam and versus are often excluded from the list of Prepositions.

[For the use of prepositions in Composition, see § 42, 3.]

3. Some prepositions or adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by quam,—several words, or even clauses, sometimes coming between: as,

neque ante dimitit eum quam fidem dedit (Liv. xxxix. 10), nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.
past diem tertium quam dixerat (Man. 16), the third day after he said it. [So octavo mense quam, Liv. xxi. 15.]

Such words are ante, prius, post, pridie, postridie.

4. The ablative, with a or ab, is regularly used after passive verbs to denote the Agent, if a person, or if spoken of as a person (§ 54, 4): as,

jussus a patre, hidden by his father.
REMARK. — The ablative of the agent (which requires the preposition) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which stands by itself: as,

occissus gladio, slain by a sword; but,
occissus ab hoste, slain by an enemy.

5. The following prepositions sometimes follow their noun: —
ad, citra, circa, contra, inter, penes, propter, ultra, tenus; e, de, juxta.

[For the so-called Dative of the Agent, with the Gerundive, see §§ 51, 4, a. For prepositions connecting Nouns, see § 50, 3, r.]

III. Syntax of the Verb.

57. Use of Moods.

(See § 24.)

The Moods of a Latin Verb are the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

Note. — The Infinitive is not strictly a mood, being only the oblique case of a noun; but it is most conveniently treated along with the moods.

1. Indicative. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions; and is used when no special construction requires one of the others.

2. Subjunctive. The Subjunctive is used in special constructions, both in dependent and independent clauses, viz.: —

a. Independent Clauses. 1. In independent clauses, the subjunctive is used to denote an Exhortation or Command (hortatory subjunctive); a Wish (optative subjunctive); a Concession (concessive subjunctive); or a Doubtful Question (dubitative subjunctive).

2. It is also used to denote the conclusion of a Conditional sentence (apodosis), which is, grammatically, an independent clause, though logically depending on a condition expressed or implied (see §§ 59, 60).

b. Dependent Clauses. In dependent clauses, the subjunctive is used to denote a Purpose (§ 64), or a Result (§ 65). It
is used, idiomatically, in Temporal Clauses (§ 62), in Indirect Discourse (§ 67), in Indirect Questions (id.), and in Intermediate Clauses (§ 66); also in Conditions future or contrary to fact.

[For Subjunctive after Particles of Comparison, see § 61.]

[For the so-called Subjunctive of Cause, see § 63.]

Note.—The Present Subjunctive contains two distinct forms,—
the Subjunctive and Optative of the “Indo-European” tongue. Both
these forms had originally a future meaning; and from these future
meanings all the uses of this mood in Latin are developed. The
subjunctive proper was originally a Present, denoting continued action,
which became Future in sense (compare conative present and present
for future, § 58, 2, b); and afterwards, in many uses, imperative (com-
pare future for imperative). The optative contains, in composition,
a past tense of the root i (whence eo, eio, go); so that it had a futurum
in praeterito meaning, which developed into a conditional future, and into
an expression of wish and command; and, in Latin, lost its connection
with past time.

The other tenses of the Subjunctive are compounds formed (in
Latin alone) to remedy the confusion of optative and subjunctive.
The Subjunctive has, therefore, the uses of both the optative and
subjunctive of the cognate languages.

8. Hortatory Subjunctive. The subjunctive is used
in the Present,—less commonly in the Perfect,—to express
a command or exhortation: as,

hos latrones interficiamus (B. G. vii. 38), let us kill these
robbers.
aut bibat aut abeat (Tusc. v. 41), let him quaff or quit.
caveant intertemperantiam, meminerint verecundiae (Off. i. 34),
let them shun excess and cherish modesty.
Epicurus hoc viderit (Acad. ii. 7), let Epicurus look to this.
his quoque de rebus paucia dicantur (Off. i. 35), of this, too, let
a few words be said.

Note.—The Perfect represents an action as complete in the future;
but in most cases it can hardly be distinguished from the Present.

a. The Second Person is used only of an indefinite subject,
except in prohibition, in early Latin, and in poetry: as,
injurias fortunae, quas ferre nequeas, defugiendo relinquás
(Tusc. v. 41), the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear,
you will leave behind by flight.
nihil ignoveritis (Mur. 31), pardon nothing.
amicus populo Romano sis (Liv. xxvi. 50), be a friend to the
Roman people.
b. In prohibitions, the Perfect is more common than the Present: as,

hoc facito: hoc ne feceris (Div. ii. 61), thou shalt do this: thou
shall not do that.
nec mihi illud dixeris (Fin. i. 7), do not say that to me.
ne territus fueris (Tac. H. i. 16), be not terrified.

c. The hortatory subjunctive is used — sometimes with modo,
modo ne, tantum, tantum ne, or ne alone — to denote a pro-
viso (§ 61, 3): as,

valetudo modo bona sit (Brut. 16), if only the health be good.
ne illi sanguinem nostrum largiantur (Sall. Cat. 52), provided
they be not lavished of our blood.
modo ne sit ex pecudum genere (Off. i. 30), provided only he
be not of brutish stock.
tantummodo Gnæus noster ne Italian relinquat (Q. F. iii. 9),
if only Pompey will not forsake Italy.
manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria
(Cat. M. 7), old men retain their mind if they only retain their
seal and diligence.

d. The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunc-
tive denote an obligation in past time, — the latter more clearly
representing the time for the action as past: as,

moreretur, inquies (Rab. Post.), he should have died you will
say.
ne poposciisses (Att. ii. 1), you should not have asked.
potius diceret (Off. iii. 22), he should rather have said.
saltem aliquid de pondere detraxisset (Fin. iv. 20), at least he
should have taken something from the weight.

4. Optative Subjunctive. The subjunctive is used to
denote a Wish, — the Present, a wish conceived as possible;
the Imperfect, an unaccomplished one in the present; the
Pluperfect, one unaccomplished in the past: as,

ita vivam (Att. v. 15), so may I live [as true as I live].
ne vivam si scio (id. iv. 16), I wish I may not live if I know.
di te perduint (Deiot.), the gods confound thee!
valeant, valeant, cives mei; valeant. sint incolumes (Mil. 34),
farewell [he says], my fellow-citizens; may they be secure
from harm.

a. The Perfect in this use is antiquated: as,

male di tibi faxint (Plaut. Curc. 131), may the gods do thee a
mischief.
b. The particles uti (ut), utinam, O si, often precede the Subjunctive of wish: as,

falsus utinam vates sim (Liv. xxi.), I wish I may be a false prophet.

ut pereat positum rubiginem telum (Hor. Sat. ii. 1), may the unused weapon perish with rust.

utinam me mortuam vidisset (Q. Fr. i. 3), would you had seen me dead.

Note.—In this use, the particle has no effect on the grammatical construction, except that O si is probably a Protasis.

c. Velem with the present subjunctive, and vellem with the imperfect or pluperfect—with their compounds—(strictly, conditional sentences with the wish in a dependent clause) are often used instead of a proper optative subjunctive: as,

de Menedemo vellem verum fuisset, de reginâ velim verum sit (Att. iv. 16), about Mendemus I wish it had been true; about the queen I hope it may be.
nollem accidisset tempus (Fam. iii. 10), I wish the time never had come.

5. Concessive Subjunctive. The subjunctive is used to express a concession, either with or without ut, quamvis, quamlibet, and similar words.

Remark.—In this use, the Present refers to future or indefinite time; the Imperfect to present or past time,—the concession being impliedly untrue; the Perfect to past time or completed future time; the Pluperfect to completed action in past time (usually untrue): as,

nemo is unquam fuit: ne fuerit (Or. 29), there never was such a one you will say: granted.

quamvis comis in amicitias tuendis fuerit (Fin. ii. 25), amiable as he may have been in keeping his friendships.
sit Scipio clarus, ornetur Africanus, erit profecto aliquid loci nostrae gloriae (Cat. iv. 10). be Scipio glorious, and Africanus honored, yet surely there will be some room for our fame.
dixerit hoc idem Epicurus . . . non pugnem cum homine (Fin. v. 27), though Epicurus may have said the same, I would not contend with the man.

ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est (Tusc. ii. 5), granted that pain is not the greatest evil, at least it is an evil.
fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse cessit (Verr. i. 41), suppose he was [80] to others, when did he begin to be to you?
6. The Present, and rarely the Perfect Subjunctive, are used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or an impossibility of the thing being done (dubitative subjunctive): as,

sed quid faciamus (Att. viii. 23), but what can we do?
quid loquar plura (Pis. 32), why should I say more?
quid hoc homine faciatis (Verr. ii. 16), what are you to do with this fellow?
an ego exspectem dum tabellae diribeantur (Pis. 40), what, shall I wait till the ballots are counted?
quis enim celaverit ignem (Ov. Her. xv. 7), who could conceal the flame?

The Imperfect denotes the same idea in past time: as,
an ego non venirem (Phil. ii. 2), what, should I not have come?
quid diceremus (Att. vi. 3), what was I to say?

7. Imperative. The Imperative is used in Commands; also, by early writers and poets, in Prohibitions: as,

consulte vobis, prospicite patriæ, conservate vos (Cat. iv. 2),
have care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.
mixt. nimium ne crede colori (Ecl. ii. 17), trust not complexion over-ad me fac venias (Fam. xiv. 4), do come to me.

a. Prohibitions are regularly (in classical Latin) expressed by
ne with the second person singular of the Perfect Subjunctive; by
noli with the Infinitive; or by cave (colloquially fac ne) with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive: as,

ne territus fueris (Tac. H. i. 16), be not frightened.
noli putare (Brut. 33), do not suppose.
cave faxis (Ter. Heaut. 18.), do not do it.
fac ne quid aliud cures (Fam. xvi. 11), pray attend to nothing else.

b. In early Latin, in poetry, and in general prohibitions, the Present Subjunctive is also used: as,

Albi ne doleas (Hor. Od. i. 33), grieve not, Albius.
denique isto bona utare dum adsit: cum absit ne requiras (Cat. M 10), in short, use this good while present; when wanting, do not regret it.

Remark.—The third person of the Imperative is antiquated or poetic.

ollis salus populi suprema lex esto (id.), the safety of the people shall be their first law.
justa imperia sunto, iisque cives modeste parento (Leg. iii. 3), let the commands be just, and let the citizens strictly obey them.
c. The Future Imperative is used where there is a distinct reference to the future time: viz.

1. In connection with a future or future-perfect;
2. With adverbs or other expressions of time;
3. In general directions, as Precepts, Statutes, Edicts, and Wills: as,

cum valetudini consulueris, tum consulito navigationi (Fam. xvi. 4), when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing.
rei suæ ergo ne quis legatus esto (Leg.), no one shall be ambassador in his own affair.

REMARK. — The future form of the imperative is regularly used of scio, memini, and habeo (in the sense of consider): as,

filiolo me auctum scito (Att. i. 2), learn that I am blessed with a little boy.
sic habeto, mi Tiro (Fam. xvi. 4), so understand it, my good Tiro.
de pallâ memento, amabo (Pl. Asin.), pray, dear, remember the gown.

d. The Future is sometimes used for the imperative; and quin (why not?) with the present indicative may have the force of an imperative: as,

si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam (Fam. xiv. 8), you will let me know if anything new happens.
quin accipis? (Ter. Heaut. iv. 7), here, take it.

S. Infinitive. The Infinitive denotes the action of the verb as an abstract noun, differing, however, from other abstract nouns in the following points: — (1) It admits, in many cases, of the distinction of tense; (2) It is modified by adverbs and not by adjectives; (3) It governs the case of its verb; (4) It is only used in special constructions.

NOTE. — The Infinitive is properly the Dative case of an abstract noun, denoting Purpose, which has developed in Latin, in many cases, into a substitute for a finite verb. Hence the variety of its use. It’s Subject is, strictly, the Object of some other verb, which has become attached to it: as, jubeo te valere, lit., I command you for being well (i.e. that you may be well); just as, in Purpose-clauses, the purpose becomes the object of command (compare Purpose Clauses, § 64).

a. Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the Subject of a verb (or in predicate apposition), and, rarely, as the Object: as,
nihil est aliud [hominem] bene et beate vivere, nisi honeste et recte vivere (Parad. i. 6), to live well and happily, is nothing else than to live honorably and rightly.

invidere non cadit in sapientem (Tusc. iii. 10), envy does not belong to a wise man.

est humanitatis vestrae . . . prohibere (Man. 7), it is for your humanity to hold safe, &c.

nam istuc ipsum non esse cum fueris miserrimum puto (Tusc. i. 6), for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been.

In this use, the infinitive is found chiefly with esse and impersonal verbs, — rarely with others.

b. The infinitive is used with many Impersonal verbs and expressions, partly as subject and partly as complement (see Note below): as,

te abundare oportet præceptis (Off. i. 1), you must abound in maxims.
id primum in poetis cerni licet (De Or. iii. 7), this may be seen first in poets.
reperiebat quid dici opus esset (Brut. 59), he found what needed to be said.
hæc præscripta servatem licet magnifice vivere (Off. i. 26), one who observes these precepts may live nobly.
proponis quam sit turpe me adesse (Att. ix. 2), you make it clear how base it is for me to be present.

c. Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive, without a subject, is used with verbs which require another action of the same subject to complete their meaning. Such are verbs denoting to be able, dare, undertake, remember, forget, be accustomed, begin, continue, cease, hesitate, learn, know how, fear, and the like: as,

hoc quæo dicere (Cat. M. 10), this I can say.
mitto quærere (Rosc. Am.), I omit to ask. [own presence.
væror eundem praesentem (N. D. i. 21), I fear to praise in one's or us ut matures venire (Att. iv. 1), pray make haste to come.

Note.—The mark of this construction is that no Subject of these infinitives is admissible or conceivable; though the same verbs, in other senses, may take an infinitive with a subject.

d. The infinitive is used optionally with many verbs which also take a subjunctive clause (§ 70): such are those signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like. The subject is usually, though not always, omitted, when it is the same as that of the principal verb: as,

quos tueri debent deserunt (Off. i. 9), they forsake those whom they should protect.
Atticos volo imitari (Brut. 82), I wish to imitate the Attics.
student excellere (Off. i. 32), they aim to excel.

istum exheredare in animo habebat (Rosc. Am. 18), he had it in mind to deprive him of the inheritance.
cupio me esse clementem [= cupio esse clemens] (Cat. i. 2), I desire to be merciful.

Some of these verbs—jubeo and veto regularly—may take the infinitive with another subject: as,
signa inferri jubet (Liv. xiii. 59), he orders the standards to be borne forward.

Notes.—This construction, though in many cases different from the two preceding, shades off imperceptibly into them. In none of the uses is the infinitive strictly Subject or Object; but its meaning is developed from the original one of purpose. Hence the distinction between the uses is not always clearly marked.

e. With Subject Accusative. The infinitive, with subject accusative, is regularly used after words of knowing, thinking, telling, and the like (verba sentiendi et declarandi, § 67, 1):

   dicet montem ab hostibus teneri (B. G. i. 22), he says that the hill is held by the enemy.

Note.—The Infinitive may thus represent, in indirect discourse, a finite verb in direct discourse, admitting all the variations of the verb except number and person (see § 67).

Remark.—1. With verbs which govern the dative, the subject of the action may be in the dative. With licet regularly, and with others rarely, the predicate may also be in the dative: as,
nemini certare cum eo necesse fuit (Liv. xxi. 11), there was need for none to strive with him.
non libet mihi deplorare vitam (Cat. M. 23), I have no desire to bewail life.
mihi negligenti esse non licet (Att. i. 17), I must not be negligent.
on est stantibus omnibus necesse dicere (Marc. 11), it is not necessary for all to speak standing.
expedit bonas esse vobis (Ter. Heaut. ii. 4), it is for your interest to be good.

So with the dativus commodi: as,
quid est tam secundum naturam quam senibus emori (Cat. M. 19), what is so according to nature as for old men to die?

2. When the subject of the infinitive is not expressed, a predicate (except after impersonals) takes the case of the main subject:
si esset in iis fides in quibus summa esse debebat (Fam. i. 1), if there were faith in those in whom it ought to be greatest.

So, by a Greek idiom, even in Indirect Discourse: as,
vir bonus et sapiens ait esse paratus (Hor. Ep. i. 7), a good and wise man says he is prepared, &c.
sensit medios delapsus in hostes (Æn. ii. 377), he found himself fallen amongst the foe.

f. In a few cases, the infinitive retains its original meaning of purpose: viz.

1. With habeo, do, ministro, in isolated passages: as, tantum habeo polliceri (Fam. i. 5), so much I have to promise.

2. After the adjectives paratus, suetus, and their compounds, id quod parati sunt facere (Quin. 2), which they are ready to do.

3. In poetry and later writers with any verb or adjective: as, durus componere versus (Hor. Sat. i. 4), harsh in composing furit te reperire (Hor. Od. i. 15), he rages to find thee. [verse. cantari dignus (Ecl. v. 54), worthy to be sung.]

Remark. — Rarely, in poetry, the infinitive is used to denote result.

g. The infinitive, with subject-accusative, may be used in Exclamations (compare § 52, 4): as,

mene incepto desistere victam (Æn. i. 37), what! I desist beaten from my purpose?
te in tantas ærumnas propter me incidisse (Fam. xiv. 1), alas! that you should fall into such grief for me.

Note. — This construction is elliptical: that is, the thought is quoted in Indirect Discourse, though no verb of Saying, &c., appears, or perhaps is thought of (compare the French dire que).

h. Historical Infinitive. The Infinitive is often used for the tenses of the Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the nominative: as,

tum Catilina polliceri novas tabulas (Sall. Cat. 21), then Catiline promised abolition of debts [clean ledgers].

ego instare ut mihi responderet (Verr. ii. 77), I pressed him to answer.

This usage is most frequent where many verbs are crowded together in rapid narrative: as,

pars cedere, alli insequi; neque signa neque ordines servare; ubi quemque periculum ceparet, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes atque cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere (Jug. 51), a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook, there each would stand and fight; weapons, missiles, horses, men, foe and friend, were mixed; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.
58. Use of Tenses.

The Tenses are the Present, Imperfect, Future (of incomplete action), and the Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect (of completed action).

1. Tenses of the Indicative. The tenses of the Indicative denote absolute time; that is, present, past, or future, in reference to the Speaker.

2. Present. The Present denotes an action or state, as now existing, as incomplete, or as indefinite without reference to time: as,

agitur salus sociorum (Manil. 2), the safety of our allies is at stake.
Senatus haec intellegit, consul videt, hic tamen vivit (Cat. i. 1), the Senate knows this, the consul sees, yet this man lives.
nihil est victoriā dulcius (Verr. vi. 26), nothing is sweeter than victory.
tu actionem instituis, ille aciem instruit (Mur. 9), you arrange a case, he arrays an army.

a. The present, with expressions of duration of time, denotes an action begun in the past but continuing in the present: as,
patimur jam multos annos (Verr. vi. 48), we suffer now these many years.
anni sunt octo cum ista causa versatur (Clu. 30), it is now eight years that this case has been in hand.

b. Conative Present. The present sometimes denotes an action not completed at all, but only attempted: as,
Quintus frater Tusculanum venditât (Att. i. 14), my brother Quintus is trying to sell the place at Tusculum.

(So the present Infinitive and Participle.)

c. The present, especially in colloquial language, is sometimes used for the future: as,
imusne sessum (De Or. iii. 5), shall we take a seat?
cequid me adjuvas? (Clu. 26), won't you give me a little help?
in jus voco tē. non eo. non es? (Pl. As. 480), I summon you to the court. I won't go. You won't?
si reus condemnatur, desinent homines dicere his judicis pecuniām plurimum posse (Verr. i. 2), if the prisoner is convicted, men will no longer say that money is the chief power in the courts.

(See also under cum, antequam, dum § 62.)
d. Historical Present. The present in lively narrative is often used for the historical perfect: as,

affertur nuntius Syracusas; curritur ad prætorium; Cleomenes, quamquam nox erat, tamen in publico esse non audet; includit se domi (Verr. vi. 35), the news is brought to Syracusa; they run to head-quarters; Cleomenes, though it was night, does not venture to be abroad; he shuts himself up at home.

e. The present is regularly used with dum, while, though referring to past time: as,

hæc dum aguntur, interea Cleomenes jam ad Elori litus pervenerat (id.), while this is going on, Cleomenes meanwhile had come down to the coast at Elorum.

But when the time referred to is contrasted with some other, the past tenses must be used: as,

nec enim dum eram vobiscum animum meum videbatis (Cat. M. 22), for even when I was with you, you did not see my soul.

f. The present is regularly used of writers whose works are extant: as,

Epicurus vero ea dicit (Tusc. ii. 7), but Epicurus says such things.
apud illum Ulysses lamentatur in vulnere (id. 21), in him [Sophocles] Ulysses bewails over his wound.

3. Imperfect. The Imperfect denotes an action or condition continued or repeated in past time: as,

hunc audiebant antea (Man. 5), they used to hear him before.
Socrates ita censebat itaque disserruit (Tusc. i. 30), Socrates thought so [habitually] and so he spoke [then].
C. Duiliunm redeuntém a cenâ senem sæpe videbam (C. M. 13),
I would often see Duilius, then old, coming home from dinner.

a. Hence the imperfect is used in descriptions: as,
erant omnino itinera duo . . . mons altissimus impendebat (B. G. i 6), there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung.

b. The imperfect is sometimes used in the sense of a pluperfect and imperfect combined (see above, 2, a): as,
copias quas diu comparabant (Fam. i. 13), the forces which they had long been getting ready.

c. The imperfect sometimes denotes an action merely attempted, but never accomplished (compare conative present, 2, b): as,
in exsilium eiciebam quem jam ingressum esse in bellum videbam (Cat. ii. 6), \textit{was I sending into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?}

consules sedabant tumultus (Liv. iii. 15), \textit{the consuls busied themselves to calm the tumult.}

si lictum esset veniebant (Verr. vi. 49), \textit{they were coming if it had been allowed.}

\textbf{d.} The imperfect is sometimes used to express a certain surprise at the \textit{present} discovery of a fact already existing: as,

O tu quoque hic aderas, Phormio (Ter. Ph. v. 6), \textit{O, you are here too, Phormio.}

ehem pater mi, tu hic eras? (Pl. id. v. 7), \textit{what, you here, father?}

ah miser! quantâ laborabas Charybdi (Hor. Od. i. 27), \textit{unhappy boy, what a whirlpool you are struggling in} [and I never knew it].

\textbf{e.} The imperfect is often used in narration by the comic poets, where later writers would employ the perfect: as,

ad amicum Calliclem quoi rem aibat mandâsse hic suam (Trin. 956), \textit{to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property.}

præsagibat animus frustra me ire quom exibam domo (Aul. 222), \textit{my mind mistrusted when I went from home that I went in vain.}

\textbf{f.} The imperfect ind. in Apodosis, \textit{contrary to fact}, regularly refers to present time (see § 59, 3, d).

4. \textbf{Future.} The Future denotes an action or condition that will occur hereafter.

[For Future instead of the Imperative, see § 57, 7, d.]

5. \textbf{Perfect.} The Perfect \textit{definite} denotes an action as now completed; the Perfect \textit{historical}, as having taken place indefinitely, in past time: as,

ut ego feci, qui Græcas litteras senex didici (C. M. 8), \textit{as I have done, who have learned Greek in my old age.}

tantum bellum extremâ hieme apparavit, \textit{ineunte vere suscepit, mediae aestate confecit} (Man. 12), \textit{so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.}

[For the difference between the Perfect and Imperfect in \textit{narration}, see Note, page 53.]
a. The perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that something no longer exists: as,

fuit ista quondam in hac re publicâ virtus (Cat. i. 1), there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.

fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium (Æn. ii. 325), we were Trojans, Ilium did exist.

habuit, non habet (Tusc. i. 36), he had, he has no longer.

b. The perfect is sometimes used of indefinite time in connection with a general present: as,

qui in compedibus corporis semper fuerunt, etiam cum soluti sunt tardius ingrediuntur (Tusc. i. 31), they who have always been in fetters of the body, even when released move more slowly.

c. The perfect is sometimes used of a general truth, especially with negations: as,

qui studet contingere metam multa tulit fecitque (Hor. A. P. 412), he who aims to reach the goal, first bears and does many things.

non æris acervus et auri deduxit corpore febres (id. Ep. i. 2), the pile of brass and gold removes not the fever from the frame.

d. The perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a negation, where in affirmation the imperfect would be preferred: as,

dicebat melius quam scripsit Hortensius (Or. 38), Hortensius spoke better than he wrote. [Here the negative is implied in the comparison: compare the use of quisquam, ullus, &c. (foot of p. 48), and the French ne after comparatives and superlatives.]

[For Perfect in apodosis of future conditions, see § 59, 4, e; for Perfect after ubi, &c., § 62, 2, a.]

Remark.—The Perfect and Pluperfect of a few verbs are equivalent to the Present and Imperfect of kindred verbs: novi, I know; odi (osus), I hate; memini, I remember; cognoveram, I knew; venerat (= aderat), he was at hand (see § 36, 1): as,

qui dies æstus maximos efficere consuevit (B. G. iv. 29), which day generally makes the highest tides.

cujus splendor obsolevit (Quinc. v. 18), whose splendor is now out of date.

6. Pluperfect. The Pluperfect is used to denote an action completed in time past; sometimes, also, repeated in indefinite time: as,
neque vero cum aliquid mandaverat consectum putabant (Cat. iii. 7), for when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as already done.

quae si quando adepta est id quod ei fuerat concupitum, tum fert alacritatem (Tusc. iv. 15), if it [desire] ever has gained what it had desired, then it produces joy.

7. Future Perfect. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future: as,

ut sementem feceris ita metes (Or. ii. 65), as you sow, so shall you reap.

Remark.—The Future Perfect is used (as above) with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, and may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Latins for representing an action as completed: as,

quid inventum sit paulo post videro (Acad. ii. 24), what has been found out I will see presently.

ego certe meum officium præstitero (B. G. iv. 25), I at least shall have done my duty.

8. Epistolary Tenses. In Letters, the perfect (historical) or imperfect may be used for the present, and the pluperfect for past tenses, as if the letter were dated at the time it is supposed to be received: as,

neque tamen, cum hæc scriebam, eram nescius quantis oneri—

bus premerere (Fam. v. 12), nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens you are weighed down.

ad tuas omnes [epistulas] rescriptor am pridie (Att. ix. 10), I [have] answered all your letters yesterday.

9. Tenses of the Subjunctive. The tenses of the Subjunctive denote Absolute time only in independent clauses. In these the Present always refers to future time; the Imperfect to either past or present; the Perfect to either future or past; the Pluperfect always to past.

In dependent clauses, the tenses of the Subjunctive denote Relative time, not with reference to the speaker, but to the action of some other verb.

10. Sequence of Tenses. The forms which denote absolute time may be used in any connection. But those denoting relative time follow special rules for the Sequence of Tenses. For this purpose, tenses are divided into two classes: viz.,
1. Primary, including the Present, both Futures, and Perfect (definite);

2. Secondary, including the Imperfect, Perfect (historical), and Pluperfect.

Rule. — In compound sentences, a Primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a Primary tense in the dependent clause; and a Secondary tense is followed by a Secondary: as,

scribit ut nos moneat, he writes to warn us.
scribet ut nos moneat, he will write to warn us.
scripsit ut nos moneat, he has written to warn us.
scribe scribito ut nos moneas, write that you may warn us.
scripsit ut nos moneret, he wrote to warn us.
scribit quasi oblitus sit, he writes as if he had forgotten.
scripsit quasi oblitus esset, he wrote as if he had forgotten.

Remark. — The Rule appears in the following Diagram:

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Action not complete (time relatively present or future).
   \[
   \begin{array}{c|c|c}
   \text{Primary.} & \text{Secondary.} \\
   \text{PRESENT.} & \text{IMPERFECT.} \\
   \{ & \\
   \text{PERFECT.} & \text{PLUPERFECT.} \\
   \text{past}. & \\
   \end{array}
   \]

In applying the rule for the Sequence of Tenses, consider (1) whether the leading verb is primary or secondary; (2) whether the dependent verb is required to denote complete action (i.e. relatively past), or incomplete (relatively present or future). By taking the corresponding tense, as given above, the correct usage will generally be found.

Notice that the Future Perfect denotes relatively completed action, and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect.

a. The perfect definite is properly a primary tense; but as its action is (at least) commenced in past time, it is more commonly followed by secondary tenses: as,

ut satis esset presidi provisum est (Cat. ii. 12), provision has been made that there should be ample guard.
adduxi hominem in quo satisfacere exteris nationibus possedis (Verr. i. 1), I have brought a man in whose person you can make satisfaction to foreign nations.

b. The perfect subjunctive is regularly used to denote any past action (either as Perfect definite or historical) depending on a verb in a primary tense: as,
ex epistulis intellegi licet quam frequens fuerit Platonis auditor (Or. 4), it may be understood from his letters how constant a hearer he was of Plato.

c. In clauses of Result, the perfect subjunctive is very often (the present rarely) used after secondary tenses: as,

Hortensius ardebat dicendi cupiditate sic ut in nullo unquam fragrantius studium viderim (Brut. 88), Hortensius was so hot with desire of speaking that I never saw a more burning ardor in any man.

Siciliam Verres per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit (Verr. i. 4), for three years [Verres] so racked and ruined Sicily, that she can in no way be restored to her former state.

REMARK. — This construction gives more emphasis to the fact stated as a result; while the regular one gives more prominence to the main clause. The perfect, thus used, can stand only for a perfect indicative, not an imperfect; and, in general, the perfect is often represented by the perfect subjunctive, contrary to the general rule: as,

Thorius erat ita non supersticiosus ut illa plurima in suâ patriâ et sacrificia et fana contemneret; ita non timidus ad mortem ut in acie sit ob rem publicam interfectus (Fin. ii. 20), Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised [contemnebat] the many sacrifices and shrines in his country, so little timorous about death that he was killed [interfectus est] in battle, in defence of the state.

Zeno nullo modo is erat qui nervos virtutis inciderit [compare 5, d.]; sed contra qui omnia in unâ virtute ponerat (Acad. i. 10), Zeno was noway one to cut the sinews of virtue; but one, on the contrary, who made everything depend on virtue alone.

da. A general truth after a past tense follows the connection of tenses in Latin (though not usually in English): as,

ex his quâ tribuisset sibi quam mutabilis esset reputabat (Q. C. iii. 9), from what she [Fortune] had bestowed on him, he reflected how inconstant she is.

ibi quantam vim ad stimulandos animos ira haberet, apparuit (Liv. xxxiii. 37), here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind.

e. The historical present, or the present with dum, may be followed by either primary or secondary tenses, but more commonly by secondary: as,

rogat ut curet quod dixisset (Quinct. 5), he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of.

castella communit quo facilius prohiberi possent (B. G. i. 8), he strengthens the forts that they might be more easily kept off.
When the secondary tenses of the subjunctive are used in
protasis and apodosis, they may stand after any tense: as,
quia tale sit, ut vel si ignorarent id homines, &c. (Fin. ii. 15),
because it is such that even if men were ignorant.

The imperfect subjunctive, in protasis or apodosis, even
when it refers to present time, is regularly followed by secondary
tenses: as,
si solos cos diceres miseros quibus moriendum esset, neminem
exciperes (Tusc. i. 5), if you called only those wretched who
must die, you would except no one.

After the present, when a past tense appears to be in the
writer’s thought, secondary tenses sometimes follow by a kind of
Synesis: as,

sed tamen ut scires hæc tibi scribo (Fam. xiii. 47), but yet that
you may know, I write thus [as if Epistolar Imperfect].
cujus praecipit tanta vis est ut ea non homini cuipiam sed
Delphico deo tribueretur (L.eg. i. 22), such is the force of this
precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Del-
phic god [the precept was an old one].

Infinitive. The tenses of the Infinitive are present,
past, or future, relatively to the time of the verb on which
they depend: as,
nostros non esse inferiores intellexit (B. G. ii. 8), he ascertained
that our men were not inferior.
quam Juno fertur terris magis omnibus coluisse (Æn. i. 15),
which Juno, ‘tis said, cherished above all lands.
sperant se maximum fructum esse capturos (Læl. 21), they hope
they shall receive the greatest advantage.

The present infinitive, after a verb in the past, must often
be rendered by the perfect infinitive in English: as,
scire potuit (Milo, 17), he might have known.
qui videbatur omnino mori non debuisse (Arch. 8), who seemed
[one that] ought not to have died at all.

RemarK.—This is most frequent with verbs of necessity, pro-
priety, and possibility (potui, debit, opportun).

The perfect infinitive represents, in indirect discourse (§ 67,
1), any past tense of a finite mood. But the imperfect is some-
times represented by the present infinitive,—regularly after
memini where the memory recalls the action, but not where it
recalls the mere fact (compare G. 203, N. 1): as,
quis potest credere senatum putasse (Mil. 5), who can believe
the Senate thought [dir. disc. putabat]?
memini Catonem mecum disserere (Læl. 3), I remember Cato’s
discoursing with me (So dicere aiebat, De Or. ii. 3).
meministis me ita distribuisse causam (Rosc. Am. 42), you
remember that I so laid out the case.
c. Except in Indirect Discourse the present infinitive only is generally used, with no distinct reference to time: as,

est adolescentis majores natu vereri (Off. i. 34), it is the duty of the young to reverence their elders.
de quibus dicere aggregiar (Off. ii. 1), of which I will undertake to speak.

d. After verbs of wishing, necessity, and the like, the perfect passive infinitive is often used instead of the present: as,

domesticâ curâ te levatum [esse] volo (Q. F. iii. 9), I wish you relieved of household care.
liberis consultum volumus propter ipsos (Fin. iii. 17), we wish regard paid to children on their own account.
quod jam pridem factum esse oportuit (Cat. i. 2), which ought to have been done long ago.

Remark.—In early Latin, and in poetry, the perfect active is also used, and even after other verbs than those of wishing: as,

commisisses cavet (Hor. A. P. 168), he is cautious of doing.
edixerunt ne quis quid fugœ causâ vendidisset neve emissæ vellet (Liv. xxxix. 17), they [the old laws] declared that none should sell or buy to escape obligation.
haud equidem promendo alium me extulisse velim (id. xxii. 59),
I would not by crushing another extort myself.
sunt qui nolint tetigisse (Hor. Sat. i. 2), there are those who would not touch.
nollem dixisse (Verr. v. 20), I would not say.

e. The perfect infinitive is used, especially by poets, to denote a completed action after verbs of feeling; also with satis est (habeo), melius est, contentus sum, and in a few other cases where this distinction is important: as,

quiësse erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), it will be better to have kept quiet.
non pænitebat intercapedinem scribendi fecisse (Fam. xvi. 21),
I was not sorry to have made a respite of writing.
pudet me . . . non præstitisse (id. xiv. 3), I am ashamed not to have shewn.
sunt quos curriculo pulvere Olympicum collegisse juvat (Hor. Od. i. 1), there are those who delight, &c.
majus deducens est parta amittere quam omnino non paravisse (Jug. 31), it is more discredit to have lost one’s gains than never to have gained at all.
nil ego si peccem possum nescisses (Ov. Her. xvii. 47), if I go wrong, I cannot have done it in ignorance.

f. The future infinitive is often expressed by fore or futurum esse ut (§ 70, 4): as,
spero fore ut contingat id nobis (Tusc. i.), I hope that will be our happy lot. [But, sperat se posse (Mil. 12).]
59. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

A Conditional Sentence (or Clause) is one beginning with *if*, or some equivalent.

1. Protasis and Apodosis. In a conditional sentence, the clause containing the *condition* is called the Protasis; and that containing the *conclusion* is called the Apodosis: as,

   *si qui exire volunt [PROTASIS], conivere possum [APODOSIS]*
   (Cat. ii. 12), *if any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.*

   *a. The Protasis* is regularly introduced by the conditional particles *al, if; sin, but if; nisi (ni), unless*. But a clause introduced by an Indefinite Relative (as *quisquis, whoever*), a Relative, or Concessive Conjunction (*cum, since, quamvis, although*), a Participle, or an Imperative, is treated as a conditional clause: as,

   *quecunque causa vos hoc attulisset, laetarer* (De Or. ii. 4),
   *I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here* (i.e. if any other, as well as the one which did).

   *philosophia, cui qui pareat, omne tempus ætatis sine molestia possit degere* (Cat. M. i), *philosophy, which if any one obeys, he will be able to spend his whole life without vexation.*

   *virtutem qui adeptus erit ubicumque erit gentium a nobis dilegitur* (N. D. i. 44), *if any one shall have attained virtue, &c.*

   *[For Implied Conditions, see § 60.]*

   **Note.** — The Indefinite Relative, *whoever, whatever, whenever,* may be regarded as a conditional expression, equivalent to *if any one, if at any time, &c., as is seen in the analogy of the Greek & *ἀν, διὰν,* and in the structure of relative as compared with conditional clauses. In the Statutes of Massachusetts, for instance, the phrase “Whoever shall” has been substituted for the old form “If any person shall,” &c.

   *b. The Apodosis*, being the main clause, depends in form on the grammatical structure of the sentence, which may require a Participle, Infinitive, or Phrase: as,

   *quod si præterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum solâ decimâ legione iterum* (B. G. i. 40), *but if no one else would follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.*

   *si quos adversum præcelium commoveret, hos reperire posse (id.), if the loss of a battle alarmed any. they might find.*

   *sepultur‍ā quoque prohibitur, ni rex humari jussisset* (Q. C. viii. 2), *intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.*
2. Particular and General Conditions. The supposition contained in a Protasis may be either particular or general.

a. A Particular supposition refers to a definite act (or a definite series of acts) occurring at some definite time: as,
   si hæc condicio consulatu data est . . . seram libenter (Cat. iv. 1), if this condition has been imposed on the consulship, I will bear it willingly.

b. A General supposition refers to any one of a class of acts, which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time: as,
   si vero habet aliquod tamquam pabulum studi atque doctrinæ, nihil est otiosâ senectute jucundius (Cat. M. 14), indeed, if it have some sustenance (as it were) of study and learning, nothing is more cheerful than an old age of leisure.

Note.—These two classes of conditions are distinguished logically; and in most languages are also distinguished grammatically,—but only as to Present and Past Conditions. In Latin, in particular conditions, present or past tenses of the Indicative are regularly used in Protasis, where no opinion is intimated of its truth or falsity; and the Apodosis may take any form of the verb which can be used in an independent sentence. In general conditions, also, referring to Present or Past time, the Indicative is for the most part used both in Protasis and Apodosis. (Compare Goodwin’s Greek Grammar, § 220.)

c. Classification. The principal forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows:—

1. Present or Past Conditions.

(a) Simple statement (nothing implied as to fulfilment):  
   { si adest bene est, if he is [now] here, it is well.  
     si aderat (adfuit) bene erat, if he was [then] here, it was well.

(b) Supposition contrary to fact (condition not fulfilled):  
   { si adesset bene esset, if he were [now] here, it would be well.  
     si adfuisset bene fuisset, if he had [then] been here, it would have been well.

2. Future Conditions.

(a) More vivid (probable):  
   { si aderit bene erit, if he is [shall be] here, it will be well.

(b) Less vivid (improbable):  
   { si adsit bene sit, if he should [hereafter] be here, it would be well.


(a) Indefinite subject:  
   { si hoc dicis bene est, if one says this, it is well.

(b) Repeated Action:  
   { si hoc diceret bene erat (rare), if [whenever] he said this, it was well.
3. Present and Past Conditions. A present or past condition may be simply stated, implying nothing as to its fulfilment; or it may be stated so as to imply that it is not or was not fulfilled.

a. In the statement of a condition whose falsity is not implied, the present and past tenses of the Indicative are used in Protasis; the apodosis expressing simply what is, was, or will be, the result of the fulfilment (G. 221): as,

si tu exercitusque valetis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), if you and the army are well, it is well.

si justitia vacat, in vitio est (Off. i. 19), if justice be wanting, it [bravery] is in fault.

si placet . . . videamus (Cat. M. 5), if you please, let us see.

fuerit hoc censoris, si judicabat (Div. i. 16), grant that it was the censor's duty if he judged, &c.

quicquid jurárun ventus et unda rapit (Prop. ii. 28), whatever they have sworn [i.e. if they have sworn anything], the winds and waves sweep away.

b. In the statement of a supposition known to be false, the Imperfect and Pluperfect subjunctive are used,—the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past (G. 222): as,

quae si exsequi nequierem, tamen me lectulus oblectaret meus (Cat. M. 11), if I could not [now] follow this [an active life], yet my couch would afford me pleasure.

nisi tu amisisse, nunquam recepissem (id. 4), unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it.

si meum consilium auctoritasque valuisse, tu hodie egeres, nos liberi essumus, república non tot duces et exercitus amississet (Phil. ii. 15), if my judgment and authority had prevailed [as they did not], you would this day be a beggar, we should be free, and the republic would not have lost so many leaders and armies.

Note. — The implication of falsity, in this construction, is not inherent in the Subjunctive; but comes from the transfer of a future condition to past time. Thus the time for the happening of the condition has, at the time of writing, already passed; so that, if the condition remains a condition, it must be contrary to fact. So forms implying a future frequently take the place of the subjunctive in apodosis in this construction (see e, below).

c. In many cases the imperfect refers to past time, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a repeated or continued action is denoted, or when the condition if true would still exist: as,

hic si mentis esset sua, ausus esset educere exercitum (Pis. 21), if he were of same mind would he have dared to lead out the army?
non concidissent, nisi illud receptaculum classibus nostris pateret (Verr. ii. 1), [the power of Carthage] would not have fallen, unless that station had been open to our fleets.

d. The past tenses of the indicative in Apodosis (after a subjunctive in Protasis) may be used to express what ought to have been done, or is intended, or is already begun (see § 60, 2, c): as, si Romæ privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen is erat deligendus (Manil. 17), if he [Pompey] were at this time a private citizen in Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.
quod esse caput debet, si probari posset (Fin. iv. 9), what ought to be the main point if it could be proved.
si licitum esset matres veniebant (Verr. vi. 49), the mothers were coming if it had been allowed.
in amplexus filiæ rubeat, nisi lictores obstitissent (Ann. xvi. 32), he was about rushing into his daughter’s arms, unless the lictors had opposed.

Remark.—In this use, the imperfect indicative corresponds in time to the imperfect subjunctive, and the perfect or pluperfect indicative to the pluperfect subjunctive (the tenses of the subjunctive may, however, be used as well; see Note, above): as, satius erat (esset), it were better.

e. This use is regular with all verbs and expressions denoting the necessity, propriety, desirableness, duty, possibility, of an action—including the two periphrastic conjugations (see page 83)—where it is implied that what was necessary, &c., has not been done. It is sometimes carried still further in poetry: as,

nam nos debeat lugere (Tusc. i. 47), it would befit us to mourn.
si non alium jactaret odorem, laurus erat (Georg. ii. 133), it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.

Note.—Observe that all these expressions contain the idea of Futurity. Compare note under b.

f. So the participle in urus with fui is equivalent to a pluperfect subjunctive. Hence, when the Apodosis is itself a dependent clause, requiring the subjunctive, a pluperfect subjunctive may be represented by the Future Participle with the subjunctive of esse (compare apodosis in Indirect Discourse, § 67, 1, c): as,

quid enim futurum fuit [=fuisset], si ... (Liv. ii. 1), what would have happened, if; &c.
neque ambigitur quin ... id facturus fuerit, si ... (ib.), and no doubt he would have done it, if; &c. [dir. disc. fecisset.]
ex quo intellegi potest quam acuti naturâ sint, qui haec sine doctrinâ credituri fuerint (Tusc. i. 21), hence it may be understood how keen they are by nature, who, without instruction, would have believed this. [Here the condition is contained in the words sine doctrinâ.]
adeo parata seditio fuit, ut Othonem rapturi fuerint, ni incerta noctis timuissent (Tac. H. i. 26), so far advanced was the conspiracy, that they would have seized upon Otho, had they not feared the hazards of the night [in the direct discourse, raptuissent ni timuissent].

4. Future Conditions. A Future condition may either make a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the result; or the supposition may be less distinct and vivid, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed.

a. If the condition is stated vividly, so as to be conceived as actually about to take place, the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis (G. 223): as,

sanabimur si voleremus (Tusc. iii. 6), we shall be healed if we wish.
quod si legere aut audire voletis ... reperietis (Cat. M. 6),
if you will read or hear, you will find.

b. The Present subjunctive expresses a future condition less vividly, or as less probable, than when the future indicative is used (G. 224): as,

hæc si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debet (Cat. i. 8), if thy country should thus speak with thee, ought she not to prevail?
quod si quis deus mihi largiatur ... valde recusem (Cat. M. 23),
but if some god were to grant me this, I should earnestly refuse.

Remark. — The present subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the future in apodosis.

c. If the conditional act is regarded as completed before that of the apodosis begins, the future perfect is substituted for the future, and the perfect subjunctive for the present: as,

sin, cum potuero, non venero, tum erit inimicus (Att. ix. 2),
but if I do not come when I can, he will be unfriendly.
si non feceris, ignoscam (Fam. v. 19), if you do not do it, I will excuse you.

Remark. — This is a very common construction in Latin, owing to the tendency of the language to represent an action as completed, rather than as in progress.

d. Any form denoting future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition (so the participles in dus and rus, and verbs of necessity, possibility, and the like): as,

non possum istum accusare si cupiam (Verr. v. 41), I cannot accuse him if I should desire.
 Conditional Sentences.

alius finis constituendus est si prius quid maxime reprehendere Scipio solitus sit dixerem (Lævi. 16), another limit must be set if I shall first state what Scipio was most wont to blame.

e. Rarely the perfect is used (rhetorically) in apodosis with a present or even future in protasis, representing the conclusion as already accomplished: as,

si hoc bene fixum in animo est, vicistis (Liv. xxi. 44), if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered.

si eundem [animum] habueritis, vicimus (id. 43), if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.

f. Frequently the present subjunctive of a future condition becomes imperfect by the sequence of tenses or some other cause (retaining the same force relatively to past time): as,

non poterat nisi vellet (B. C. iii. 44), was not able unless he wished.

Cæsar si peteret ... non quicquam proficeret (Hor. Sat. i. 2), if even Cæsar were to ask he would gain nothing. [Here the construction is not contrary to fact, but is simply si petat non proficiat, thrown into past time.]

tumulus apparuit ... si luce palam iretur hostis præventurus erat (Liv. xxii. 24), a hill appeared ... if they should go openly by light the enemy would prevent. [Independent of apparuit, this would be, si eatur, præventurus est, for præveniat.]

5. General Conditions. General conditions are distinguished in Latin in only two cases: viz.,

a. Indefinite Subject. The subjunctive is used in the second person singular, to denote the act of an indefinite subject (you = any one). Here the present Indicative of a general truth may stand in the apodosis (G. 225): as,

mens prope uti ferrum est: si exercas contentur; nisi exercæas, rubiginem contractur (Cato de Mor.). the mind is very like iron: if you use it, it wears away; if you don’t use it, it gathers rust.

virtutem necessario gloria, etiam si tu id non agas, consequitur (Tusc. i. 38), glory necessarily follows virtue, even if that is not one’s aim.

si prohibita impune transcenderis, neque metus ultra neque pudor est (Ann. iii. 54), if you once overstep the bounds with impunity, there is no fear nor shame any more.

si cederes placabilis (Tac. Ann.), [he was] easily appeased if one yielded.

b. Repeated Action. In later writers (not in Cicero), the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in protasis, with the
imperfect indicative in apodosis, to state a repeated or customary action: as,

accusatores, si facultas incideret, poenis adficiebantur (Ann. vi. 30), *the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.*

*quemcunque lictor prehendisset, tribunus mitti jubebat* (Liv. iii. 11), *whenever the lictor had seized, the tribune ordered to be let go.*

c. In all other cases, General Suppositions—including those introduced by Indefinite Relatives—take the indicative.

---

**60. IMPLIED CONDITIONS.**

In many sentences properly conditional, the subordinate member is not expressed as a conditional clause; but is stated in some other form of words, or is implied in the nature of the thought.

1. *Condition Disguised.* The condition is often contained in some other form of words than a regular Protasis, in the same clause or sentence.

a. The condition may be contained in a relative, participial, or other qualifying clause: as,

*facile me paterem—vel ipso quærenter, vel apud Cassianos judices—pro Sex. Roscio dicere (Rosc. Am. 30), I would readily allow myself to speak for Roscius, if he, &c.*

*non mihi, nisi admonito, venisset in mentem (De Or. ii. 42), it would not have come into my mind, unless [I had been] admonished [= nisi admonitus essem].*

*nulla alia gens tantâ mole cladiis non obruta esset (Liv. xxii. 54), there is no other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster [i.e. if it had been any other people].*

*nemo unquam, sine magnâ spe immortalitatis, se pro patriâ offerret ad mortem (Tusc. i. 15), no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose himself to death for his country. quid hunc paucorum annorum accessio juvare potuisset (Læl. 3), what good could the addition of a few years have done him? [if he had had them].*

b. The condition may be contained in a wish, or expressed as a command, by the imperative or hortatory subjunctive: as,

*utinam quidem fuissem! molestus nobis non esset (Fam. xii. 3), I wish I had been [chief]: he would not now be troubling us [i.e. if I had been].*
roges enim Aristonem, neget (Fin. iv. 25), for ask Aristo, and he would deny.
tolle hanc opinionem, luctum sustuleris (Tusc. i. 13), remove this notion, and you will have done away grief:
naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret (Hor. Ep. i. 10), drive out nature with a pitchfork, still she will ever return.
manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria (Cat. M. 7), old men keep their mental powers, only let them keep their zeal and diligence.

Note.—This usage is probably the origin of the use of the subjunctive in Protasis; the subjunctive being used first, as in § 57, 3, while the conditional particle is a form of an indefinite pronoun.

c. Rarely, the condition is stated in an independent clause: as, rides: majore cachinno concittur (Juv. iii. 100), you laugh: he shakes with louder laughter.
de paupertate agitur: multi patientes pauperes commemorantur (Tusc. iii. 24), we speak of poverty: many patient poor are mentioned.

2. Condition Omitted. The condition is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument.

Remark.—Under this head belong all the apparently independent uses of the subjunctive not mentioned in § 57, 2. In this use the perfect subjunctive is especially common, in the same sense as the present, referring to the immediate future; the imperfect to past time (not to present, as in § 57, 3).

a. Potential Subjunctive. The present and perfect subjunctive (often with forsitan or the like) are used to denote an action as possible; also, the second person singular of all the tenses, denoting an indefinite subject: as,
hic quaerat quispiam (N. D. ii. 53), here some one may ask.
ut aliquis fortasse dixerit (Off. iii. 6), as one may perhaps say.
forsitan hæc illi mirentur (Verr. v. 56), they may perchance marvel at these things.
tum in lecto quoque videres susurros (Hor. Sat. ii. 8), then on each couch you might see whisperings.

b. The subjunctivo is used in cautious, modest, or hypothetical statement (conjunctivus modestiae): as,
pace tua dixerim (Mil. 38), I would say by your leave.
haud sciam an (De Or. i. 60), I should incline to think.
tu velim sic existimes (Fam. xii. 6), I would like you to think so.
vellem adesset M. Antonius (Phil. i. 7), I wish Anthony were here [here vellem implies an impossible wish in present time].

hæc erant fere quæ tibi nota esse vellem (Fam. xii. 5), this is about what I want you to know [here vellem is simply velim transferred to past time on account of erat, by connection of tenses, and does not imply an impossible wish].
c. The Indicative of verbs signifying necessity, propriety, and the like, may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact: as,

longum est [sit] ea dicere, sed... (in Pison. 10), it would be tedious to tell, &c.
illud erat aptius, æquum cuique concedere (Fin. iv. 1), it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.
ipsum enim expectare magnum fuit (Phil. ii. 40), would it have been a great matter to wait for himself?
quanto melius fuerat (Off. iii. 25), how much better it would have been.

quod contra decuit ab illo meum [corpus cremari] (Cat. M. 23)
whereas on the other hand mine ought to have been burnt by him.
nam noædecebat domum lugere ubi esset aliquis in lucem editus
(Tusc. i. 48), for it were fitting to mourn the house where a man has been born [but we do not].
nunc est bibendum... nunc Saliiaribus ornare pulvinar deorum
tempus erat dapibus sodales (Hor. Od. i. 37), i.e. it would be time [if it were for us to do it, but it is a public act].

Remark. — Notice that, in this construction, the imperfect indicative refers to present time; the pluperfect to simply past time, like the perfect. Thus oportebat means it ought to be [now], but is not; oportuerat means it ought to have been, but was not.

d. The omission of the protasis often gives rise to mixed constructions: as,

peream male si non optimum erat (Hor. Sat. ii. 1), may I perish if it would not be better. [Here the protasis and apodosis come under § 59, 3, d. Optimum erat is itself an apodosis with the protasis omitted.]
quod si in hoc mundo fieri sine deo non potest, ne in sphæræ quidem eosdem motus Archimedes sine divino ingenio potuisset imitari (Tusc. i. 25). [Here the protasis of potuisset is in sine divino ingenio.]

61. Conditional Particles.

Certain Particles implying a Condition are followed by the Subjunctive, but upon several different principles.

1. Comparative Particles. The particles of comparison — tamquam, quasi, quam si, acsi, utsi, velutsi, veluti, and poetic cēu — introduce conditional clauses, of
which the conclusion is omitted or implied; and take the subjunctive.

Remark. — Contrary to the English idiom, the present and perfect subjunctive are regularly used with these particles, except where the connection of tenses requires secondary tenses: as,

tamquam clausa sit Asia (Fam. xii. 9), as if Asia was closed. tamquam si claudus sim (Plaut. Asin. 2), just as if I were lame. quasi vero non specie visa judicentur (Acad. ii. 18), as if forsooth visible things were not judged by their appearance. velut si coram adesset (B. G. i. 32), as if he were there present: similiter facis ac si me roges (N. S. iii. 3), you do exactly as if you asked me.
æque ac si mea negotia essent (Fam. xiii. 43), as much as if it were my own business. ceu cetera nusquam bella forent (Æn. ii. 438), as if there were no fighting elsewhere. magis quam si domi esses (Att. vi. 4), more than if you were at home. ac si ampullam perdidisset (Fin. iv. 12), as if he had lost the bottle.

2. Concessive Particles. The particles of concession — although, granting that — sometimes take the subjunctive, but under various constructions: viz.,

Quamvis and ut (except in later writers) take the hortatory subjunctive (§ 57, 3); licet is a verb, and is followed by an object-clause (§ 70, 3); et si has the same constructions as si (§ 59); cum has a special construction (§ 62, 1); quamquam takes the indicative (59, 3, a): as,

quamvis ipsi infantes sint, tamen ... (Or. 23), however incapable themselves of speaking, yet, &c.
uct neminem alium ... rogasset (Mil. 17), even if he had asked no other.
licet omnes in me terrores periculaque impendeant (Rosc. Am. 11), though all terrors and perils should menace me.
et si abest maturitas (Fam. vi. 18), though ripeness of age is wanting.
et si nihil aliud ab stumbling (Sull. 32), even if you had taken away nothing else.

3. A Proviso, introduced by modo, dum, dummodo, requires the Subjunctive: as,

valetudo modo bona sit (Brut. 16), provided the health is good.
modo ne sit ex pecudum genere (Off. i. 30), provided [in pleasure] he be not one of the herd of cattle.
oderint dum metuant (Off. i. 28), let them hate, if only they fear.
dum de patris morte quaeretur (Rosc. Am. 41), let the inquiry
only be of a father's death.
dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit (Cat. i. 5), provided
only the city wall is between us.

Note. — The Subjunctive with modo is a hortatory Subjunctive; with
dum and dummodo, a development from the Subjunctive in
temporal clauses.

4. The use of some of the more common Conditional
Particles may be stated as follows:—

a. Si is used for affirmative, nisi and si non for negative con-
ditions. With nisi, the negative belongs rather to the Apodosis,
—i.e. the conclusion is true except in the case supposed; with
si non, the Protasis is negative,—i.e. the conclusion is limited to
the case supposed. (The difference is often only one of emphasis.)
Nisi is never used if the clause has a concessive force. Ni is an
old form, reappearing in poets and later writers, and in a few con-
ventional phrases. Sometimes nisi si occurs.

b. Nisi vero and nisi forte — sometimes nisi alone — regu-
larly introduce an objection, or exception, ironically, and take the
Indicative.

c. Sive . . . sive (seu) introduce conditions in the form of an
alternative. They have no peculiar construction, but may be used
with any kind of condition, or with different kinds in the two
branches, often also without a verb.

d. Of the concessive particles, the compounds of si are used
in all the forms of protasis; quanquam regularly introduces only
conceded facts, and hence takes the Indicative; quamvis, quan-
tum vis, quamlibet, ut, cum, and libet, take idiomatic construc-
tions corresponding to their original meaning. Later writers,
however, frequently use all these particles like the compounds of
si, connecting them with the Indicative or Subjunctive according
to the nature of the condition. Even Cicero occasionally uses
quanquam with the Subjunctive.

62. Relations of Time.

Temporal clauses are introduced by particles which are almost all of relative origin; and are construed
like other relative clauses, except where they have
developed into special constructions.
Temporal Particles are the following: — ubi, ut (ut primum, ut semel), simul atque (simul ac or simul alone), cum (quom), antequam, priusquam, postquam (posteaquam), dum, donec, quoad, quamdiu, quando.

1. The particles ubi, ut, cum, quando, either alone or compounded with cunque, are used as indefinite relatives, and have the constructions of Protasis (§ 59): as,

cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur (Ver. v. 10),
whenever he had seen a rose, he thought Spring was begun
[general condition].
cum id malum esse negas (Tusc. ii. 12), when you [the individual disputant] deny it to be an evil.
cum videas eos . . . dolere non frangi (id. 27), when you see
[indefinite subject] that those are not broken by pain, &c.
quod profecto cum me nulla vis cogeret, facere non auderem
(Philo. v. 18), which I would surely not venture to do, as long
as no force compelled me [supposition contrary to fact].
id ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat (Liv. i. 32),
when he had said this, he [used to] cast the spear into their
territories [repeated action].

Remark. — So est cum, fuit cum, &c., are used in general expressions like est qui, sunt qui (§ 65, 2, a).

2. Temporal clauses of absolute time take the Indicative; those of relative time, the Subjunctive.

(For the definition of absolute and relative time, see § 58, 1, 9.)

Note. — This distinction is not made in other languages, but it may be made clear in the two following expressions: 1. When was the great fire in London? Ans. When Charles II. was king (absolute time). 2. When Charles II. was king (relative time), a great fire broke out in London. In the first case the reign of Charles is referred to as an absolute fixed date, known to the hearer; while in the second the time is not so fixed, but is given as relative to the event narrated by the main verb, which alone denotes absolute time. In this construction, the Subjunctive describes the time by its characteristics (as in § 65, 2), and thus is a branch of the Subjunctive of result. Hence this qualitative character of the temporal clause often reappears and occasions the Subjunctive, where the idea of relative time would not naturally be expected: as, tum, cum habebat haec respublica Luscinos, &c. . . . et tum, cum erant Cutones, &c. Here the former clause describes the character of the age by its men (at a time when there were such men); in the latter, the individual men are present to the mind (at the time of the Catos, &c. Leg. Agr., ii. 24).

a. The particles postquam (posteaquam), ubi, ut (ut primum, ut semel), simul atque (simul ac or simul alone), introduce clauses of absolute time, and take the Indicative (usually the narrative tenses, the perfect and the historical present): as,
milites postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui victis fecère (Sall. Cat. 11), when the armies had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.

Pompeius ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie exessit (B. C. iii. 94), when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the army.

Remark.—1. Those particles may also take the imperfect, denoting a continued state of things, and the pluperfect, denoting the result of an action completed, in the Indicative: as,

postquam instructi utrimque stabant, duces in medium procedunt (Liv. i. 25), when they stood in array on both sides, the generals advance into the midst.

P. Africanus posteaquam bis consul et censor fuerat (Div. in Cæc. 21), when Africanus had been [i.e. had the dignity of having been] twice consul and censor.

postquam id difficilius visum est, neque facultas perficiendi dabatur, ad Pompeium transierunt (B. C. iii. 60), when this seemed too hard, and no means of effecting it were given, they passed over to Pompey.

post diem quintum quam barbari iterum male pugnaverant (= victi sunt), legati a Boccho veniunt (Jug. 110), the fifth day after the barbarians were beaten the second time, envoys came from Bocchus.

2. Rarely these particles denote relative time, and take the Subjunctive: as,

posteaquam maximas ædificasset ornassetque classes (Manil. 4), having built and equipped mighty fleets.

b. Cum (quom), temporal, meaning when, introduces both absolute and relative time, and takes either mood,—the Indicative of the present and perfect, the Subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect: as,

cum occiditur Sex. Roscius, ibidem fuerunt servi (Rosc. Am. 61), when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot.

dempe eo [lituor] regiones direxit tum cum urbem condidit (Div. i. 17), he traced with it the quarters [of the sky] at the time he founded the city.

cum servili bello premeretur (Manil. 11), when she [Italy] was under the load of the Servile war.

inde cum se in Italiam recepisset (id. 12), when he had returned thence to Italy.

cum incendisses cupiditatem meam ... tum discedias a nobis (Fam. xvi. 21), while you had inflamed my eagerness, yet you withdrew from us.

Note.—The Present takes the Indicative because present time is generally, from its very nature, defined in the mind; and it is only when the circumstances are described as causal or adversative (see below, § 65. 2, c) that the Subjunctive is used. The Perfect takes the Indicative as the tense of narrative, as with postquam, &c. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are, from their nature, fitter to denote relative time.
Remark.—1. But the imperfect and pluperfect may denote absolute time, and then are in the Indicative: as,

_res cum hæc scribem erat in extremum adducta discrimen_ (Fam. xii. 6), _at the time I write [epistolary] the affair was brought into great hazard._

_quem quidem cum ex urbe pellebam, hoc providebam animo_ (Cat. iii. 7), _when I was about forcing him [conative imperfect] from the city, I looked forward to this._

_fulgentes gladios hostium videbant Decii cum in aciem eorum irruerant_ (Tusc. ii. 24), _the Decii saw the flashing swords of the enemy when they rushed upon their line._

_tum cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant_ (Manil. 7), _at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia._

2. When the clauses are inverted, so that the real temporal clause becomes the main clause, and vice versa, the Indicative must be used: as,

_dies nondum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius infans necatur_ (Clu. 9), _ten days had not yet passed, when the other infant son was killed._

_hoc facere noctu apparabat, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt_ (B. G. vii. 26), _they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran out into the streets._

3. With Future tenses, there is no distinction of absolute or relative time; and hence the Indicative is used: as,

_non dubitabo dare operam ut te videam, cum id satis commode facere potero_ (Fam. xiii. 1), _I shall not hesitate to take pains to see you, when I can do it conveniently._

_longum illud tempus cum non ero_ (Att. xii. 18), _that long time when I shall be no more._

In the other tenses, the distinction is of late origin; hence in Plautus _quom_ always takes the Indicative except where the Subjunctive is used for other reasons.

C. In narration _antequam_ and _priusquam_—also, in late writers, _dum_ and _donec_—have the same construction as _cum_: as,

_antequam tuas legi litteras_ (Att. ii. 7), _before I read your letter._

_nec ante finis fuit quam concesserè_ (Liv. viii. 13), _there was no end until they yielded [regular with non ante quam, &c.]._ 

_antequam homines nefarii de meo adventu audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexì_ (Planc. 41), _before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia._

_nec obstitit falsis donec tempore ac spatio vaneserent_ (Tac. Ann. ii. 82), _nor did he contradict the falsehoods till they died out through lapse of time._

Remark.—In reference to future time, these particles take the present and future perfect indicative; rarely the future indicative and present subjunctive: as,
prior quam de ceteris rebus respondeo, de amicitia paucam dicam (Phil. ii. 1), before I reply to the rest, I will say a little of friendship.
non defatigabor ante quam illorum anticipes vias percepero (De Or. iii. 36), I shall not weary till I have traced out their doubtful ways.

In a few cases the subjunctive of protasis seems to be used: as,
priusquam incipias consulto et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est (Sall. Cat. i), before beginning you need reflection, and after reflecting, prompt action.
tempestas minatur antequam surgat (Sen. Ep. 103), the storm threatens before it rises. [Compare § 59, 5, a.]

d. Dum, donec, and quoad, implying purpose, take the subjunctive (§ 64); otherwise, except in later writers, the indicative. Dum and dummodo, provided, take the subjunctive: as,

dum hae geruntur (B. G. i. 46), while this was going on.
donec redit silentium fuit (Liv. xxiii. 31), there was silence until he returned.

dum res maneant, verba fiant (Fin. v. 29), so long as the facts remain, let them fashion words.
hoc feci dum licuit, intermissi quoad non licuit (Phil. iii. 13),
I did this so long as it was allowed, I discontinued so long as it was not.
dummodo sit polita, dum urbana, dum elegans (Brut. 82), provided it be polished, refined, elegant.

REMARK.—With all temporal particles, the Subjunctive is often found, depending on other principles of construction.

e. Cum CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE (since, while, though) takes the subjunctive (often emphasized by ut, utpote, quippe, prae-sertim): as,
cum solitudo ... insidiarum et metus plena sit (Fin. i. 20),

since solitude is full of treachery and fear.
cum primi ordines ... concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant (B. G. vii. 62), though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.
nec reprehendo: quippe cum ipse istam reprehensionem non fugerim (Act. x. 3), I do not blame it: since I myself did not escape that blame.

But frequently in the sense of quod, on the ground that, it takes the Indicative: as,
gratulor tibi cum tantum vales apud Dolabella (Fam. xi. 14),
I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella.

NOTE.—This causal relation is merely a variation of the idea of time, where the attendant circumstances are regarded as the cause.
cum multa non probo, tum illud in primis (Fin. i. 6), while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief. cum res tota ficta sit puelliter, tum ne efficit quidem quod vult (ib.), while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point.

63. CAUSE OR REASON.

Causal clauses may take the Indicative or Subjunctive according to their construction; the idea of Cause being contained not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument, or the connecting particles.

1. The Causal Particles quod, quia, quoniam, quando—and in early Latin cum (causal)—take the Indicative: as,

quia postrema ædificata est (Verr. iv. 53), because it was built last.
utinam illum diem videam, cum tibi agam gratias quod me vivere coñgisti (Att. iii. 3), O that I may see the day when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.
quoniam de utilitate jam diximus, de efficiendi ratione dicamus (Or. Part. 26), since we have now spoken of [its] advantage, let us speak of the method of effecting it.
quando ìta vis di bene vontant (Trin. 573), since you so wish, may the gods bless the undertaking.
quom tua res distrahitur utinam te redisse salvam videam (id. 617), since your property is torn in pieces, oh, that I may see you returned safely!

2. Clauses introduced by these particles, like any other dependent clause, take the Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse (see § 67, 1).

3. A relative clause of characteristic, with its verb, in the subjunctive, may have the force of a causal sentence (see § 65, 2).

4. The particle cum, when used in a causal sense, idiomatically takes the Subjunctive (§ 62, 2, e).
64. PURPOSE.

1. Final Clauses, or those expressing purpose, take the Subjunctive after relatives (qui — ut is), or the conjunction ut (uti), in order that (negatively ut ne or ne, lest): as,

ab aratro abduxerunt Cincinnatum, ut dictator esset (Fin. ii. 4), they brought Cincinnatus from the plough, that he might be dictator.
scriebat orationes quas alii dicerent (Brut. 56), he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.
huic ne ubi consideret quidem contra te locum reliquisti (Quinct. 22), you have left him no ground even to make a stand against you.
nihil habeo quod scribam, I have nothing to write.
habebam quo confugerem (Fam. iv. 6), I had [a retreat] whither I might flee.
ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat (B. G. vi. 29), that no sign of his arrival may be made at a distance.

Remark. — Sometimes the relative or conjunction has a correlative in the main clause: as,

legum idcirco omnes servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus (Clu. 53), for this reason we are subject to the laws, that we may be free.
causa ... ne, for this reason, lest, &c.

Note. — As ut (uti) is of relative origin, the construction with ut is the same as that of relatives. That with ne is perhaps, in origin, a hortatory subjunctive.

a. The ablative quo (= ut eo) is used as a conjunction in final clauses, especially with comparatives: as,

libertate usus est, quo impunius dicax esset (Quinct. 3), he availed himself of liberty, that he might bluster with more impunity.

Compare quominus (= ut eo minus), after verbs of hinder- ing (§ 65, 1, a).

b. The Principal clause, upon which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context: as,

ac ne longum sit ... jussimus (Cat. iii. 5), and, not to be tedious, we ordered, &c. [strictly, "not to be tedious, I say."]

sed ut ad Dionysium redeamus, ... (Tusc. v. 22), but to return to Dionysius, &c.

satis inconsiderati fuit, ne dicam audacis (Phil. xiii. 5), it was the act of one rash enough, not to say daring.
64: 2. 65.] CONSEQUENCE OR RESULT. 183

Remark. — To this principle belongs nédum, still less, not to mention that, with which the verb itself is often omitted: as,

nédum ... salvi esse possimus (Clu. 35), much less could we be safe.
nédum isti ... non statim conquisituri sint aliquid sceleris et flagitii (Leg. Ag. ii. 35), far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.
nédum in mari et viâ sit facile (Fam. xvi. 8), still less is it easy at sea, and on a journey.

c. Final clauses easily become the object of verbs of wishing, commanding, &c. (see § 70, 3).

2. The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive, as in English. The sentence, they came to seek peace, may be rendered —

(1) venerunt ut pacem peterent ... [final clause with ut];
(2) " " qui pacem peterent [final clause with Relative];
(3) " ad petendum pacem (rare) [gerund with ad];
(4) " " ad petendum pacem [gerundive with ad];
(5) " " pacem petendi causâ * [gerund with causa];
(6) " " pacis petendæ causâ [gerundive with causa];
(7) " " pacem petiti [future participle (not in Cicero)];
(8) " " pacem petitum [former supine].

* Or gratiâ.

65. CONSEQUENCE OR RESULT.

1. Consecutive Clauses, or those expressing result, take the Subjunctive after relatives or the conjunction ut, so that (negatively, ut non): as,

nemo est tam senex, qui se annum non putet posse vivere (Cat. M. 7), no one is so old as not to think he can live a year.
nam est innocentia affectio talis animi, quæ noceat nemini (Tusc. iii. 8), for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.
sunt aliæ causæ quæ plane efficient (Top. 15), there are other causes, such as to bring to pass.

Remark. — A negative result is expressed by ut non. Sometimes, when the result implies an effect intended (not a simple purpose), ut ne or ne is used: as,

[librum] ita corrigas ne mihi noceat (Fam. vi. 7), correct the book so that it may not hurt me.
hoc est ita utile ut ne plane illudamur ab accusatoribus (Rosc. Am. 20), this is so useful, that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers [i.e., only on this condition].

a. The subjunctive with quominus (= ut eo minus) may be used, to express a result, after words of hindering: as,

nec ætas impedit quominus agri colendi studia teneamus (Cat. M. 17), nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the ground.

b. A clause of result is introduced by quin after general negatives, where quin is equivalent to qui (quae, quod) non; also after clauses denoting hindrance, resistance, doubt, and suspension of effort (when these clauses are also negative): as,

non dubito quin, I do not doubt that [dubito an, I doubt whether].
ægre (vix) abstinui quin, I hardly refrained from, &c.
nihil impedit quin ..., there is nothing to prevent, &c.
abesse non potest quin (Or. 70), it cannot be but that.
nihil est illorum quin [=quod non] ego illi dixerim (Plaut. Bac. iii. 9), there is nothing of this that I have not told him.

Remark. — The above clauses of result easily pass into Substantive Clauses, for which see § 70, 4, 9.

2. A relative clause of Result is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, even where the idea of result can be no longer perceived. This is especially common where the antecedent is otherwise undefined: as,

neque enim tu is es, qui qui sis nescias (Fam. v. 12), for you are not such a one, as not to know who you are.
multa dicunt quæ vix intelligent (Fin. iv. 1), they say many things such as they hardly understand.
paci quæ nihil habitura sit insidiarum semper est consulendum (Off. i. 11), we must always aim at a peace which shall have no plots.
unde agger comportari posset, nihil erat reliquum (B. C. ii. 15), there was nothing left, from which an embankment could be put together.

Note. — These cases of result are to be distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in protasis (§ 59, 1).

Such relative clauses of characteristic are used in several idiomatic constructions: viz., —

а. After general expressions of existence and non-existence, including questions implying a negative: as,
erant qui Helvidium miserarentur (Ann. xvi. 29), there were some who pitied Helvidius.
quis est qui id non maximis efferat laudibus (Læl. 7), who is
there that does not extol it with the highest praises?
sunt aliae causae quae plane efficiant (Top. 15), there are other
causae which clearly effect, &c.

b. After unus and solus: as,
nil admirari prope res est una solaque quae possit facere et
servare beatum (Hor. Ep. i. 6), to wonder at nothing is almost
the sole and only thing that can make and keep one happy.

c. After comparatives followed by quam: as,
maiores arbores caedeabant quam quas ferre miles posset (Liv.
xxviii. 5), they cut larger trees than what a soldier could
carry.
Canachi signa rigidiora sunt quam ut imitentur veritatem
(Brut. 18), the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent
nature.

d. In expressions of restriction or proviso, introduced by
 Relatives: as,
quod sciam, so far as I know.
Catonis orationes, quas quidem invenerim (Brut. 17), the
speeches of Cato, at least such as I have discovered.
servus est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis
(Cat. iv. 8), there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable con-
dition of slavery.

e. When the quality indicated is connected with the action of
the main clause, either as Cause on account of which (since), or as
Hindrance in spite of which (although; compare § 62, 2, e): as,
O virum simplicem qui nos nihil celet (Or. 69), oh, guileless
man, who hides nothing from us! [so with ut, utpote, quippe].
egomet qui sero Graecas litteras attigissem tamen complures
Athenis dies sum commoratus (De Or. 18), I myself, though
I began Greek literature late, yet, &c. [lit., a man who].

f. Dignus, indignus, aptus, idoneus, take a clause of result
with a relative (rarely with ut); in the poets the Infinitive: as,
idoneus qui impetret (Manil. 19), fit to obtain.
dignum notari (Hor. Sat. i. 3), worthy to be stigmatized.

66. Intermediate Clauses.

A Relative or other subordinate clause takes the
Subjunctive, when it expresses the thought of some
other person than the speaker or writer, or when it is
an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent
Infinitive.
1. The Subjunctive is used in intermediate clauses to express the thought of some other person —
   a. In subordinate clauses in Indirect Discourse (see § 67, i, b).
   b. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question expressed indirectly, though not indirect discourse proper: as,

   animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Off. i. 6), an animal feels what it is that is fit.
   hunc sibi ex animo scrupulum, qui se dies noctesque stimulet ac pungat, ut evellatis postulat (Rosc. Am. 2), he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night. [Here the relative clause is not a part of the Purpose expressed in evellatis, but is an assertion made by the subject of postulat.]
   c. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of saying, or some modifier of it: as,

   nisi restituisset statuas, vehementer iis minatur (Verr. iii. 67), he threatens them violently unless they should restore the statues. [Here the main clause, "that he will inflict punishment," is contained in minatur.]
   prohibitio tollendi, nisi pactus esset, vim adhibebat pactioni (id. iv. 14), the forbidding to take away unless he came to terms gave force to the bargain.
   d. With a reason or an explanatory fact introduced by a relative or by quod (rarely quia): as,

   Favonius mihi quod defendissem leviter successuit (Att. iii. 1), Favonius gently chided me for my defence.
   Patiis omnes libros quos pater suus reliquisset mihi donavit (id.), Patius presented me all the books his father had left.

   REMARK. — Under this head, even what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the subjunctive. So also with quod, even the verb of saying may take the subjunctive. To this use also belong non quia, non quod, introducing a reason expressly to deny it. Non quo, non quin, introduce a result clause, but with nearly the same meaning as non quod: as,

   pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod doleant, sed quia . . . (Tusc. ii. 23), boxers groan not with pain, but, &c.
   non quia philosophia . . . percipi non posset (id. i. 1), not that philosophy cannot be found, &c.
   non quoniam hoc sit necesse (Verr. ii. 9), not that this is necessary.

   NOTE. — This usage probably originates in apodosis, the condition being the supposed truth of the speaker, the main subject.

2. A clause depending upon another subjunctive clause (or equivalent Infinitive) will also take the subjunctive if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause: as,
non pugnabo quominus utrum velis eligas (Div. C. 18), I will not oppose your taking which you will.
imperat, dum res adjudicetur, hominem ut asservent: cum 
judicatum sit, ad se adducant (Verr. iv. 22), he orders them 
while the affair is under judgment, to keep the man; when he 
is judged, to bring him to him.
etenim quis tam dissoluto animo est, qui haec cum videat, 
tacere ac neglegere possit (Rosc. Am. 11), for who is so reck-
less of spirit, that when he sees these things, he can keep silent 
and pass them by?
si tibi hoc Siculi dicerent, nonne id dicerent quod cuvis pro-
bare deberent (Div. C. 6), if the Sicilians said this to 
you, would they not say a thing which they must prove to 
everybody?
mos est Athenis laudari in contione eos qui sint in præliis 
interfecti (Or. 44), it is the custom at Athens for those to be 
publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.

Note.—The subjunctive in this use is either a Protasis or Apodosis, 
and partakes of the nature of the clause on which it depends,—or 
at least of its original nature. In all cases except purpose and result, 
this is clearly seen. In these, the case is undoubtedly the same; as 
the Purpose has, of course, a future sense, and the Result is a branch 
of apodosis. (See "Essay on the Latin Subjunctive," page 27.)

It is often difficult to distinguish between this construction and the 
preceding. Thus, in imperat ut ea fiant que opus essent, essent may 
stand for sunt, and then will be Indirect Discourse (under 1, b); or 
it may stand for erunt, and will then be Protasis (under 2).

67. Indirect Discourse.

A Direct Quotation is one which gives the exact 
words of the original speaker or writer. An Indirect 
Quotation is one which adapts the original words to 
the construction of the sentence in which they are 
quoted.

Remark.—The term Indirect Discourse (oratio obliqua) 
is used to designate all clauses—even single clauses in a sentence 
of different construction—which indirectly express the word or 
thought of any person other than the speaker or writer, or even 
his own under other circumstances. But it is more strictly used 
to include those cases only in which the form of Indirect Quotation 
is given to some complete proposition or citation, which may be 
extended to a narrative or address of any length,—as found in the 
Speeches of Caesar and Livy,—the form being dependent on some 
word of saying, &c., with which it is introduced.

The term Direct Discourse (oratio recta) includes all other 
forms of expression, whether narration, question, exclamation, or 
command.
1. Indirect Narrative. In a Declaratory Sentence in indirect discourse, the principal verb is in the Infinitive, and its subject in the Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive: as,

esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas plurimum valeat (B. G. i. 17),

there are some, whose influence most prevails. [In direct discourse, sunt nonnulli ... valet.]
nisi jurassest, scelus se facturum [esse] arbitrabatur (Verr. i. 47), he thought he should incur guilt, unless he should take the oath [direct, nisi juravero. faciam].
Stoici negant quidquam esse bonum, nisi quod honestum sit (Fin. ii. 21), the Stoics assert that nothing is good but what is right. [The verb nego is used in preference to dico with a negative.]

a. Subject-Accusative. The subject of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse must regularly be expressed, even though it is wanting in the Direct (See §70, 2, d): as,

orator sum, I am an orator; [dicit] se esse oratorem, [he says]
he is an orator (see § 70, 2, d).

But rarely, it is omitted, when it would be easily understood: as,
ignoscere imprudentiae dixit (B. G. iv. 27), he said he pardoned their rashness.
rogavi pervenissent nec Agrigentum: dixit pervenisse (Verr. iv. 12), I asked whether they [the curtains] had come to Agrigentum: he answered that they had.

Remark. — After a relative, or quam (than), where the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative: as,
te suspicior eisdem rebus quibus meipsum commoveri (Cat. M. i), I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.

b. Relative Clauses. A subordinate clause merely explanatory, and containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. It often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he will use the indicative or subjunctive: as,

quis neget hæc omnia quæ videmus deorum potestate administrari (Cat. iii. 9), who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?
cujus ingenio putabant ea quæ gesserat posse celebrari (Arch. 9),
by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated. [Here the fact expressed by quæ gesserat, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation: quæ gessisset would mean, what Marius thought he had done.]
Remark.—Some clauses introduced by relatives are really independent, and take the accusative and infinitive. Rarely, also, subordinate clauses take this construction. The infinitive construction is regularly continued after a comparative with quam: as,

Marcellus requisivisse dicitur Archimedes illum, quem cum audisset interfectum per moleste tulisse (Verr. iv. §8), Marcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed.

unumquemque nostrum censent philosophi muni esse partem, ex quo [= et ex eo] illud naturā consequi (Fin. iii. 19), the philosophers say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.

quammodum si non dedatur obesus pro rupto se fœdus haberetur, sic deditam inviolatum ad suos remissurum (Liv. ii. 13), [he says] as in case the hostage is not given up he will consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.

addit se prius ooccisum iri ab eo quam me violatum iri (Att. ii. 20), he adds that he himself will be killed by him, before I shall be injured.

The subjunctive with or without ut also occurs with quam (see § 70, 4, 5).

c. Conditional Sentences. In a conditional sentence, the Indicative in APODOSIS is in any case represented by the corresponding tense of the Infinitive. The Subjunctive is represented by the Future Participle with fuisset for the pluperfect, and the Future Infinitive for the other tenses (compare the use of the participle inurus with ful for the pluperfect subj. p. 169). The PROTASIS, as a dependent clause, is in all cases Subjunctive: as,

se non defuturum [esse] pollicetur, si audacter dicere velit (B. C. i. 1), he promises not to fail, if they will speak their minds boldly [non dēero si voletis].

Note.—The future infinitive, representing the imperfect subjunctive in Protasis, is for some reason very rare, and only four or five examples occur in classic authors. On the contrary, the form with fuisset is quite common.

d. Questions. A Question coming immediately after a verb of asking or the like is treated as an Indirect Question (see below, 2); but questions—generally rhetorical—coming in course of a long indirect discourse are treated like Declaratory Sentences: as,

num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam [se] deponere posse (B. G. i. 14), could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs? [num possum?]

quem signum daturum fugientibus? quem ausurum Alexandro succedere (Q. C. iii. 5), who will give the signal on the retreat? who will dare to succeed Alexander?

REMARK. — Generally real questions, expecting an answer (chiefly in the second person), take the subjunctive. Questions asked by the dubitative subjunctive must retain the subjunctive (see 2, b): as,

quid sibi vellent (B. G. i. 44), what did they want? [quid vultis?]

2. Indirect Questions. An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive: as,

quid ipse sentiam exponam (Div. i. 6), I will explain what I think [direct, quid sentio].

id possetne fieri consuluit (id. 7), he consulted whether it could be done [direct, potestue].

quaam sis audax omnes intellegere potuerunt (Rosc. Am. 31), all could understand how bold you are.

doleam necne doleam nihil interest (Tusc. ii. 12), it is of no account whether I suffer or not.

incerti quidnam esset (Jug. 49), uncertain what it was.

REMARK. — An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause, introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, or particle), depending immediately on a verb, or on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative, as in the third example given above.

a. The Future Indicative is represented in indirect questions by the participle inurus with the subjunctive of esse,—rarely by the simple subjunctive: as,

prospicio qui concursus futuri sint (Div. in Cæc.), I foresee what throngs there will be [erunt].

quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere (Hor. Od. i. 9), forbear to ask what will be on the morrow [erit, or futurum est].

b. The Dubitative Subjunctive referring to future time remains unchanged except in tense: as,

[quæritur] utrum Carthago diruatur, an Carthaginiensibus reddatur (De Inv. i. 12), [the question is] shall Carthage be destroyed, or restored to the Carthaginians.

nec quisquam satis certum habet, quid aut speret aut timeat (Liv. xxii. 7), nor is any one assured what he shall hope or fear. [Here the participle with sit could not be used.]

incerto quid paterent aut vitarent (Liv. xxviii. 36), since it was doubtful [abl. abs.] what they should seek or shun.

c. The Subject of an indirect question is often, in colloquial usage and in poetry, attracted into the main clause as Object (accusative of anticipation): as,

nōsti Marcellum quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10), you know how slow Marcellus is.—In like manner,
potestne igitur earum rerum quare futurae sint ulla esse præ-sensio (Div. ii. 5), can there be, then, any foreknowledge as to those things, why they will occur?

**Remark.** — In some cases the Object becomes Subject by a change of voice, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative construction is the result: as,

quidam sœpe in parvâ pecuniâ perspiciuntur quam sint leves (Læl. 17), *it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are.*
quemadmodum Pompeium oppugnarent a me indicati sunt (Leg. Ag. i. 2), *it has been shown by me in what way they attacked Pompey.*

d. In early Latin and poetry, questions which elsewhere would have the Subjunctive as indirect often have the Indicative: as,

non reputat quid laboris est (Amph. 172), *he does not consider what a task it is.*
vineam quo in agro conseri oportet sic observato (Cato R.R 6), *in what soil a vineyard should be set you must observe thus.*

**Note.** — These cases are usually considered Direct questions; but they occur (as above) where the question cannot be translated as direct without distortion of the meaning.

e. A few expressions properly interrogative are used idiomatically as *indefinites,* and do not take a subjunctive: such are *nescio quis,* &c., *mirum* (or *nimirum*) *quam* or *quantum,* *immane quantum,* &c.: as,

qui istam nescio quam indolentiam magnopere laudant (Tusc. iii. 6), *who greatly exult that painlessness (whatever it is).*
mirum quantum profuit (Liv. ii. 1), *it helped marvellously.*

f. Occasionally, a virtual indirect question is introduced by *si* in the sense of *whether* (like *if* in English): as,

circumsfunduntur hostes, si quem aditum reperire possent (B. G. vi. 37), *the enemy pour round [to see] if they can find entrance.*
visam si domi est (Heaut. 118), *I will go see if he is at home.*

**3. Indirect Commands.** All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in indirect discourse: as,

reminisceretur veteris incommodi populi Romani (B. G. 13), *remember [said he] the ancient disaster,* &c. [reminiscere].
ne committeret ut (ib.), *do not [said he] bring it about [ne commiseris].*
finem orandi faciat (id. 20), *let him make an end of entreaty [fac].*
The following example may serve to illustrate some of the foregoing principles in a connected address:

*Indirect Discourse.*

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminiscetur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristina virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii qui flumen transissent suis auxiliis ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut sua magno opere virtutis tribueret, aut ipsos despicaret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contendenter, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitūs nomen caperet, aut memoriam prodaret. — B. G. l. 13.

*Direct Discourse.*

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos Caesar constituerit atque esse voluerit: sin bello persequi perseverabit, reminiscere [inquit] et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristina virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transferant suis auxiliis ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magno opere virtutis tribueris, aut nos despexeris: nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute quam dolo contendamus, aut insidiis nitamur. Quare, ne commiseris, ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitūs nomen capiat, aut memoriam prodat.

68. Wishes and Commands.

1. Wishes are expressed by the Subjunctive, often strengthened by the particles ut, utinam, 0 si (early Latin), qui; the primary tenses being used in reference to future time, the secondary to express a hopeless wish,—the imperfect in present time, the pluperfect in past (see § 57, 4).

Remark. — A periphrasis with velim, vellem, &c., is sometimes used (57, 4, c).

2. Commands are expressed by the Imperative or Subjunctive (§ 57, 3, 7); Prohibitions by the Subjunctive, or by a periphrasis with noli or cave (§ 57, 7, a). The object of the command is given in a purpose-clause (§ 70, 3) with ut or ne, except after jubeo and veto (§ 70, 2).

3. Indirectly quoted, all these forms of speech take the Subjunctive (see § 67, 3).
69. Relative Clauses.

1. A simple relative, merely introducing a descriptive fact, takes the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive appears more or less frequently in many relative clauses (which have been already treated). These relatives always either—(1) are general relatives of Protasis; or (2) express some logical connection between the relative and antecedent, or (3) have no effect at all upon the construction. These constructions are—

1. General or Future Conditions in Protasis (§§ 59, 60, 61).
2. a. Final Clauses (§ 64).
   b. Consecutive Clauses (§ 65).
   c. Relatives of Characteristic (§ 65, 2).
   d. Relatives implying Cause or Hindrance (§ 65, 2, c).
   e. Temporal Clauses of relative time (62, 2).
   b. Clauses in Indirect Discourse (§ 67).

70. Substantive Clauses.

A Substantive Clause is one which, like a noun, is the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a subject or object.

Remark.—The Infinitive with the Accusative, though not strictly a Clause, is equivalent to one, and may be treated as such.

When a substantive clause is used as Subject, the verb to which it is subject is called Impersonal (§ 39), and its sign, in English, is it; when it is used as Object, it generally follows some verb of knowing, &c. (§ 67, 1) or of wishing or effecting, and its sign, in English, is that, or to (Infinitive).

1. Classification. Substantive Clauses are of four kinds:—1. The Accusative with the Infinitive, denoting an idea as thought or spoken (§ 67, 1); 2. Indirect Questions (67, 2); 3. The Subjunctive with ut, ne, quo, quin, or
quominus, denoting purpose or result; 4. The Indicative with quod, denoting a fact. But the Infinitive alone may take the place of either 1 or 3.

2. Accusative and Infinitive. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used as the Subject chiefly of esse or impersonal verbs (§ 57, 8, b); and as the Object—1. Of all verbs and expressions of knowing, thinking, and telling (Indirect Discourse, § 67, 1); 2. Of jubeo and veto, and rarely of other verbs of commanding, requesting, admonishing, and the like; 3. Sometimes of verbs of wishing: as,

omnis homines summa ope niti decet (Sall. Cat. 1), it is fitting that all men strive with utmost effort.
Labienum jugum montis adscendere jubet (id. 21), he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.
judicem esse me non doctorem volo (Or. 33), I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.
negat ullos patere portus (Liv. xxvii. 43), he says that no ports are open.

a. After Passives. If the main verb is changed to the passive, either (1) the Subject of the infinitive (like other objects of active verbs) becomes nominative, and the infinitive is retained; or (2) the passive is used impersonally, and the clause retained as its subject. With verbs of saying, &c., the former construction is more common, especially in the tenses of incomplete action; with jubeo and veto it is always used: as,

primi traduntur arte quadam verba vixisse (Or. 13), they first are related to have joined words with a certain skill.
jussus es renuntiari consul (Phil. ii. 32), you were under orders to be declared consul.
in lautumias Syracusanas deduci imperatur (Verr. v. 27), they are ordered to be taken to the stone-pits of Syracuse.
hic accusare non est situs (Sest. 44), he was not allowed to accuse.

ceteræ Illyrici legiones secuturæ sperabantur (Tac. Hist. ii. 74), the rest of the legions of Illyricum were expected to follow.
voluntarià morte interisse creditus est (Tac. H. iv. 67), he was thought to have perished by voluntary death.
nuntiatur piratarum naves esse in portu (Verr. v. 24), it is told that the ships of the pirates are in port.

b. The poets extend the use of the passive to verbs which are not properly verba sentendi: as,
colligor dominæ placuisset (Ov. Am. ii. 6, 61), it is gathered [from this memorial] that I pleased my mistress.
c. Such indirect discourse may depend on any word implying speech or thought, though not strictly a verb of saying, &c.: as,

eos redire jubet: se in tempore adfiturum esse (Liv. xxiv. 13), he orders them to return [promising] that he will be at hand in season.
orantes ut urbibus saltet — jam enim agros deploratos esse — opem senatus ferret (id. xvi. 6), praying that the senate would bring aid to the cities — for the fields [they said] were already given up as lost.

d. Verbs of promising, expecting, threatening, swearing, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom (§ 67, 1, a); but sometimes a simple complementary infinitive: as,

me spero liberatum [esse] metu (Tusc. ii. 27), I trust I have been freed from fear.
minatur sese abire (Asin. iii. 3), he threatens to go away. [Direct, abeo, I am going away.]
ex quibus sperant se maximum fructum esse capturos (Læl. 21), from which they hope to gain the utmost advantage.
quem inimicissimum futurum esse promitto ac spondeo (Mur. 41), who I promise and warrant will be the bitterest of enemies.
dolor fortitudinem se debilitatumur minatur (Tusc. v. 27), pain threatens to wear down fortitude.
pollicentur obsides dare (B. G. iv. 21), they promise to give hostages [compare Greek aorist infinitive after similar verbs.]

3. Clauses of Purpose. The clause with ut (negative ne), developed from purpose, is used as the Object of all verbs denoting an action directed towards the future. Such are —

a. Verbs of commanding, asking, admonishing, urging, and in general those denoting an influence upon some one (§ 64). These verbs rarely take the Infinitive (except jubeo and veto, which take it regularly): as,

his uti conquirerent imperavit (B. G. i. 28), he ordered them to search.
monet ut omnes suspicioneis vitet (id. 20), he warns him to avoid all suspicion.

b. Verbs of wishing and the like. These take also the simple Infinitive; more commonly when the subject remains the same, less commonly when it is different (see 2, above): as,
cupio ut impetret (Capt. i. 2), I wish he may get it.
cum nostri perspicci cuperent (B. G. iii. 21), when our men wished it to be seen.
mallem Cerberum metuere (Tusc. i. 6), I would rather you feared Cerberus.
quos non tam ulisci studeo quam sanare (Cat. ii. 8), whom I
do not care so much to punish as to cure.

e. Verbs of permission, concession, and necessity. These take
also the Infinitive: as,
   permissit ut partes faceret (De Or. ii. 90), permitted him to
   make divisions.
   vinum importari non sinuunt (B. G. iv. 2), they do not allow
   wine to be imported.
nullo se implicari negotio passus est (Lig. 3), he suffered him-
selves to be tangled in no business.
sint enim oportet si miseri sunt (Tusc. i. 6), they must exist, if
   they are wretched. [Here the clause is subject of oportet.]

REMARK. — The clause with licet (usually without ut) is
regularly used to express a concession in the sense of although.

d. Verbs of determining, resolving, bargaining, which also
take the Infinitive. Those of decreeing often take the participle
in duas, on the principle of indirect discourse: as,
edicto ne quis injussu pugnaret (Liv. v. 19), having commanded
   that none should fight without orders.
pacto ut victorem res sequeretur (id. xxviii. 21), having bar-
gained that the property should belong to the victor.
Regulus captivos reddendos non censuit (Off. i. 13), Regulus
   voted that the captives should not be returned. [i. e. in giv-
ing his opinion, captivi non reddendi sunt.]

e. Verbs of caution and effort. Those denoting an effort to
hinder may also take quominus or ne: as,
cura et provide ut nequid ei desit (Att. ii. 3), take care and see
   that he lacks nothing.
non deterret sapientem mors quominus ... (Tusc. i. 38), death
   does not deter the wise man from, &c.
ne facerem impedivit (Fat. i. 1), prevented me from doing.

f. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with ne affirmative
and ne non or ut negative: as,
   ne animum offenderet verebatur (B. G. i. 19), he feared he
   should offend the mind, &c.
vereor ut tibi possim concedere (De Or. i. 9), I fear I cannot
   grant you.
   haud sane periculum est ne non mortem optandum putet
   (Tusc. v. 40), there is no danger of his not thinking death
   desirable.

REMARK. — The particle ut or ne is often omitted, — generally
after verbs of wishing, necessity, permission; with cave, dic, fac;
and in indirect discourse, frequently after verbs of commanding
and the like.
g. With any verbs of the above classes, the poets may use the
Infinitive: as,
hortamur fari (Æn. ii. 74), we exhort [him] to speak.

4. **Clauses of Result.** The clause with ut (negative
ut non, &c.), developed from result, is used as the Object
of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort: as,
commematus ut portari possent efficiebat (B. G. ii. 5), he made
it possible that supplies could be brought. [Lit., he effected
that, &c.]

a. The substantive clause becomes the Subject of such verbs
in the passive; and hence is further used as the subject of verbs
denoting it happens, it remains, it follows, and the like; and even
of the simple esse in the same sense, and other phrases: as,
sequitur ut doceam (N. D. ii. 32), the next thing is to show, &c.
accidit ut esset plena luna (B. G. iv. 29), it chanced to be full
moon.
accidit ut conturber (Deiot. 1), besides this I am troubled.
reliquum est quarta virtus ut sit ipsa frugalitas (id.), it remains
that the fourth virtue is thrift.
quando fuit ut quod licet, non liceret (Cæl. 20), when was it
that what is now allowed was not allowed?

b. A result clause, with or without ut, frequently follows
quam, after a comparative: as,
perpessus est omnia potius quam indicaret (Tusc. i. 22), he
endured all, rather than betray, &c.

c. A result clause with ut is often used elliptically, in ex-
clamations, with or without -ne (compare § 57, 8, g): as,
quanquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat (Cat. i. 9), yet
why do I ask? that anything should bend you?
egone ut te interpellem (Tusc. ii. 18), what, I interrupt you?

**Remark** — The infinitive, in exclamations, usually refers to
something actually occurring; the subjunctive to something con-
templated.

d. The phrase *tantum abest, it is so far* [from being the
case], besides a subject-clause (*substantive*) with ut, regularly
takes another ut-clause (of *result*) depending on *tantum*: as,
tantum abest ut nostram miremur, ut usque eo difficiles ac mor-
osi simus, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes (Or.
29), so far from admiring our own matters, we are difficult
and captious to that degree, that not Demosthenes himself
satisfies us. [Here the first ut-clause depends directly on
abest; the second on tantum; and the third on usque eo.]
e. The expressions facero ut, committere ut, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb (compare foro ut for the future infinitive): as,

invitus feci ut Flamininum e senatu eicerem (Cat. M. 12), it was with reluctance that I expelled, &c.

f. Rarely, a thought or idea is considered as a result, and takes the subjunctive with ut instead of the accusative and infinitive (in this case a demonstrative usually precedes): as,

altera est res, ut... (Off. i. 20), the second point is that, &c.
praeterum illud est, ut eos... amemus (Tusc. iii. 29), this is a noble thing, that we should love, &c.
quae est igitur amentia, ut... what folly is there then in demanding, &c.

g. Verbs and other expressions which imply hindering and the like, may take quin when the main verb is negative, formally or virtually (§ 65, 1, b): as,

facere non possum quin... (Att. xii. 27), I cannot avoid, &c.
nihil praetermi quin scribam... (Q. F. iii. 3), I have left nothing undone to write.
ut nullâ re impedirer quin (Att. iv. 2), that I might be hindered by nothing from, &c.
non humana ulla neque divina obstant quin (Sall. Ep. Mith. 17), no human or divine laws prevent, but that, &c.

Remark. — This usage is found especially with the phrase non dubito and similar expressions making a kind of indirect discourse: as,

non dubitabat quin ei crederemus (Att. vi. 2), he did not doubt that we believed him.
illud cave dubites quin ego omnia faciam (Fam. v. 20), do not doubt that I will do all.
quis ignorant quin (Flacc. 27), who is ignorant that, &c.?
neque ambiguit quin Brutus pessimo publico id facturus fuerit si priorum regum alicui regnum extorsisset (Liv. ii. 1), nor is there any question that Brutus, if he had wrested the kingdom from any one of the former kings, would have done it with the worst results to the state [direct discourse, fecisset].

h. Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of saying or as words of commanding, effecting and the like, and may be construed accordingly: as,

sequitur illico esse causas immutabiles (Fat. 12), it follows directly that there are unalterable causes. [The regular construction with sequor used of a logical sequence.]
laudem sapientiae statuo esse maximam (Div. v. 13), I hold that the glory of wisdom is the greatest.
statuunt ut decem milia hominum mittantur (B. G. xii. 21),
young men shall be sent.
res ipsa monebat tempus esse (Att. x. 8). the thing itself warned
that it was time [monere ut, warn to do something].
fac mihi esse persuasum (N. D. i. 27), suppose that I am per-
suaded of that [facere ut, accomplish that].
hoc volunt persuadere non interire animos (B. G. vi. 13), they
wish to convince that souls do not perish.
huic persuadet uti ad hostes transeat (B. G. iii. 18), persuades
him to pass over to the enemy.

Nota. — The infinitive, with a subject, in this construction is in-
direct discourse, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive
sometimes found with these verbs.

5. Indicative with quod. The clause in the Indicative
with quod is used (more commonly as Subject) when the
statement is regarded as a fact: as,
alterum est vitium, quod quidam nimis magnum studium
conferunt (Off. i. 6), it is another fault, that some bestow too
much zeal, &c. [Here ut with the subjunctive could be
used, meaning that they should, or the accusative and in-
formative, meaning to more abstractly; quod makes it a fact that
men do, &c.]
inter inanimum et animal hoc maxime interest, quod animal
agit aliquid (Ac. ii. 12), there is this chief difference, &c.,
that an animal has an aim.
quod rediit nobis mirabile videtur (Off. iii. 21), that he [Reg-
ulus] returned seems wonderful to us. [Redisse would mean
he should have returned.]

a. In colloquial language, the clause with quod appears as
an accusative of specification, corresponding to the English
WHEREAS: as,
quod de domo scribis (Fam. xiv. 2), as to what you write of
the house.
quod mihi de nostro statu gratularis, minime miramur te tuis
praecelis operibus laetari (Att. i. 5), as to your congratulat-
ing me on our condition, no wonder you are pleased with your
own noble works.

b. Verbs of feeling and its expression take either quod (qua)
or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse): as,
quod scribis ... gaudeo (Q. F. iii. 1). I am glad that you write.
qua perfecta esse vehementer laetor (Rosc. Am. 47), I greatly
rejoice that this is finished.
facio libenter quod eam non possum praetereire (Leg. i. 24). I
am glad that I cannot pass it by.

Remark. — Rarely, an apparent substantive clause, with miror
and similar expressions, is introduced by si (really a Protasis): as,
miror si quemquam amicum habere potuit (Læl. 15), I should
wonder if he could ever have a friend.
71. Questions.

Questions are introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.

The Interrogative Particles are, an, utrum, num, and the enclitic -ne (see page 86). For other interrogative words, see list, page 49.

1. Interrogative Particles. The enclitic -ne is used in questions asked for information merely; nonne, when the answer yes, and num when the answer no, is expected or implied: as,

meministine me in senatu dicere (Cat. i. 3), do you remember my saying in the senate?
nonne animadvertis quam multi salvi pervenerint (N. D. iii. 37), do you not observe how many have come through safe?
num dubium est (Rosc. Am. 37), there is no doubt, is there?

Remark.—The interrogative particle is sometimes omitted:
as,
patere tua consilia non sentis (Cat. i. 1), do you not see that your plans are manifest?

a. In Indirect Questions, num loses its peculiar force: as,
quaero num aliter evenirent (Fat. 3). I ask whether they would turn out differently.

b. The form of Indirect questions is the same as that of Direct; the difference being only in the verb, which regularly takes the subjunctive (§ 67, 2).

Remark.—In English, indirect questions are introduced by interrogatives, or by the particle whether.

c. The enclitic -ne is often added to interrogative words when not required: as, utrumne, numne, anne.

d. The expressions nescio an, dubito an, and the like, incline to the Affirmative,—I don’t know but.

2. Double Questions. In Double or Alternative Questions, utrum or -ne, whether, stands in the first member; an, anne, or; annot, necne, or not, in the second: as,

utrum nescis, an pro nihilo id putas (Fam. x. 26), don’t you know? or do you think nothing of it?
quærō servosne an liberos (Rosc. Am. 27). I ask whether slaves or free. [Here servos aut liberos would mean, were there any, either slaves or free.]

Remark.—In direct questions, an non is more frequently found in the alternative; in indirect, necne.

a. The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; when -ne (anne, necne) may stand in the second: as,

Gabinio dicam anne Pompeio (Manil. 19), shall I say to Gabinius or to Pompey?
sunt hæc tua verba necne (Tusc. iii. 18), are these your words or not?

b. Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied; and an (anne) alone asks a question—usually with indignation or surprise: as,

an tu miserors putas illos (Tusc. i. 7), what! do you think those men wretched?

c. The second member may be omitted, when utrum asks a question to which there is no alternative: as,

utrum in clarissimis est civibus is quem... (Flacc. 19), is he among the noblest citizens, whom, &c.

d. The following exhibits the various forms of alternative questions:

- utrum... an
- -... an (anne)
- -ne... an
- -... -ne

3. Question and Answer. As there is no word in Latin meaning simply yes or no, in answering a question the verb is generally repeated: as,

valetne, is he well? valet, yes (he is well).
eratne tecum, was he with you? non erat, no (he was not).

a. An intensive or negative particle is sometimes used in answer to a direct question: thus immo (nay but), vero (in truth), or etiam (even so) may have the meaning of yes; and non (not), or minime (least-of-all), of no.

b. In the answer to an alternative question, one member of the alternative must be repeated: as,

tune an frater erat, was it you or your brother?
egō [eram], it was I.
72. Participles.

The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an adjective; but has a partial distinction of tense, and generally governs the case of its verb.

1. Distinctions of Tense. The Present participle denotes the action as not completed; the Perfect as completed; the Futuro as still to take place.

a. Present. The Present participle has several of the irregular uses of the present indicative (compare § 58, 2) : as,

quærenti mihi jam diu certa res nulla veniebat in mentem (Fam. iv. 13). though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind (cf. ib. a).

C. Flaminio restitit agrum Picentem dividenti (Cat. M. 4), he resisted Flaminius while attempting to divide, &c. (cf. b).

iens in Pompeianum bene mane hæc scripsi (Att. iv. 9), I write this when about going to my place at Pompeii (cf. c).

Hence it is used in late writers to denote purpose.

b. Perfect. The Perfect participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present. Such are, regularly, ratus, solitus, veritus; commonly, fìsus, ausus, secutus, and occasionally others, especially in later writers: as,

cohortatus milites docuit (B. C. iii. 80), encouraging the men, he showed, &c.

iratus dixisti (Mur. 30). you spoke in a passion.
obitus auspicia (Phil. i. 13), forgetting the auspices.
insidias veritus (B. G. ii. 11), fearing ambuscade.
imperio potitus (Liv. xxi. 2), holding the command.
ad pugnam congressi (id. iv. 10), meeting in fight.

rem incredibilem rati (Sall. C. 48), thinking it incredible.

c. The present participle, wanting in the Passive, is usually supplied by a clause with dum or cum; rarely by the participle in dus: as,

Dic. hospes, Sparta, nos te hic vidisse jacentes,
Dum sanctis patriæ legibus obsequimur.
Tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that we lie here obedient to our country's sacred laws. [Here dum obsequimur is a translation of the Greek πειθομενοι.]
crucibus adjici aut flammandi (Ann. xv. 44), crucified or set on fire [compare note under § 73].
2. Adjective use. The present and perfect participles are used sometimes as attributes, nearly like adjectives: as,
cum antiquissimam sententiam tum comprobatum (Div. i. 5),
a view at once most ancient and approved.
signa nunquam fere ementientia (id. 9), signs hardly ever
deceitful.
auspiciis utuntur coactis (id. 15), they use forced auspices.

a. Thus they are used, like adjectives, as nouns: as,
sibi indulgentes et corpori deservientes (Leg. i. 13), the self-
indulgent, and slaves to the body.
recte facta paria esse debent (Par. iii. 1), right deeds ought to
be like in value.
male parta male dilabuntur (Phil. ii. 27), ill got, ill spent.
consuetudo valentis (De Or. ii. 44), the habit of a man in health.

b. So, also, they are connected with nouns by esse and simi-
lar verbs: as,
videtis ut senectus sit operosa et semper agens aliquid et
moliens (Cat. M. 8), you see how busy old age is, always
aiming and trying at something.
Gallia est omnis divisa (B. G. i. 1), all Gaul is divided.
locus qui nunc saepus est (Liv. i. 8), the place which is now
enclosed.

c. From this adjective use arise the compound tenses of the
passive,—the participle of completed action with the incomplete
tenses of esse developing the idea of past time: as,
interfectus est, he was (or has been) killed, lit., he is having-
been-killed [i.e., already slain].

d. In the best writers (as Cicero) this participle, when used
with the tenses of completed action, retains its proper force; but
in later writers the two sets of tenses (as, amatus sum or fui)
are often used indiscriminately: as,
[leges] cum quae late sunt tum vero quae promulgata fuerunt
(Sest. 25), the laws, both those which were proposed, and
those which were published. [The proposal of the laws was
a single act: hence late sunt is a pure perfect. The publish-
ing, or posting, was a continued state, which is indicated by
promulgatae, and fuerunt is the pure perfect.]
arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt (Div.
i. 34), the arms which had been fastened on the walls were
found upon the ground. [Compare occupati sunt et fuerunt
(Off. i. 17): the difference between this and the preceding
is, that occupatus can be used only as an adjective.]

3. Predicate use. The Present and Perfect participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a clause
would be used to express *time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic, manner, circumstance*: as,

veroe ne turpe sit dicere incipientem (Mil. 1), *I fear it may be a dishonor [to me] when beginning to speak.*

salutem insperantibus reddidisti (Marc. 7), *you have restored a safety which we did not hope.*

nemo ei neganti non credidisset (Mil. 19), *no one would have disbelieved him when he denied.*

**Remark.** — This use is especially frequent in the Ablative Absolute (see § 54, 10, b and Note). A co-ordinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle; and a participle with a negative expresses the same idea which in English is given by without: as,

imprudentibus nostris (B. G. v. 15), *while our men were not looking.*

miserum est nihil proficiantem angi (N. D. iii. 5), *it is wretched to vex one’s self without effecting anything.*

instructos ordines in locum æquum deducit (Sall. C. 59), *he draws up the limes, and leads them to level ground.*

ut hos transductos necaret (B. G. v. 5), *that he might carry them over and put them to death.*

**a.** A noun and passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea (compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek: G. 280): as,

ante conditam condendamve urbem (Liv. Pref.), *before the city was built or building.*

illi libertatem civium Romanorum immindatam non tulerunt; *vos vitam ereptam negligetis (Manil. 5), they did not endure the infringement of the citizens’ liberty; will you disregard the destruction of their life?*

So with *opus: as,*

opus est viatico facto (Plaut. Trin.), *there is need of laying in provision.*

maturato opus est (Livy viii. 13), *there is no need of haste.*

[Here there is no noun, as the verb is used impersonally.]

**b.** The perfect participle with *habeo* (rarely with other verbs) is almost the same in meaning as a perfect active: as,

fidem quem habent spectatam jam et diu cognitam (Div. C. 4), *my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.*

(Hence the perfect with *have* in modern languages.)

**c.** The perfect participle, with verbs of *effecting, effort,* or the like (also with *volo* where *esse* may be understood, cf. § 70, 3, b), expresses more forcibly the idea of the verb: as,

praefectos suos multi missos fecerunt (Verr. iv. 58), *many discharged their officers.*
hic transactum reddet omne (Capt. 345), he will get it all done.
me excusatum volo (Verr. i. 40), I wish to be excused.

d. The present participle is sometimes nearly equivalent to an
infinitive, but expresses the action more vividly (after facio, in-
duco, and the like, used of authors, and after verbs of sense): as,
Xenophon facit Socraticum disputantem (N. D. i. 11), Xenophon
represents Socrates disputing.

4. Future Participle. The Future Participle (except
futurus and venturus) is rarely used in simple agreement
with a noun, except by later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with esse in a peri-
phrastic conjugation (see § 40, a): as,
morere, Diogora, non enim in cælum adscensurus es (Tusc. i.
46), die, for you are not likely to go to heaven.
conclave illud ubi erat mansurus si . . . (Div. i. 15), that cham-
ber where he would have staid if, &c.
sperat adolescens diu se victurum (Cat. M. 19), the young man
hopes to live long (§ 67, 1).
neque petiturus unquam consulatum videretur (Off. iii. 20),
and seemed unlikely ever to seek the consulship.

By later writers it is also used in simple agreement to express
likelihood or purpose, or even an apodosis: as,
cum leo regem invasurus incurreret (Q. C. viii. 1), when a
lion rushed on to attack the king.
rediit bellis casum de integro tentaturus (Liv. xvii. 62), he re-
turned to try the chances of war anew.
ausus est rem plus famæ habituram (Liv. ii. 10), he dared a
thing which would have more repute.

[See also examples in § 59, 1, b.]

b. With past tenses of esse, the future participle is often
equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (§ 59, 3, c).

5. Gerundive. The Gerundive, in its participial or ad-
jective use, denotes necessity or propriety.

a. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and per-
fec t participles, in simple agreement with a noun: as,
fortem et conservandum virum (Mil. 38), a brave man, and
worthy to be preserved.

b. The most frequent use of the gerundive is with esse in a
second periphrastic conjugation (§ 40, b): as,
non agitanda res erit (Verr. vi. 70), will not the thing have to
be agitated?
Remark.—The gerundive in this construction is passive in meaning. But in early Latin, and occasionally elsewhere, it is used impersonally, governing the accusative; and it is regularly so used with utor, fruor, &c., governing the ablative (sometimes called the nominative of the gerund): as,

via quam nobis ingrediendum sit (Cat. M. 2), the way we have to enter.

agitantandum vigilias (Trin. 369), I have got to stand guard.

[Compare Greek verbal in -tēs, G. 281.]

c. It is also used to denote purpose after verbs signifying to give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand: as,

redemptor qui columnam illam conduxerat faciendam (Div. ii. 21), the contractor who had undertaken to make that column [the regular construction with this class of verbs].

ādem Castoris habuit tuendam (Verr. ii. 59), he had the temple of Castor to take care of.

naves atque onera diligenter adservanda curabat (id. vi. 56),
he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept.

For the Gerundive after verbs of decreeing, see § 70, 3, d.
For the Ablative Absolute, see § 54, 10, b.

73. Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Gerund. The Gerund is a verbal noun, retaining the government of the verb, and modified by adverbs, but in grammatical construction following the same rules as nouns.

Remark.—The use of the Gerund, in the oblique cases, corresponds to the use of the Infinitive as Subject (§ 57, 8, a), its nominative form being found only in the impersonal use of the participle in dūs: as,

ars bene disserendi et vera ac falsa dijudicandi (De Or. ii. 38),
the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and false. [Here the verbal nouns discoursing and distinguishing, if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitive disserere and dijudicare.]

juveni paranum. seni utendum est (Sen. Ep. 36), it is for the young to get, for the old to enjoy (compare § 51, 3, 4).

2. Gerundive. When the gerund would have an object in the accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead, agreeing with the noun, and in the case which the gerund would have had: as,

paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda (B. G. i. 5), readier to undergo all dangers. [Here subeunda agrees with pericula, which is itself governed by ad: the construction with the gerund would be, ad subeundum, &c.; ad governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative pericula.]
exercendae memoriae gratia (Off. i. 15), for the sake of training the memory. [Here the gerund construction would be, exercendo memoriam.]

Remark.—The verbs utor, fruor, &c. (§ 54, 6, d), are treated like verbs governing the Accusative, as they do in early Latin: as,

expetuntur divitiæ ad perfruendas voluptates (Off. i. 8), riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasure.

Note.—The gerundive construction is probably the original one. The participle in duss seems to have had a present passive force as in secundus (from sequor), rotundus, vulcendus dies (Virg.), flammandi (Tac.), from which the idea of necessity was developed through that of futurity, as in the development of the subjunctive. Consiliwm urbis delectare would thus have meant a plan of a city being destroyed [in process of destruction], then about to be destroyed, then to be destroyed, then a plan of destroying the city, the two words becoming fused together as in ub urbe condita. The gerund is simply an impersonal use of the participle, in its original present sense, retaining the case of its verb, as in agitandum est vigilias; quid opus est facto?

3. Construction. The Gerund (if of transitive verbs with a noun in government) and the Gerundive (with a noun in agreement) are used, in the oblique cases, in the constructions of nouns, as follows:—

a. Genitive. The Genitive is used after nouns or adjectives in the constructions of the objective genitive (§ 50, 3); more rarely in the predicate after esse, or as a genitive of quality: as neque consiliwm habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato (B. G. iv. 14), time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms [objective genitive after spatio].
ne conservandæ quidem patriæ causâ (Off. i. 45), not even in order to save the country.

vivendi finis est optimus (Cat. M. 20). it is the best end of life.
non tam commutandarum rerum quam evertendarum cupidid (id. ii. 1), desirous not so much of changing as of destroying the state.

quæ res evertendæ reipublicæ soleat esse (Verr. iii. 53), which things generally tend to the overthrow of the commonwealth.
cognoscendæ antiquitatis (Ann. ii. 59), to study old times.
[Here gratia is, by a rare construction, omitted.]
The genitive of the Gerund is, in a few cases, used (like a noun) with the genitive of an object agreeing neither in gender nor number: as,
ejus videndi cupidus (Ter. Hec.), eager to see her.
reicendi trium judicium potestas (Inv. ii. 2), the power of challenging three jurors.

Remark.—In the genitive, the construction of the gerund and gerundive are about equally common.
b. Dative. The Dative is used after the adjectives (and rarely nouns) which are followed by the dative of nouns (§ 51, 6); also, in a few expressions after verbs: as,
praeeesse agro colendo (Rosc. Am. 18), *to take charge of tillage.*
esse solvendo, *to be able to pay.*
genus armorum aptum tegendis corporibus (Liv. xxxii. 10), *a sort of armor suited to the defense of the body.*
reliqua tempora demetiendis fructibus et percipiendis accommodate sunt (Cat. M. 19), *the other seasons are fitted to reap and gather in the harvest.*
diem praestituit operi faciendo (Verr. ii. 56), *he appointed a day for doing the work.*

It is also used in certain phrases belonging to the civil law, after nouns meaning officers, offices, elections, &c.: as,
comitia consulibus rogandis (Div. i. 17), *elections for nominating consuls.*
triumvirum coloniis deductundis (Jug. 42), *a triumvir for leading out colonies.*

c. Accusative. The Accusative is used after the prepositions ad, inter, circa, ob (rarely in and ante); most frequently after ad, denoting *purpose* (compare § 72, 4): as,
vivis non ad deponendam sed ad confirmandam audaciam (Cat. i. 2), *you live, not to put off, but to confirm your daring.*
inter agendum (Ecl. ix. 24), *while driving.*
me vocas ad scribendum (Or. 10), *you call me to write.*

d. Ablative. The Ablative is used to express *means or instrument;* also *manner* (often by later writers, in a sense equivalent to the present participle); after *comparatives;* and after the prepositions ab, de, ex, in, and (rarely) pro and cum: as,
multa pollicendo persuadet (Jug. 46), *he persuades by large promises.*

his ipsis legendis (Cat. M. 7), *by reading these very things.*
nullum officium referendâ gratiâ magis necessarium est (Off. i. 15), *no duty is more important than gratitude.*
in re gerendâ versari (Cat. M. 6), *to be employed in affairs.*
Latine loquendo cuivis par (Brut. 34), *equal to any man in speaking Latin.*
nullis virtutis praeeptis tradendis (Off. i. 2), *without giving any precepts of virtue.*

obscuram atque humilem conciendo ad se multitudinem (Liv. i. 8), *calling to them a mean and obscure multitude.*

Remark. — The gerund is occasionally found in apposition with a noun: as,
ad res diversissimas, parendum atque imperandum (Livy, xxii. 3), *for the most widely different things obeying and commanding.*

Note. — From the ablative of manner comes the Italian and Spanish form of the participle, the true participle form becoming an adjective.
74. SUPINE.

The Supine is a verbal noun, having no distinction of tense or person, and is limited to two uses.

**Note.** — The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension. The form in **um** is the accusative of the end of motion. The form in **u** is probably dative of purpose, though possibly ablative.

1. Former Supine. The Supine in **um** is used after verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion; it governs the case of its verb, and is modified by adverbs: as,

quid est, imusne sessum? etsi admonitum venimus te, non flagitatum (De Or. iii. 5), how now, shall we be seated?

though we have come to remind not to entreat you.

nuptum collocássæ (B. G. i. 18), to establish in marriage.

venerunt questum injurias (Liv. iii. 25), they came to complain of wrongs.

**Remark.** — The supine in **um** is used especially after **eo**; and with the passive infinitive **iri** forms the future infinitive passive (see § 55, 3, b, Rem.): as,

fuère cives qui rempublicam perditum irent (Sall. C. 36), there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic.

non Graulis servitum matribus ibo (Æn. ii. 786), I shall not go in slavery to the Grecian dames.

si scisset se trucidatum iri (Div. ii. 9), if he [Pompey] had known that he was going to be murdered.

2. Latter Supine. The Supine in **u** is used only after a few adjectives, and the nouns **fas**, **nefas**, and **opus**, to denote that in respect to which the quality is asserted: as,

O rem non modo visu fœdam, sed etiam auditu (Phil. ii. 25),

a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of!

quærunt quid optimum factu sit (Verr. ii. 27), they ask what is best to do.

humanum factu aut inceptu (Andr. 236), a human thing to do or undertake.

si hoc fas est dictu (Tusc. v. 13), if this is lawful to say.

So rarely with verbs: as,

pudet dictu (Agric. 32), it is shame to tell.

**Remark.** — The supine in **u** is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote ease, difficulty, and the like. But with **facilis**, **difficilis**, **jucundus**, the construction of **ad** with the gerund is more common. The Infinitive is often used in the same signification, by the poets, with all these adjectives.
75. **General Rules of Syntax.**

1. Nouns meaning the same thing agree in case (§ 46).
2. Adjectives agree with Nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case* (47).
3. Possessive Adjectives are used for the genitive, and in any case may have a genitive in agreement (47, 5).
4. Relatives agree with their antecedents in *gender* and *number*; their *case* depending on the construction of their clause (48).
5. A Verb agrees with its Subject in *number* and *person* (49).
6. Two or more singular subjects—also collective nouns, with *quisque* and *uterque*—may take a plural verb (49, 1).
7. The Subject of a finite verb is in the **NOMINATIVE** (49, 2).
8. A Noun used to limit or define another is in the **GENITIVE** (50).
9. The Genitive is used to denote the *author, owner, source, and* (with adjectives) *measure or quality* (50, 1).
10. Words denoting a *part* are followed by the genitive of the *whole* to which the part belongs (50, 2).
11. Certain adjectives of Quantity are used in the genitive to express indefinite Value (50, 1, 4).
12. Many words of *memory* and *feeling, knowledge or ignorance, fulness and want,*—also verbals and participles used as adjectives,—govern the genitive (50, 3).
13. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting* take the genitive of the charge or penalty (50, 4, 6).
14. The **DATIVE** is the case of the Indirect Object (51).
15. Words of *likeness, fitness, nearness, service, or help* are followed by the dative (51, 5, 6).
16. Verbs meaning to *favor, help, please, serve, trust,* and their contraries,—also to believe, persuade, command, obey, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare,—govern the dative (51, 2, a).
17. The Dative is used after *esse, to be,* to denote the Owner (51, 3).
18. Most verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, pre, pro, sub, super,* govern the dative (51, 2, d).
19. Verbs of giving, telling, sending, and the like,—and sometimes of comparing and taking away,—govern the accusative and dative (51, 1).
20. The dative is used to denote the *purpose or end;* often with another dative of the person or thing affected (51, 5).
21. The **ACCUSATIVE** is the case of the Direct Object (52).
22. The subject of the Infinitive mood is in the accusative (52, 4, 6).
23. Time *how long* and Distance *how far* are in the accusative.
24. The accusative is used *adverbially,* or for specification (52, 3).
25. Verbs of naming, choosing, asking, and teaching govern two accusatives (52, 2).
26. The Ablative is used of *cause, manner, means, instrument, quality, specification*, and *price* (54).

27. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is in the ablative with *ab* (54, 4).

28. Words denoting *separation* and *plenty or want*—also *opus* and *usus* signifying *need*—govern the ablative (54, 1).

29. Participles denoting *birth or origin* govern the ablative (54, 2, a).

30. The adjectives *dignus, indignus, — with many verbals, as contentus, fretus, laetus, præditus,—govern the ablative* (54, 3, a; 10, a).

31. The deponents *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vesoor, and their compounds, govern the ablative* (54, 6, d).

32. Comparatives may take the ablative instead of *quam, than*.

33. Degree of Difference is put in the ablative (54, 6, e).

34. Time *at or within which* is put in the ablative (55, 1).

35. Ablative Absolute. A Subject and Predicate in the ablative are used to define the *time or circumstances* of an action.

36. The name of the Town *where* is in form like the Genitive of singular names in *us, a, um*, otherwise Dative or Ablative; *that whither* in the Accusative, and *whence* in the Ablative. So of *domus, rur* (also *humi, belli, militia*), and many names of Islands.

37. With other words (including names of Countries) Prepositions are used to denote *where, whither, or whence*.

38. The Infinitive is used like a neuter noun, as the Subject or Object, or to complete the action of a verb (57, 8, a).

39. The Infinitive, with subject-accusative, is regularly used after words of *knowing, thinking, telling*, and the like (57, 8, e).

40. Historical Infinitive. The Infinitive is often used for tenses of the indicative in narration (57, 8, h).

41. The Gerund, governing the case of its verb, or the Gerundive in agreement with a noun, has the construction of a verbal noun.

42. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of *motion*; the Supine in *u* after adjectives.

43. The Subjunctive is used independently to denote a *wish, command, or concession* (57, 2), also in *doubtful questions*.

44. Relatives or Conjunctions implying *purpose or result,—also of relative time or characteristic,—require the Subjunctive*.

45. Indirect Questions take a verb in the subjunctive (67, 2).

46. The Subjunctive present and perfect are used in *future conditions; the imperfect and pluperfect in those contrary to fact*.

47. Dependent clauses in Indirect Discourse, or in a subjunctive construction, *take the subjunctive*.

48. In the sequence of Tenses, primary tenses are followed by primary, and secondary by secondary (58, 10).
76. **Arrangement.**

In Latin the words do not follow the order of construction, yet they have a regular arrangement. This, however, is constantly modified for emphasis, harmony, and clearness.

1. **Normal Order.** Regularly the subject stands first, followed by its modifiers; the verb last, preceded by the words which depend upon it: as,

   civis Romanus sum (not sum Romanus civis).
   voluptates blandissimae dominae majores partes animi a virtute detorquen (Off. ii. 10).

   a. A predicate nominative, as the most important part of the predicate, is often placed after the copula: as,
   
   qui Athenis est mortuus (id. 24).
   
   hæc ad judicandum sunt facillima (id. iii. 6).

   b. The forms of esse meaning there is, &c., often come first in the sentence: as,

   sunt quaedam officia quæ aliis magis quam aliis debeatur (Off. i. 18).

   c. A numeral adjective, or one essential to the meaning of the phrase, goes before its noun; one simply descriptive commonly follows: as,

   omnes homines decet.
   est viri magni rebus agitatis punire sones (Off. i. 24).
   omnis actio vacare debet temeritate et neglegentiâ (id. 29).
   cum aliquæ perturbatione (id. i. 38).
   Lælius et sapiens et amicitiae gloriam excellens (Læl. i).

   d. A Demonstrative pronoun precedes the noun, Relatives stand first in their sentence or clause, Adverbs stand directly before the word they qualify.

2. **Emphasis.** Inversion of the above order gives emphasis.

   a. Particularly the verb comes first and the subject last. This makes either or both emphatic: as,

   dicebat idem C. Curio (Off. ii. 17).

   b. Any word closely connected with the preceding sentence comes first, and with the following last: as,

   ac duabus iis personis quas supra dixi tertia adjungitur (Off. i. 32).
ARRANGEMENT.

objecit [Cato] ut probrum M. Nobiliiori quod is in provinciam poētas duxisset; duxerat autem consul ille in Αεтолiam ut scimus Ennium (Tusc. i. 2).

maxime perturbantur officia in amicitiiis; quibus et non tribuere quod recte possis, et tribuere quod non sit æquum, contra officium est (Off. iii. 10).

c. A word or phrase inserted between the parts of compound tenses becomes emphatic: as,

ille reprehensus a multis est (N. D. ii. 38).

d. A modifier of a noun and adjective or participle is often placed between them. So in the gerundive construction: as,

de communi hominum memorìa (Tusc. i. 24).
de uno imperatore contra prædones constituendo (Manil. 17).

e. Sometimes a noun and its attribute are separated as far as possible, so as to include less important words: as,

objugationes etiam nonnunquam incidunt necessariae (Off. i. 38).

f. One pair of ideas is set off against another, either in the same order or in exactly the opposite order. The latter, which is very common, is called chiasmus from the Greek Χ on account of the cross arrangement. Thus,

rerum copia verborum copiam gignit (De Or. iii. 3, 31).
pro vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur (B. G. vi. 16).
leges supplicio improbos afficiunt, defendunt ac tuentur bonos (Fin. iii. 3).
non igitur utilitatem amicitia, sed utilitas amicitiam consecuta est (Lael. 14). [Here the arrangement of cases only is chiastic, that of ideas is regular.]

g. Different forms of the same word are often placed together, also words from the same root.

h. A favorite order with the poets is the interlocked, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other. This is often joined with chiasmus: as,

et superjecto pavide natârunt æquore damœ (H. Od. i. 2, 11).
arma nondum expiatis uncta cruoribus (id. ii. 1, 5).

3. Special Rules.

a. Prepositions regularly precede their nouns (except tenus and versus), but they are often placed between a noun and adjective: as,

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; magno cum metu; omnibus cum copiis; nullâ in re.
b. Itaque regularly comes first in its sentence, or clause; enim, autem, vero, quoque, never first, but usually second, sometimes third if the second word is emphatic; quidem never first, but after the emphatic word: ne...quidem include the emphatic word or words.

c. Inquam, inquit, &c., credo, opinor, quaeso, used parenthetically, always follow one or more words.

d. The negative precedes the word it especially affects; but if it belongs to no one word, it begins the sentence.

4. Structure. Latin expresses the relation of words to each other by inflection, rather than by position, like modern languages. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence as a whole, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word, which usually expresses the main action or motive.

An English sentence does not often admit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the early writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following: —

"High on a throne of royal state, which far
Outshine the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat."

Paradise Lost, Book II. 1-5.
PART THIRD.

RULES OF VERSE (PROSODY).

77. Rhythm.

1. The Poetry of the ancients was not composed, like modern poetry, according to accent and rhyme; but was measured, like music, by the length of the syllables, or vowel sounds. The measured flow of verse is called Rhythm.

2. Each syllable is considered as either long or short,—
in Quantity or length (not in Quality or sound, as we speak of the long or short vowel-sounds in English); a long syllable being reckoned in length equal to two short ones (see p. 3).

Remark.—The quantity of radical or stem-syllables—as of short a in pater or of long a in mater—can be learned only by observation or practice, unless determined by the general rules of Quantity. Most of the rules of Prosody are only arbitrary rules for the purposes of memory; the syllables being long or short because the ancients pronounced them so. In those cases which cannot be conveniently grouped, the quantity is shown by the actual practice of the ancients, and is said to be determined by the authority of the Poets,—the principal means we have of learning it. In some inscriptions, however, the long vowels are distinguished in various ways, by marks over the letters, or by doubling.

Owing to the practice of Roman poets of borrowing very largely from the poetry and mythology of the Greeks, numerous Greek words, especially proper names, make an important part of Latin poetry. These words are generally employed in accordance with the Greek and not the Latin laws of quantity. Where these vary in any important point, they will be noticed in the rules given below.

78. Rules of Quantity.


a. A vowel before another vowel is short: as, via, traho.

Remark.—The aspirate h, as in the example above, is not reckoned as a Consonant in the rules of prosody (See § 1, 1, Note).
EXCEPTIONS.—1. In the genitive form us (§ 16, 1, b), i is long. It is, however, sometimes made short in verse.

2. In the fifth declension (genitive and dative singular), e is long between two vowels: as, diēi; but is short after a consonant, as in fidēi.

3. In fio (§ 37, 4), i is long except when followed by er: as, fio, sīebam, fiam, fieri, fierem.

4. In the terminations āius and ēius, a and e are long: as in Cāius, Pompēius; also in the verb āio, and genitives in āi.

5. In many Greek proper names, the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and is consequently long: as, Trōēs, Thālia, hērōēs. But many Greek words are more or less Latinized in this respect as Acadēmēa, chorēa.

b. A Diphthong is long: as, fōdus, cūi, cālum, dānde.

EXCEPTION.—The preposition prāe in compounds is generally short before a vowel (as in praeustia, Æn. vii. 524).

c. A vowel formed by contraction (crasis) is long: as ī in nil (for nīhil); currūs (genitive for currūs). But not where the vowels are united by syneresis, as in pariōstibus (par-yetibus).

d. A syllable in which a short vowel comes before two consonants or a double consonant — also before the letter j — is long: as, māgnus, rēx, pējor, ēt vēntia, gāsa, (but ādhuo). But if the two consonants are a mute followed by l or r, the syllable is common, — that is, it may be either long or short in verse: as, alācria, pātrībus, rēfuo.

REMARK.—Sometimes the y or v resulting from syneresis has the effect of a consonant: as, flūviōrūm rēx (G. i. 482).

e. In early Latin s at the end of words was not sounded, and hence does not make position with another consonant. In many other cases in the comic poets two consonants do not make position, especially in pronouns and particles: as, ille, īste, nēmpe.

REMARK.—A short syllable, made long under this rule, is said to be long by Position: as, in docēne. In docēsne, the same syllable is long by the general rule (2, h, below). The rules of Position do not, in general, apply to final vowels.

2. Final Syllables.

a. Words of one syllable ending in a vowel are long: as, mē, tū, hī, nē.

The attached particles -nē, -quē, -vē, -cē, ptē, and rē- (rēd-) are short; se- is long: as, sēcēdit, exercitumquē rēducit.
d. Nouns of one syllable are long: as, sŏl, ŏs (ōris), bŏs, vis.
Exceptions.—cŏr, fŏl, mŏl, ŏs (oasis), vīr, vīs (gen.).

c. Final a in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension; in all other words it is long: as, eā stellā (nominative), cum eā stellā; frustrā, vocā (imperative), postea, trigintā; also, quā (plural).
Exceptions.—eiā, itā, quiā, putā (suppose); and, in late use, trigintā, &c.

d. Final e is short, except (1) in nouns of the fifth declension; (2) in adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form; (3) in the imperative singular of the second conjugation: as, nubē, ducitē, fidē, famē (§ 11, 3. b’) quārē (quā rē), hōdiē (hoc die), monē, monētē, saepē, saepissimē.

Exceptions.—benē, malē; ferē, ferēdī; also (rarely), cavē, habē, tacē, valē, vidē; infernē, supernē.

e. Final i is long: as in turī, filī, audi. But it is common in mihi, tibi, albi, ubi, ubi; and short in nīsī, quasi, cūi (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives, as Alexī.

f. Final o is common; but long in datives and ablatives; also, usually, in verbs.

Exceptions.—citō, modō, ilicō, prosectō, dummodō, immō, egō, duō, octō.

g. Final u is long; final y is short.

h. Final as, es, os, are long; final is, us, ys are short: as, nefās, rupēs, servōs, honōs; hostīs, amīcīs, Tethyā.

Exceptions.—as is short in Greek plural accusatives, as lampadēs; and in anās.

es is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) increasing short: as milēs (Itis), obsēs (Idēs)—except abīēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs; in the present of esse (ēs, ađēs); in the preposition penēs; and in the plural of Greek nouns.

os is short in compon, impos; in some Greek endings, as barbitōs; also o for later u in the second declension, as servōs (nominative).

is in plural cases is long, as in bonīs, omnīs (accusative plural); in sis, vis, veilis, malleis, nolis; in grūtis, foris (properly plurals); in the second person singular of the fourth conjugation, as audīis (where it is the stem-vowel); and sometimes in the forms in -ēris (perfect subjunctive), where it was originally long.
us is long in the genitive singular and nominative and accusa-
tive plural of the fourth declension; and in nouns of the third
decension having ū long in the stem: as virtūs (ūtūs), incūs
(ūdīs).

4. Of other final syllables, those ending in a consonant, except
c, are short: as, ād, āc, īstūc, amāt, amatūr.

Exceptions.—donōc, fāc, nōc, sometimes ĕc; ēn, nōn,
quīn, ān; crās, plūs; cūr, pār.

3. Penultimate Syllables.

a. Increment. A Noun is said to increase, when in
any case it has more syllables than in the nominative
singular.

Thus stella is said to increase long in stellārum; and corpus
to increase short in corpūris.

Note.—The rules of increment are purely arbitrary, as the
syllables are long or short according to the proper quantity of the
stem or the formative terminations. The quantity of noun stems
appears in the schedule of the third declension (§ 11, iv. 3), and that
of terminations, under the various inflections where it is better to learn
them.

A Verb is said to increase, when in any part it has more
syllables than in the stem (inclusive of the final vowel).

Thus amo is said to increase long in amātis; and rego to
increase short in regītis.

The final syllable of an inflected word is called the termina-
nation; that immediately preceding is called the increment.

Thus, in the examples given above, the penultimate syllable is
called the increment. In itinēribus, amāvēritās, the syllables
marked are called the first, second, and third increments of the
noun or verb.

b. Nouns. In the increment of Nouns and Adjectives, a
and o are generally long; e, i, u, y, generally short (see list,
pp. 25–27): as, aetātis, honōris, servōrum; opēris, carmīnis,
murmūris, pecūdīs, chlamyōdis. Exceptions are:—

ā:—baccar (āris), hepar (ātis), jubar (āris), lar (lāris), mas
(māris), nectar (āris), par (pāris), sal (sālis), vas (vādis), daps
(dāpis), fax, anthrax (ācis).

ō:—neuters of third declension (except ōs, ōris); arbor (ōris),
scrobs (scrōbis), ops (ōpis).
RULES OF QUANTITY.

—all increments of fifth declension; heres (êdis), lex (lêgis), locuples (êtis), merces (êdis), plebs (plêbis), quies (êtis), rex (rêgis), ver (vêris).

—all most nouns and adjectives in ix: as, fêlicis, râdicis: except filix, larix, salix (cîcis), nix (nîvis), strix (strîgis); also, dis (dîtis), glis (glîris), lis (lîtis), vis (vîres), Quirites, Samnites.

—all forms from nouns in ûs: as, palûdis, tellûris, virtûtis; also lux (lûcis), frux (frûgis).

d. Verbs. In the increment of Verbs (see Tables of Inflection, pp. 66–74), the characteristic vowels are as follows: —

Of the first conjugation û: as, amûre, amâtûr.
Of the second conjugation û: as, monûre, monûtûr.
Of the third conjugation ê, û: as, regêre, regîtûr.
Of the fourth conjugation î: as, audîre, audîtûr.

Exc. —do and its compounds have û: as, dûre, circumdûbat.

In other increments —

繁忙: as, moneâris, regâmûs.

繁忙 is long in tense-endings: as, regêbâm, audiêbâr. But it is short before ram, rim, ro; in the future personal endings -bêris, bêre; and sometimes in the perfect -srunt (as stôsruntque comae, Æn. ii. 774).

繁忙 is long in forms after the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, petûvi, lacessìtûs (in others short: as, monìtûs); also in the subjunctive present of esse and velle, and (rarely) in the endings -rîmus, -rîtis; but short in the future forms amablîtis, &c.

繁忙 is found only in imperatives, and is always long.

繁忙 is short in stûmus, volâtûs, quaestûmus; in the supine and its derivatives it is long: as, solûtûrus.

d. Perfects and supines of two syllables lengthen the stem-syllable: as, jûvo, jûvi, jûtûm; vîdeo, vîdi, vîsum; fîgîo, fûgî.

Exceptions. — bîbî, dêdi (do), fîdi (fíndo), scîdi (scîndo), stêti (sto), stîti (sistô), tûli (tero); — citûm ( cîo), dâtûm (do), ëtûm (eo), ëtûm (îno), quîtûm (queo), râtûm (reor), rûtûm (ruo), sâtûm (sero), sôtûm (sino), stâtûm (sto or sistô). In some compounds of sto, stûtûm is found long, as prostûtûm.

e. Reduplicated perfects shorten both syllables: as, cêcîdî (cêdo), didîcî (disco), cêcînî (cêno); but cêcîdî from caedo, pepêdî from pêdo.


Forms from the same stem retain the original quantity: as, āmo, āmavistī, gēnus, gēneris.

Exceptions. — 1. bōs, lār, mās, pār, pēs, sāl, vās — also arbōs (not arbōr) — have a long vowel in the nominative from short stems.

2. Nouns in or, genitive ēris, have the vowel shortened before the final r: as, honōr. (But this shortening is comparatively late, so that in Plautus and some inscriptions these nominatives are often found long.)

3. Many verb-forms with original long vowel shorten it before final t: as, amēt, dicerēt (compare amēmus), audit, fit. (The final syllable in t of the perfect seems to have been originally long, but to have been shortened under this rule.)

Forms from the same root often vary in quantity from vowel-increase (see §§ 1, 3, a; 5, 2; 44, 1, a); as, dico (cf. male dio), duco (ducis), fido (perfido), vocis (vōco), legio (lēgo).

Compounds retain the quantity of the words which compose them: as, occīdo (cālo), occīdo (caedo), inīquus (aequus). Greek words compounded with προ have o short, as prōphēta, prōlōgus. Some Latin compounds of pro have o short, as praeficisco, praefiteor. Compounds with ne vary: as, nēfas, nēgo, nēqueo, nēquias, nēquam. So dejēro and pejēro from jūro.

[For the quantity of penultimate syllables in regular derivatives, see § 44, pages 97–99.]

79. Feet.

1. The most natural division of musical time is into intervals, consisting of either two or three equal parts, making what is called double or triple time; but the ancients also distinguished five equal parts. These intervals are in music called Measures; in prosody, they are called Feet.

2. The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse consist either of two or three syllables; and may be represented by musical notation, as follows: —
a. Of Two Syllables.
1. \( \frac{2}{8} \) | || || | Pyrrhic (\( \sim \)) : as, bönüs.
2. \( \frac{3}{8} \) | || || | Trochee or Chorée (\( \sim \)) : as, càrdís.
3. \( \frac{3}{8} \) | || || | Iambus (\( \sim \)) : as, bönös.
4. \( \frac{2}{4} \) | || || | Spondeè (\( \sim \)) : as, càrös.

b. Of Three Syllables.
1. \( \frac{2}{4} \) | || || || | Dactyl (\( \sim \)) : as, dêttûtít.
2. \( \frac{2}{4} \) | || || || | Anapaest (\( \sim \)) : as, dêmînös.
3. \( \frac{2}{4} \) | || || || | Amphibrach (\( \sim \)) : as, âmîcûs.
4. \( \frac{3}{8} \) | || || || | Tribrach (\( \sim \)) : as, hômînîs.
5. \( \frac{3}{4} \) | || || || | Molossus (\( \sim \)) : as, fiûgerûnt (rare).

Of three syllables, but more than three units of time.
6. || || || | Amphimacer or Cretic (\( \sim \)) : as, ëgêrânt.
7. || || || | Bacchius (\( \sim \)) : as, règêbânt.

c. Of Four Syllables.
1. Choriambus (trochee, iambus) : as, dêttûlërânt.
2. Greater Ionic (spondee, pyrrhic) : as, dêjëcërât.
3. Lesser Ionic (pyrrhic, spondee) : as, rètûlissênt.
4. The first, second, third, or fourth Epitriteus has a short syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place with three long syllables.
5. The first, second, third, or fourth Pæon has a long syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place with three short syllables.
6. The Proceleusmatic consists of four short syllables, as ëpërîbûs.

Note.—Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or chant; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or music, often to be accompanied by measured movements or dance. But in reading, it is not usual, though it is better, to keep the strict measure of time; and often accent is substituted for rhythm, as in English poetry.
d. In general, feet of the same time can be substituted for each other, and two short syllables may stand for a long one. In the latter case, the long syllable is said to be resolved.

Thus the Spondee may take the place of the dactyl or anapest, the Tribrach of the trochee or iambus; the Proceleumatic, or a Dactyl standing for an anapest, is the resolution of a spondee.

When a long syllable having the ictus is resolved, the ictus properly belongs to both the short syllables; but the accent to indicate it is placed on the first: as,

Núnc experiar | sitne aceto | tibi cor acre in | pectore.

S. Bacch. 405.

3. Arsis and Thesis. The accented syllable of each foot is called the Arsis; and the unaccented part the Thesis.

Note.—The name Arsis meant originally the raising of the foot in beating time ("upward beat"), and Thesis the putting down ("downward beat"); but these terms came, in later use, to signify respectively the raising and depression of the voice. (See Mar. Vict. Chap. ix.)

4. Ictus. Accent, in prosody, is called Ictus,—that is, the beat of the foot, as in a dance or march.

5. Caesura. The end of a word interrupting a foot is called Caesura; and when this coincides with a rhetorical break in the sense, it is called the Caesura of the verse.

Note.—The position of the principal Caesura is important, as affecting the melody or rhythm. See description of verses below.

80. Scanning.

1. Verse. A single line in poetry, or a series of feet set in metrical order, is called a Verse (i.e. a turning back).

To divide the verse, in reading, into its appropriate feet, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called Scanning or Scansion (i.e. climbing, or advance by steps).

A verse lacking a syllable at the beginning is called Acephalous (headless); lacking a syllable at the end, it is called Catalectic (stopped); complete, Acatalectic. Sometimes a verse appears to have a superfluous syllable, and is then called Hypercatalectic.

The word Verse (versus, a turning) is opposed to Prose (pros- sus or pro-versus, straight ahead).
2. *Elision.* In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) — sometimes even at the end of a verse — is dropped, when the next word begins with a vowel or with h. This is called Synalepha (*smearing*), or Elision (*bruising*); or, at the end of a verse, Synapheia (*binding*).

A final m, with the preceding vowel, is dropped in like manner: this is called Ecthipsis. (Hence a final syllable in m is said to have no quantity of its own; its vowel, in any case, being either elided, or else made long by position.) Thus in the verse:—

Monstrum horrendum informe ingens—cui lumen ademptum.

*Aen.* iii. 658.

**Note.**—The practice of Elision is followed in Italian and French poetry, and is sometimes adopted in English, particularly in the older poets: as,

T' inveigle and invite th' unwary sense.—*Comus,* 538.

In early Latin poetry, a syllable ending in s was often elided, even before a consonant: as,

Senio confectu' quiescit.—*Ennius* (quoted in Cat. M. 5).

3. *Hiatus.* Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This is called Hiatus (*gaping*).

4. A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause: it is then said to be long by Cæsura. (This usage is comparatively rare, most cases where it appears being caused by the retention of an original long quantity.)

Nostrorum obriumur, oriturque miserrima cædes.—*Aen.* ii. 411.

5. The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short (except in some forms of Anapæstic and Ionic verse).

81. *Metre.*

1. Metre is the regular combination of feet in verse, and is named from its most frequent and ruling foot: as, Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Anapæstic, Choriambic.
224 PROSODY.  [81. 82: 1.

NOTE. — The ruling foot, so called, always consists of a combination of long and short syllables, and is therefore never a pyrrhic or spondee.

The shorter feet (Lambus, Trochee) are counted not by single feet, but by pairs (dipodies), so that six lambi make a trimeter, &c.

2. A Verse consists of a given number of feet arranged metrically. It is named from the number of feet (or pairs) it contains, as Hexameter, Trimeter.

3. A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order. It is often called from the name of some poet, as Sapphic, Alcaic, Horatian.

82. FORMS OF VERSE.

1. DACTYLIC. The most common forms of dactylic verse are the Hexameter and Pentameter.

a. HEXAMETER. The Hexameter, called also Heroic verse, is used in narrative and pastoral poetry. It consists of six feet, of which the last is always incomplete (a trochee or spondee), the fifth generally a dactyle, and the rest indifferently dactyles or spondees. The fifth foot is rarely a spondee, in which case the verse is called spondaic. The principal Cæsura falls after the arsis (sometimes in the thesis) of the third foot or after the arsis of the fourth. In the last case there should be another in the third.

The introductory verses of the Æneid, divided according to the foregoing rules, will be as follows, the principal Cæsura in each verse being marked by double lines: —

ärmä v[i]rümque călīnō || Trōjīæ quī | prīmūs āb | ōrīs
Itāl[ām] fālō prōfū|gūs || Lā|vīnā|quē | vēnīt
litōrā, | múltum ille | ēt tēr|rīs || jāc|tātūs ēt | āltō
vī sūpē|rūm vāx || mēmō|rēm ĵūnōnis ōb | īram ;
mūltā quō|quē ēt bēl|lō pās|sūs || dūm | cōndērēt | ûrbem,
infrē|rētquē dē|ōs Ļāt|īo, || gĕnūs | ūndē Ļā|tīnum,
Albā|niqūc pā|trēs, || āt|quē āltē | mēnīā | Rōmā.

Another form of cæsura is seen in the following: —

Dis gēnī|ti pōtū|ēre : || tē|nēnt mēd|ī|a ōmnīā | sīlvae.
Æn. VI. 181.
The Hexameter verse has been illustrated in English thus: —
"Strongly it | bears us a|long, || in | swelling and | limitless | billows,
Nothing be|fore and | nothing be|hind, || but the | sky and the | ocean."

b. Pentameter. The Pentameter consists of five feet, and is
used alternately with the hexameter to form the Elegiac stanza.
It must be scanned as two half-verses, of which the latter always
has two dactyls, and each ends in a long syllable or half-foot.
There is no cæsura; but the first half-verse must always end with
a word: as,

\[
cūm sūbīt | īliūs trīs|tīssīmā | nōctis |māgo
quā mīhi | sūpřemūm || tēmpūs In | ūrbē fū|lt,
cūm répē|tō nōc|tēm quā | tōt mīhi | càrā rē|liquī,
lābitūr | ēx ācū|lis || nūnc quōqē | guttā mē|lis.
jam prōpē | lūx ādē|rāt, quā | mē dis|cēdērē | Cæsār
finǐbūs | ēxtrē|māe || jūssērāt | Ausōn|īae.
\]


The Elegiac Stanza has been illustrated thus: —
"In the hex|ameter | rises the | fountain's | silvery | column,
In the pent|ameter | aye || falling in | melody | back."

c. Rarely, other dactylic verses, or half-verses, combined with
trochees or iambics, are used by the lyric poets: viz., —

Dactylic penthemim (five half-feet):
\[
ārbōr|būsquē cō|māe. — Hor. Od. IV. 7.
\]

Dactylic tetrameter:
\[
crās in|gēns İtē|rāblmūs | æquōr. — Od. I 7.
\]

Archilochian heptameter:
\[
solvitur | acris hi|ēmps, grā|tā vīcē | vērīs | ēt Fā|vōni.
\]

Od. I. 4.

2. Iambic. The most common forms of Iambic verse
are the Trimeter (Senarius), and Tetrameter (Septenarius or
Octonarius).

a. Trimeter. The Iambic Trimeter is the ordinary verse of
dramatic dialogue. It consists of three measures, each containing
a double iambus. In the first half-measure (odd places), the
Spondee or its equivalents (anapaest or dactyl) may be regularly
substituted. In the comic poets, these substitutions may be made in any foot except the last: as,

O lūcis āl|mē rēctōr | ēt | cāeli dēcūs!
qui āltēnā cūr|rū spātīā | flām|mifēro āmbiēns,
illūstrē lā|ētīs | ēxsērīs | tērrīs cāpūt.

HERC. FUR. 592–94.

hōmō sum: hūmā|nī | nihīl ā me āl|ēnūm pūtō.
vēl mē mōnē|re hōc | vēl pērcōn|āri pūtā.

HEAUT. 77, 78.

REMARK. — The choliambic (Iambic Iambic) substitutes a trochee for the last Iambus: as,

sēd nōn vidē|mūs māntīcē | quōd īn tērgō ēst.

CATULL. XXII. 21.

b. Tetrameter. The Iambic Tetrameter catalectic (Septen-
arius) consists of seven iambic feet, with the same substitutions as the above. It is used in more lively dialogue: as,

nam idcirco ārcēs|ōr, nūptīās | quōd mī ādprā|rī sēnsīt.
quībūs quīdēm quām fācī|lē pōtūērāt | quēscī si hīc | quēssēt!

ANDRIA, 690–91.

The iambic tetrameter acatalectic (Octonarius) consists of eight full iambic feet with the same substitutions. It is also used in lively dialogue: as,

hōcīnēst hūmā|nūm fāctu aūt īn|cēptu? hōcīnēst ā|flīcũmpātrīs?
quīd īlūd ēst? prō | dēūm fīdēm, | quīd ēst, sī hōc nōn cōn|-
tūmēllīst?

ANDRIA, 236–7.

c. Dimeter. The Iambic Dimeter consists of either four (acatalectic) or three and a half (catalectic) iambic feet. The former is used in combination with a longer verse, and the latter only in choruses: as,

bēātūs il|lē quī prōcūl | nēgōttīs,
ūt prisci ĝēns | mōrtālēm,
pātērnā rū|rā būbūs ēx|ērcēt sūs,
sōlūtūs ōm|nī fēnōrē;
nēque ēxcitā|tūr clāssicō | miēs trūcī,
nēque hōrrēt ī|rātūm mārē;
fōrūmquē vi|tāt, ēt sūpēr bā cīvīūm
pōtēntīō|rūm liminā.

HOR. EPOD. II. 1–8.
quōnām crūēnītā Mānās,  
præcēps āmōrē sēvō,  
rāpītūr quōd īmlōtēntī  
fācīnūs pārāt | fūrōrē?

MEDEA, 850–853.

3. Trochaic. The most common form of Trochaic verse is the Tetrameter catalectic (Septenarius), consisting of seven complete feet with an additional syllable. Strictly, the spondees and its resolutions can be substituted only in the even places; but the comic poets allow the substitution in every foot but the last: as,

Itīdem hābēt pētā|sum āc vēstūm: | tām cōnsīmīlist | ātque ĕgō.  
sūrā, pēs, stā tūrā, tōnsūs, | ńcūli, nāsūm, | vēl lábrā,  
mālē, mēntūm, | bārbā, cōllūs: | tōtūs! quīd vērībis ēpūst?  
sē tērgūm cī|cātrīcōsūm, | nī̄hil hōc sīmīlist | sīmīlūs.

AMPHITR. 443–446.

4. Anapaestic. Anapaestic verses of various lengths are found in dramatic poetry. The spondees, dactyl, or proceleusmatic may be substituted for the anapaest: as,

hic hōmōst | ōmnīum hōmī|nūm præ|cīpūōs  
vōlūptā|tībūs gaū|dīsque ān|tēpōtēns.  
Ītā cōm|mōdā quē | cūpto ē|vēntūnt,  
quōd ĕgō | sūbit, ād sēcūē | sēquitūr:  
Ītā gaū|dīs gaū|dīum sūp|pēdītāt.

TRIN. 1115–1119.

Some other forms of trochaic verse are found in the lyric poets, in combination with other feet, either as whole lines or parts of lines: as,

nōn ēbūr nē|que aūrēüm [dimeter]  
mēā rēnī|dēt īn dōmō | lācūnār.

HOR. OD. II. 18.

5. Bacchic. The Bacchius occurs in dramatic poets either in verses of two feet (Dimeter) or of four (Tetrameter). The long syllables may be resolved into short ones, and the molossus substituted: as,

mūltās rēs | sīmītu īn | mēō cōr dē vōrōsā,  
mūltum īn cō|gtāndō | dōlōrem īn|dīpīscor,
6. Cretic. Cretic feet (Amphimacer) occur in the same manner as the Bacchius, with the same substitutions. The last foot is usually incomplete: as,

āmōr āmī:cūs mīhī | nē fuās | ūnquām.
his ēgō | de ārtibus | grātīām | fāciō.
nīl ēgo ĳs:tōs mōrōr | fācēōs | mōrés.

Trin. 267, 293, 297.

7. Choriambic. Choriambic feet are regularly preceded by a spondee or trochee, called a basis, and are followed by a close, consisting of one or more syllables (see below).

a. The First or Lesser Asclepiacid verse consists of two choriambics preceded by a trochee (in Horace a spondee), and followed by an iambus (8, d).

b. The Second or Greater Asclepiacid has three choriambics with the same basis and close (8, h): as,

nēc fā:c|ta īmpēa fā|lācum hōmīnūm | cāē|līcō|īs | plācēnt.

Catull. XXX. 4.

c. The Glyconic consists of one choriambus, with the same basis and close (8, e).

d. The Pherecratic consists of one choriambus, with the same basis, and one long syllable for close (8, g).

e. The Greater Sapphic consists of two choriambics, preceded by a trochaic dipody (epitritus secundus), and followed by a bacchius (8, c): as,

Sāpē trāns fīnēm jācūlō | nōbiās ēx pēdītō.

Hor. Od. I. 8.

f. The Lesser Sapphic consists of one choriambus, with the same basis and close (8, b): as,

īntēr audā|cēs lūpūs ēr|rāt āgnōs.

Hor. Od. III. 18, 13.

g. The Adonic consists of one choriambus, followed by a long syllable (8, b).
h. The Phalæcian consists of a basis, a choriambus, an iambus, and bacchius: as,

disēr|tīssmē Rō|mūli | nēpōtum
quōt sūnt | quōtquē fuē|rē Mār|cē Tulli.

CATUL. XLIX. 1, 2.

i. The lesser Ionic verse consists of pairs of the foot of the same name.

k. Rarely other forms of choriambic verse occur: as, for example —

Aristophanic:

tēmpērāt ē|rā frēnīs.

Hor. Od. I. 8, 7.

Tetrameter:

ōbstīpuīt; | pēctōrē nil | sīstērē cōn|slī quīt.

ADELPHI, 613.

s. Stanzas. The principal forms of lyric stanza, or strophe, are the following:—

a. Alcaic Strophe, consisting of four verses: the first two (greater Alcaic) having each a spondee (or trochee), bacchius and two dactyls; the third a spondee, bacchius, and two trochees, and the fourth into two dactyls and two trochees: as,

jūstum āc | tēnācēm | prōpōsī|tī vīrūm
nōn cī|vīm ārdōr | prāvā jū|bēntūm,
nōn vūl|tūs instān|tis tī|rānnī,
mēntē quā|tīt sōlī|dā nē|que aŭstēr.

Hor. Od. III. 3.

b. Lesser Sapphic, consisting of three Lesser Sapphic verses, and one Adonic (see above, 7, f, g): as,

jām sātīs tēr|rīs nīvīs āt'que dīrāe
grāndinis miṣit pātēr ēt | rūbēntē
dēxtērā sā|crās jācūlā|tūs ārcēs
tērrūfūt ēr|bem.

Id. Od. I. 2, 1-4.

c. Greater Sapphic, consisting of a choriambic dimeter (7, k), and a greater Sapphic (7, c): as,

Lydīā dic | pēr ōmnēs
tē dēōs ō|rō Sybārin | cūr prōpērās | āmāndō.

Hor. Od. I. 8.
d. Lesser Asclepiadean, consisting of single lines (monostrophon), of lesser asclepiadics (7, a): as,

Mæcēnās ātāvis | ēdītē rēgībūs
O ēt | prāsīdium ēt | dūlē dēcūs | mēūm.

Id. I 1.

e. Second Asclepiadean, consisting of one Glyconic (7, c), and one lesser Asclepiadic: as,

Rōmā | prīncīps ūrībūm
dignā|tūr sūbōlēs | īntēr āmā|būlēs
vātūm | pōnērē mē | chōrōs ;
ēt jām | děntē mīnūs | mōrðēr īn|vīdō.

Id. Od. IV. 3, 13-16.

f. Third Asclepiadean, consisting of three lesser Asclepiadics and one Glyconic: as,

audīs | quō strēplū | jānūs quō | nēmūs
互利 | pūlchrā sātūm | tēctā rēmū|gīāt
vēntūs | ēt pōsītās | ūt glācīēt | nīvēs
pūrō | nūmīnē Jū|plēr.

Id. Od. III. 10, 5-8.

g. Fourth Asclepiadean, consisting of two lesser Asclepiadics, one Pherecratic (7, d), and one Glyconic: as,

hic bēlīūm lācrīmō|sum hic mīsērām | fāmēm
pēstēm|que ā pōpūlo ēt | prīncīpē Cæ|sārē īn
Pērsās | ātquē Britānˌnōs
vēstrā | mōtūs āgēt | prēcē.

Id. Od. I. 21, 13-16.

h. Greater Asclepiadean, consisting of single lines of greater asclepiadics: as,

tū nē | quāstērīs | scīrē nēsās | quēm mīhi quēm | tībī.

Od. I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

i. The above forms include upwards of a hundred of the Odes of Horace. In the eighteen not included in these, are ten different kinds of stanzas, most of which are combinations of the verses already given. They may be briefly indicated as follows: —

1. Hexameter, followed by the last four feet of an hexameter. — Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. 12.


4. Hexameter, followed by Iambic Trimeter. — Epod. 16.

5. Verse of four Lesser Iouics. — Od. III. 12.

6. Hexameter with Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet):
   diffū|gērē nī|vēs rēdē | ūnt jām | grāmīnā | cāmpīs
   ārbōrī,būsquē cō|māx.— Od. IV. 7.

7. Iambic Trimeter; Dactylic Penthemim; Iambic Dimeter.— Epod. 11.


9. Archilochian Heptameter; Iambic Trimeter catalectic: as,
   sōlvitūr | ācrīs hī|emis grā|tā vīcē | vēris | ēt Fā|vōni
   trāhunt|quē sic|cās mā chīnæ | cāri|nas.— Od. I. 4.

10. Trochaic Dimeter and Iambic Trimeter, each imperfect: as,
   nōn | ēbūr | nēque au|rēm
   mēā | rēni|dēt īn | dōmō | lācū|nar.— Od. II. 18.

k. Other lyric poets use other combinations of the above-mentioned verses.

1. Four Glyconics with one Pherocratic: as,
   Dō|nāx sūmūs īn |īdē
   puell|lcē et pūērī īn|tēgrī:
   Dōnām, pūērī īn|tēgrī
   pūēl|læquē cânā|mūs.— Catull. 34.

2. Sapphics, in series of single lines, closing with an Adonic: as,

   An magis diri tremuère Manes
   Herculem? et visum canis inferorum
   fugit abruptis trepidus catenis?
   fallimur: lāte venit, ecce, vultu,
   quem tuli Pōeas; humerisque tela
   gestat, et notas populi pharetras
   Herculis heres.


3. Sapphics followed by Glyconics, of indefinite number
   (Herc. Fur. 830–874, 875–894).
83. EARLY PROSODY.

The prosody of the earlier Latin poets differs in several respects from that of the later.

Note.—Before the language was used in literature, it had become very much changed by the loss of final consonants and shortening of final syllables under the influence of accent, which was originally free in its position, but in Latin became limited to the penult and ante-penult. This tendency was arrested by the study of grammar and by literature, but shows itself again in the Romance languages. In many cases this change was still in progress in the time of the early poets.

a. At the end of words a was only feebly sounded, so that it does not make position with a following consonant, and is sometimes cut off before a vowel. (This usage continues in all poets till Cicero's time: see §§ 1, 2, 6; 80, 2, note.)

b. The last syllable of any word of two syllables may be made short if the first is short. (This effect remained in a few words like putē, iauē, vālē, vidē.) Thus:—

ābēst (Cist. ii. 1, 12); āpūd tēst (Trin. 196); sōrōr dīctāst (Enn. 157); bōnās (Stich. 99); dōmī dēæque (Pseud. 37); dōmī (Mil. 194).

c. The same effect is produced when a short monosyllable precedes a long syllable: as,

Id ēst pōrecto (Merc. 372), cīrt et tībī ēxoptatum (Mil. 1011), sī quidem hērcle (Asin. 414), quid ēst sī hōc (Andria, 237).

d. In a few isolated words position is often disregarded. Such are, ille, iste, inde, tinde, nēmpe, ësse (?). (Scholars are not yet agreed upon the principle in this irregularity, or its extent.) Thus:—

ēcquīs his in āedibust (Bacch. 581).

e. In some cases the accent seems to shorten a syllable preceding it in a word of more than three syllables: as in senēcotūtī, Syrācuseae.

f. At the beginning of a verse, many syllables long by position stand for short ones: as,

ēdnē tu (Pseud. 442); ēstne consimilis (Epid. v. i. 18).

g. The original long quantity of many final syllables is retained. Thus:—
1. Final a of the first declension is often long: as,
ne epistulā quidem ulla sit in aèdibus (Asin. 762).
Pol hódie alterá jam bis detónsa certost.

2. Final a of the neuter plural is sometimes long (though there
seems no etymological reason for it): as,
Nunc et amico prósperabo et génío meō multā bona faciam
(Pers. 263).

3. So also nouns in -or with long stem, either with original r
or original s: as,
módo quom dicta in me įngerebas ódium non uxór eram
(Asin. 927).
sta mi in pectore átque corde fácit amór incéndium (Merc. 590).
atque quanto nóx fuisti lóngiór hoc próxuma (Amph. 548).

4. So in nouns with vowel lengthened originally by loss of a
consonant: as, miēs, superstitēs.

5. So all verb-endings in r and t, where the vowel is elsewhere
long in inflection: as,
régressōr audīsse mē (Capt. 1023); átque ut qui fuerís et qui
nunc (Capt. 248); me nóminât hæc (Epid. iv. 1, 8); faciāt ut sem-
per (Pœn. ii. 42); Ínfuscabát, amabo (Cretics, Cist. i. 1, 21); quī
amēt (Merc. 1021); ut fit in bello capitur alter filius (Capt. 25);
tibi sīt ad me revisas (Truc. ii. 4, 79).

h. The hiatus is allowed very freely, especially at a pause in the
sense, or when there is a change of the speaker. (The extent of
this license is still a question among scholars, but in the present
state of texts it must sometimes be allowed.)

84. RECKONING OF TIME.

1. Date of Year. The year was dated, in earlier times,
by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned
from the building of the City (ab urbe conditā, or anno urbis
conditae), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period
corresponding with b.c. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce
Roman dates to those of the Christian era, the year of the
city is to be subtracted from 754: e.g. a.u.c: 691 (the year
of Cicero’s consulship) = b.c. 63.
2. **The Roman Year.** Before Cæsar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days: March, May, Quintilis (July), and October having each 31 days, February having 28, and each of the remainder 29; with an Intercalary month, on alternate years, inserted after February 23, at the discretion of the Pontifices. The "Julian year," by the reformed calendar, had 365 days, divided as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. kal. Mart.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called *Bissextilis.* The month Quintilis received the name *Julius* (July), in honor of Julius Cæsar; and Sextilis of *Augustus* (August), in honor of his successor.

The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar (A.D. 1582), which omits leap-year once in every century.

3. **The Month.** Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

   a. The first day of the month was called *Kalendae* (*Calends*), from *calare*, to call,—that being the day on which the pontiffs publicly announced the New Moon in the *Comitia Calata*, which they did, originally, from actual observation.

   b. Sixteen days before the Calends,—that is, on the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months,—were the *Idus* (*Ides*), the day of Full Moon.

   c. Eight days (the ninth by the Roman reckoning) before the Ides,—that is, on the seventh day of March, May, July, and October, but the fifth of the other months,—were the *Nonae* (*Nones*, or *ninth*).

   d. From the three points thus determined the days of the month were reckoned backwards (the point of departure being, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning), giving the following rule for determining the date:—

   If the given date be Calends, add two to the number of days in the month preceding,—if Nones or Ides, add one to that of the day on which they fall,—and from the number thus ascertained subtract the given date:—thus, viii. Kal. Feb. (33—8) = Jan. 25;—iv. Non. Mar. (8—4) = Mar. 4;—iv. Id. Sept. (14—4) = Sept. 10.
e. The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following Table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>February</th>
<th>March</th>
<th>April</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. III.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. prid.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. VIII. Id. Jan.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Feb.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Mart.</td>
<td>VIII. Id. Apr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. VII.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. VI.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. V.</td>
<td>V.</td>
<td>V.</td>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. IV.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. III.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. prid.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. XVIII.</td>
<td>XV.</td>
<td>Idus Martiae</td>
<td>XVII. Kal. Aprilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. XVII.</td>
<td>XIV.</td>
<td>XVII.</td>
<td>XVI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. XVI.</td>
<td>XIII.</td>
<td>XVI.</td>
<td>XV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. XV.</td>
<td>XII.</td>
<td>XV.</td>
<td>XIV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. XIV.</td>
<td>XI.</td>
<td>XIV.</td>
<td>XIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. XIII.</td>
<td>X.</td>
<td>XIII.</td>
<td>XII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. XII.</td>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>XII.</td>
<td>XI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. XI.</td>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>XI.</td>
<td>X.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. X.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>X.</td>
<td>IX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. IX.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>VIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. VIII.</td>
<td>V.</td>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. VII.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. VI.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. V.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
<td>V.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. IV.</td>
<td>(prid. Kal. Mart.)</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. III.</td>
<td>in leap-year, the</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>prid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[So Aug., Dec. counted twice.]</td>
<td></td>
<td>So June, Sept., Nov.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 45) is to be found not by the above, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.

85. Measures of Value.

1. The Money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper, the unit being the As. This was nominally a pound, but actually somewhat less, in weight, and was divided into twelve unciae. In the third century B.C. the As was reduced by degrees to one-twelfth of its original value. At the same time silver coins were introduced; the Denarius = 10 Asses, and the Sesterius or sesterce (semis-tertius, or half-third, represented by IIIS or HS = duo et semis) = \(2\frac{1}{2}\) Asses.

2. The Sesterius, being probably introduced at a time when it was equal in value to the original As, came to be used as the unit of value: hence nummus, coin, was used as equivalent to Sesterius. Afterwards, by the reductions in the standard, four asses became equal to a sesterce. Gold was introduced later, the aureus being equal to 100 sesterces.
The value of these coins is seen in the following Table:

\[
\begin{align*}
2 \frac{1}{2} \text{ asses} &= 1 \text{ sestertius or nummus (hs)}, \text{ value about } 5 \text{ cents.} \\
10 \text{ asses or } 4 \text{ sestertii} &= 1 \text{ denarius} . . . \\
1000 \text{ sestertii} &= 1 \text{ sestertium . . . . . . . } \\
&= \$50.00.
\end{align*}
\]

3. The Sestertium (probably the genitive plural of sestertius) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, *tria sestertia* = $120.00. When combined with a numeral adverb, hundreds of thousands (centena milia) are to be understood: thus *decies sestertium* (decies hs) = $50,000. In the statement of large sums the noun is often omitted: thus *sexagies* (Rosc. Am. ii.) signifies, *sexagies [centena milia] sestertium* (6,000,000 sesterces) = $300,000.

4. In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus HS. DC. = 600 sestertii; — HS. DC. = 600,000 sestertii, or 600 sestertia; — HS. DDC = 60,000,000 sestertii.

5. **Measures of Length.**

12 unciae (inches) = 1 Roman Foot (pes, 11.65 English inches).
14 Feet = 1 Cubit. — 24 Feet = 1 Degree or Step (gradus).
5 Feet = 1 Pace (passus). — 1000 Paces (mille passuum) = 1 Mile.

The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet. The Jugerum, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad; a little less than \( \frac{1}{4} \) of an English acre.

6. **Measures of Weight.**

12 unciae (ounces) = one pound (libra, about \( \frac{3}{4} \) lb. avoirdupois).

For fractional parts of the pound, see Lexicon, art. aa. The Talent was a Greek weight = 60 librae.

7. **Measures of Capacity.**

12 cyathi = 1 sextarius (nearly a pint).
16 sextarii = 1 modius (peck).
6 sextarii = 1 congius (3 quarts, liquid measure).
8 congii = 1 amphora (6 gallons).
SUPPLEMENT.

OUTLINE OF SYNTAX.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

46. Nouns. — A Noun used to describe another, and meaning the same thing, agrees with it in Case (p. 103).

1. When in the same part of the sentence (subject or predicate), it is called an appositive, and the use is called apposition.

2. When used to form a predicate, with a copulative verb, it is called predicate nominative (or other case, as it may be).
   a. Agreement in gender and number; b. with locative; c. genitive in agreement with possessives.

47. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (p. 105).

1. With two or more nouns the adjective is plural.

2. When nouns are of different genders, an attributive adjective agrees with the nearest.
   a. Of predicate adjectives; b. masculine or neuter; c. abstracts with neuter adjectives; d. agreement by synesis; e. with appositive or predicate; f. with partitive genitive.

3. Adjectives are often used as nouns, the masculines to denote men, and the feminine women (chiefly plural).
   a. Possessives; b. Demonstratives; c. Nouns as adjectives.

4. A neuter adjective may be used as a noun:—
   a. Use in the singular; b. in the plural; c. as appositive or predicate; d. in agreement with a clause or infinitive.

5. Adjectives denoting source or possession may be used for the genitive.
   a. For genitive of personal pronouns; b. genitive in apposition; c. for objective genitive (rarely).

6. An adjective is often used to qualify an act, having the force of an Adverb.

7. When two qualities are compared, both adjectives are in the comparative, connected by quam.
   a. Not with magis; b. Positives with quam.

8. Superlatives denoting order and succession often designate what part of an object is meant (so medius, ceterus, &c.).

9. Altus . . . altus, &c., may be used reciprocally, or may imply a change of predicate as well as of subject.
48. RELATIVES.—A Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands (p. 109).

1. A verb takes the person of the antecedent.
2. A relative generally agrees in gender with the appositive.
   a. Agreement in case by attraction; b. with implied antecedent.
3. The antecedent noun sometimes appears in both clauses; usually only in the former; sometimes it is wholly omitted.
   a. When repeated; b. a relative clause (is or hic, antecedent; R., order of clauses); c. antecedent omitted; d. predicate adjective (superlatives); e. id quod or quae res.
4. A relative often stands at the beginning of a clause or sentence, where in English a demonstrative must be used.
5. An Adverb is often equivalent to the pronoun (relative or demonstrative) with a preposition.

49. VERBS.—A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person (p. 112).

1. Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural.
   a. Rule for persons; b. with disjunctives; c. collective nouns, &c.; d. action belonging to the subjects separately.
2. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.
   a. Omission of personal pronoun; b. of indefinite subject; c. of verb in certain phrases (especially of the copula).

II. CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

50. GENITIVE.—A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the genitive (p. 113).

1. Subjective. The Genitive is used to denote the author, owner, source, and (with an adjective) measure or quality.
   a. Use of possessives; b. omission of limited noun; c. genitive in predicate; d. with phrase or clause (instead of neuter nominative); e. neuter of possessives; f. of substance; g. instead of appositive; h. of quality (with adjectives); i. of quantity, to express value; k. with causa, &c.

2. Partitive. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.

3. Objective. With many nouns and adjectives implying action, the genitive is used to denote the object.
   a. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling; b. Adjectives requiring an object of reference (1. desire, &c., 2. verbals, 8. participials);
c. Adjectives with genitive of specification; d. of likeness. Use of prepositions in connecting nouns.

4. After Verba. The genitive is used as the object of several classes of Verbs:—

a. Of remembering, forgetting, and reminding; b. of accusing, condemning, and acquitting; (peculiar genitives; abl. with de); c. of emotion (1. pity, &c., 2. impersonals; use of infinitive); d. refer and interest; e. of plenty and want (potior); r. Genitive with Adverbs.

51. DATIVE. — The Dative is used of the object indirectly affected by the action of a verb (p. 121).

1. Of Indirect Object: with Transitives. Transitive verbs, whose meaning permits it, take the dative of the indirect object, with the accusative of the direct (as of giving, telling, sending).

a. With passive; b. Motion with Prepositions; d. dux, &c.

2. —— after Intransitives. Intransitive verbs take the dative of the indirect object only.

a. Verbs meaning to favor, help, please, serve, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, envy, threaten, resist, pardon, and spare; (1. juvo, &c., with accus.; 2. dat. or acc. with adoluro, &c.; 3. dat. or acc. according to their meaning); b. libet, &c.; c. with accus. of remote; d. Compounds with ad, ante, con, &c. (transitive compounds; obvius); e. Compounds with ab, de, ex; f. Impersonal use in the passive; g. Poetic use of dative.

3. Of Possession. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote the Owner.

Rem. — Use of habeo; a. Compounds of esse; b. nomen est.

4. Of Agency. The Dative is used after some passive forms to denote the Agent.

a. Gerund or gerundive; b. perfect participle; c. poetic use.

5. Of Service. The Dative is used to denote the purpose or end; often with another dative of the person or thing affected.

6. Of Nearness. The Dative is used after words of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites.

a. Accusative with ad; b. Accusative with in or erga; c. possessive genitive; d. proprium, &c. with acc.; e. dat. with verbals.

7. Of Reference. The Dative is often required not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence.

a. Instead of possessive genitive; b. relations of direction; c. of volens, nolens; d. Ethical Dative (ablative with pro).

52. ACCUSATIVE. — The Accusative denotes that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb.

1. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

a. With verbs of feeling; b. Cognate Accusative; c. with verbs of sensation; d. of motion (compounds); c. Constructio praegnans; f. Impersonals, decet, &c.
2. Two Accusatives. Several verbs take a second accusative, either in apposition or as a secondary object.
   a. Verbs of naming, choosing, &c.; b. Compounds with prepositions; c. Verbs of asking and teaching (passive use); d. celo, lateo.

3. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is used adverbially, or for specification.
   b. Accusative of neuter pronoun or adjective; b. Adverbial phrases; c. Greek accusative: passive used reflexively.

4. Special Uses:—
   a. Exclamations; b. as subject of Infinitive; c. Duration of Time and extent of Space.

53. Vocative. — The Vocative is the form of direct Address (p. 134).
   a. Nominative with Imperative; b. Vocative of adjective.

54. Ablative. — The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions from, in, at, with, by (p. 134).

1. Separation. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, are followed by the ablative.
   a. Compounds, used figuratively; b. ablative of place from; c. adjectives of freedom and want; d. opus and usus; egeo and indigeo with genitive (so other words of separation and want).

2. Source. The ablative is used to denote source or material.
   a. Participles of birth and origin; b. place of birth; c. of material, with constare; d. with facere, &c.

3. Cause. The ablative is used to express cause.
   a. dignus, indignus, and certain verbs; b. motive expressed with ob or propter; c. causa, gratia.

4. Agent. The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with ab.
   a. So with neuters; b. agent as instrument with per or opera.

5. Comparison. The comparative degree is followed by the ablative, signifying than.
   a. Use of quam; b. idiomatic ablatives, opinione, &c.; c. construction of plus, amplius, &c.

6. Means. The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, means, instrument.
   a. Accompaniment with cum (miscoe, jungo); b. contention with cum; c. with words of fullness; d. utor, &c.; e. abl. of degree of difference (eo, que, &c.).

7. Quality. The ablative is used (with an adjective or limiting genitive) to denote manner and quality.
   a. Physical characteristics; b. manner with cum; modo, &c.
8. Price. The price of a thing is put in the ablative.
   a. Certain genitives of quantity are used to denote *indefinite value*; 
   b. so of certain nouns.

9. Specification. The ablative denotes that in respect to 
   which any thing is or is done, or in accordance with which any 
   thing happens.

10. Locative. The ablative of the place where is retained 
   in many idiomatic expressions.
   a. Verbs and Verbals.
   b. Ablative Absolute: A noun or pronoun, with a participle [form-
      ing the subject and predicate of a subordinate clause] may be put in the 
      ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action; c. Ablative of 
      neuter adjective; d. Ablative of place where and time when.

55. Time and Place.—1. Time. Time when (or within 
   which) is put in the ablative; time how long in the accusative.
   a. Use of preposition; b. Ablative of duration.

2. Space. Extent of space is put in the accusative.
   a. Genitive of measure; b. Distance in accusative or ablative.

3. Place. To express relations of place, prepositions are 
   necessary, except with the names of towns and small islands.
   a. The name of the place from which is in the ablative.
   b. The name of the place to which is in the accusative (so certain 
      phrases; also the former supine).
   c. The name of the place where takes the locative form, which in 
      the 1st and 2d declensions singular is the same as the genitive; in the 
      plural and in the 3d declension, the same as the dative (or ablative).
   d. domi, beli, militiae, humi, ruri, &c.; e. possessives with 
      domus; f. special phrases.

4. Way. The way by which is put in the ablative.

56. Prepositions.—1. Prepositions govern the accusative 
   or ablative (p. 146).
   a. Those governing accus.; b. those governing abl.; c. In, sub 
      (pono, statuio, &c.); d. super; e. subter; f. Dates; g. tenus.

2. Many words may be construed either as prepositions or as 
   adverbs.
   a. pridie, proplus, &c., with accus.; b. palam, &c., with abl.; 
   c. clam; d. Prepos. as adverbs (ante, &c).

3. Prepositions or adverbs implying comparison are followed 
   by quam.

4. The ablative with a or ab is regularly used after passive 
   verbs to denote the agent (if a person).

5. Many prepositions sometimes follow their nouns.
III. Syntax of the Verb.

57. Moods.—The Moods of a Latin verb are the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive (p. 148).

1. Indicative. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions.

2. Subjunctive. The Subjunctive is used in special constructions, both in dependent and independent clauses.
   a. Independent: hortatory, optative, concessive, dubitative; also in apodosis; b. Dependent: purpose or result, temporal clauses, indirect discourse, intermediate clauses.

3. Hortatory. The Subjunctive is used (present or perfect) to express a command or exhortation.
   a. Second person of indefinite subj.; b. perfect in prohibitions; c. proviso; d. past obligation.

4. Optative. The subj. is used to denote a wish: primary tenses when conceived as possible; secondary, as unaccomplished.
   a. Old use of perfect; b. ut, utinam, O si; vellim, vellem.

5. Concessive: the subjunctive is used to express a concession (with or without ut, quamvis, quamlibet, &c.).

6. Dubitative: the subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or an impossibility of the thing being done.

7. Imperative. The Imperative is used in commands; also, by early writers and poets, in prohibitions.
   a. Prohibitions (perf. subj., nolle, cave, fac ne); b. use of pres. subj.; c. future imperative; d. future for imperative.

8. Infinitive. The Infinitive denotes the action of the verb as an abstract noun.
   a. As subject or object (esse and impersonals); b. with impersonals as subj. or complement; c. Complementary Infinitive; d. used optionally; e. with subj.-accus., after words of knowing, thinking, and telling; f. Purpose; g. Exclamations; h. Historical Infinitive.

58. Tenses.—The Tenses are the Present, Imperfect, Future of incomplete action, and the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of completed action (p. 157).

1. The tenses of the Indicative denote absolute time.

2. Present. The Present denotes an action or state as now existing, as incomplete, or as indefinite.
   a. Action continuing; b. Conative Present; c. Present for future; d. Historical Present; e. with dum; f. of extant writers.

3. Imperfect. The imperfect denotes an action or condition continued or repeated in past time.
   a. Descriptions; b. action continuing; c. conative; d. surprise; e. in narrative (comic).
4. Future. The Future denotes an action or condition that will occur hereafter.

5. Perfect. The perfect definite denotes an action as now completed; the perfect historical, as having taken place indefinitely in past time.

   a. As no longer existing; b. of indefinite time; c. of general truth (gnomic), especially negations; d. in negations preferred to imperfect.

6. Pluperfect. The Pluperfect is used to denote an action completed in time past; sometimes also repeated in indefinite time.

7. Future Perfect. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future.

8. Epistolary Tenses. In Letters, the perfect or imperfect may be used for the present, and the pluperfect for past tenses.

9. Subjunctive. In Independent clauses, the Present Subjunctive always refers to future time, the Imperfect to either past or present; the Perfect to either future or past; the Pluperfect always to past.

   In Dependent clauses, the tenses of the subjunctive denote relative time, not with reference to the speaker, but to the action of some other verb.

10. Sequence of Tenses. In compound sentences, a primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; and a secondary tense is followed by a secondary (p. 162).

   a. Perfect definite; b. Perfect subjunctive; c. Perfect in clauses of result (compared with imperfect); d. general truths; e. historical present; f. Protasis and Apodosis; g. imperfect subjunctive in leading clauses; h. secondary tenses by synexesis.

11. Infinitive. The tenses of the Infinitive are present, past, or future relatively to the time of the verb on which they depend.

   a. Present, following verb in past tense; b. Perfect (memini); c. Present, without reference to time; d. Perf. with verbs of wishing, &c.; e. Perf. with verbs of feeling (poetic); f. Future (ser ut).

59. Conditional Sentences.—A conditional sentence (or clause) is one beginning with if or some equivalent.

1. Protasis and Apodosis. The clause containing the condition (if) is called the Protasis; that containing the conclusion is called the Apodosis.

   a. Protasis: if or indef. relative; b. Apodosis the main clause.

2. Particular and General Conditions:—

   a. A particular supposition refers to a definite act (or series of acts) occurring at some definite time.

   b. A general supposition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

   c. Classification of conditional sentences (p. 167).
3. Present and Past Conditions.—

a. In the statement of a condition whose falsity is not implied, the tenses of the Indicative are used.

b. In the statement of a supposition known to be false, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used.

c. Imperf. subj. referring to past; d. Indic. in apodosis; e. expressions of necessity, duty, &c.; f. Fut. part. with sui = plup. subj.

4. Future Conditions:—

a. Use of future indic.; b. of present subj.; c. of future perf.

d. Form of Apodosis; e. Perfect indic. in apodosis; f. Imperf. (or pluperf.) subj. by sequence of tenses.

5. General Conditions:—

a. Indefinite subject (2d person singular); b. repeated action (imperfect subj. and indic.); c. in other cases, indicative.

60. IMPLIED CONDITIONS. — In many sentences, the condition is stated in some other form than a conditional clause, or is implied in the nature of the thought (p. 172).

1. Condition Disguised:—

a. In a relative or participial clause; b. in a wish or command; c. in an independent clause.

2. Condition Omitted:—

a. Potential Subjunctive; b. Subjunctive of modesty; c. Indicative of necessity, duty, &c.; d. mixed constructions.

61. CONDITIONAL PARTICLES. Certain particles implying a condition are followed by the subjunctive (p. 174).

1. Comparative: — tamquam, &c. (with pres. or perf. subj.).

2. Concessive: — quamvis, ut, licet, etal.


4. Use of the Conditional Particles:—

a. si, nisi; b. nisi vero (objection); c. sive (alternative); d. concessive particles.

62. RELATIONS OF TIME. Temporal clauses are introduced by particles which are almost all of relative origin; and are usually construed like other relative clauses (p. 176).

1. Temporal particles are used as indefinite relatives.

2. Temporal clauses of absolute time take the Indicative; those of relative time, the Subjunctive.

a. postquam, ut, ubi; b. cum temporal; c. antequam, priusquam; d. dum, donec, quoad; e. cum causal; f. cum . . . tum.

63. CAUSE OR REASON. Causal Clauses may take the Indicative or Subjunctive according to their construction (p. 181):—

1. Indicative in direct construction;

2. Subjunctive of indirect discourse.

a. Relative clause of characteristic; b. cum causal.
64. Purpose. — 1. Final clauses take the Subjunctive after relatives, or the conjunction ut, -ne (p. 182).
   a. Use of quo; b. Suppression of principal clause.

2. Purpose is expressed in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive (p. 183).

65. Consequence or Result. — 1. Consecutive Clauses take the Subjunctive after relatives or the conj. ut, ut non (p. 183).
   a. quominus; b. quin (substantive clause).

2. A relative clause of Result is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent.
   a. General expressions of existence, &c.; b. unus and solus;
   c. Comparatives with quam; d. restriction or proviso; e. cause or hinderance; f. dignus, aptus, idoneus.

66. Intermediate Clauses. A subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer; or when it is an integral part of a subjunctive clause or an equivalent infinitive (p. 185).

1. The Subjunctive is used in intermediate clauses to express the thought of some other person.
   a. Indirect discourse; b. depending on implied wish, command, &c.; c. main clause merged in a verb of saying; d. reason with quod (non quod, non quin).

2. A clause depending on another subjunctive clause (or equivalent infinitive) will also take the subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause.

67. Indirect Discourse. — A Direct Quotation is one which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer. An Indirect Quotation is one which adapts the original words to the structure of the sentence in which they are quoted.

1. Indirect Narrative. In a declaratory sentence in indirect discourse, the principal verb is in the Infinitive, and its subject in the Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.
   a. Subject-accusative; b. Relative clauses; c. Conditional Sentences; d. Questions: indirect or rhetorical.

2. Indirect Questions. An indirect question takes its verb in the Subjunctive.
   a. Future participle; b. Dubitative Subjunctive; c. Accusative of anticipation; d. Early use of indicative; e. Indefinites (nescio quis); f. clauses with si (whether).

3. Indirect Commands. All imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in indirect discourse.

68. Wishes and Commands. — 1. Wishes are expressed by the Subjunctive: the primary tenses in reference to future time, the secondary to express a hopeless wish (p. 192).
2. Commands are expressed by the Imperative or Subjunctive; Prohibitions by the subjunctive or a periphrasis with noli, cave. The Object of a command is given in a purpose-clause.

3. Indirectly quoted, all these forms take the Subjunctive.

69. RELATIVE CLAUSES. — 1. A simple relative, merely introducing a descriptive fact, takes the Indicative.

2. In relative clauses with the Subjunctive, the relative is either in protasis, or expresses some logical connection, or has no effect on the construction (as in indirect discourse).

70. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES. — A Substantive Clause is one which is the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a subject or object (p. 193).

1. Classification: 1. Infinitive Clauses; 2. Indirect Questions; 3. Clauses of purpose or result (ut); 4. Indicative of fact (quod).

2. The Infinitive (with accusative) is used as the Subject chiefly of esse and impersonal verbs; as the Object, 1. of verbs and expressions of knowing, thinking, and telling; 2. jubeo, veto, &c.; 3. of verbs of wishing.

a. After passives; b. poetic extension; c. verb of saying implied; d. verbs of promising, &c.

3. Clauses of Purpose are used as the object of all verbs denoting an action directed towards the future.

a. Verbs of commanding, &c.; b. of wishing, &c.; c. of permission, &c.; d. of determining, &c. ( decreeing, with part. in dus); e. of caution and effort; f. of fearing (ne, ut); g. poetic use of infinitive.

4. Clauses of Result are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.

a. Verbs of happening, &c.; b. following quam; c. in exclamations (elliptically); d. tantum abest; e. facere ut; f. instead of accus. and infin.; g. hindering (quin; non dubito); h. Use optional.

5. The Indicative with quod is used (more commonly as subject) when the statement is regarded as a fact.

a. As accus. of specification; b. with verbs of feeling (miror si).

71. QUESTIONS. — Questions are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adverbs, or particles, and are not distinguished by the order of words (p. 200).

1. Interrogative Particles: —

a. num in indirect questions; b. form of indirect questions; c. enclitic -ne; d. nescio an, &c.

2. Double Questions (utrum ... an): —

a. Omission of former particle; b. of first member; c. of second member; d. forms of alternative.

3. Question and Answer. In answering a question, the verb is generally repeated.

1. Distinctions of Tense: —
   a. Present; b. Perfect (deponent); c. Pres. passive (dum, -dus).
   2. Adjective Use, attributive: —
      a. As nouns; b. as predicate with esse; c. periphrastic perfect;
      d. two forms of perfect passive.

3. Predicate Use. The present and perfect participles are often used to express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic, manner, circumstance (especially in the Ablative Absolute).
   a. Passive part. containing the main idea; b. Perfect part. with habeo; c. with volo; Present part. for infin. (with facio, &c.).

4. Future Participle: —
   a. Periphrastic conjugation; b. with fut, &c., for pluperf. subj.

5. Gerundive (denoting necessity and propriety): —
   a. in simple agreement; b. periphrastic conjugation (impersonal use); c. with verbs of undertaking, demanding, &c.

73. Gerund and Gerundive. — 1. The Gerund, in grammatical construction, follows the same rules as nouns (p. 206).

2. Gerundive. When the Gerund would have an object in the accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead, agreeing with the noun, in the case which the gerund would have had.

3. Construction. The Gerund and Gerundive are used in the oblique cases in the constructions of nouns: —
   a. The Genitive is used as objective genitive after nouns or adjectives, as a predicate with esse, or as a genitive of quality.
   b. The Dative is used after the adjectives (rarely nouns) which are followed by the dative of nouns; sometimes also after verbs.
   c. The Accusative is used after several prepositions; most frequently after ad denoting purpose.
   d. The Ablative is used to express means, instrument, or manner, after comparatives, and after several prepositions.
   e. The Gerund is occasionally found in apposition with a noun.

74. Supine. — 1. The Former Supine is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion (p. 209).

2. The Latter Supine is used only after a few adjectives and nouns, to denote that in respect to which the quality is asserted.
SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS.

[The figures refer to pages.]

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

NOUN: agreement in case

1. Apposition of abl. with locative, 104.
2. Predicate Agreement, 104.

Agreement with nearest noun, 105.

ADJECTIVE:

Predicative as Noun masc. or fem., of persons, 106.
Possessive, as genitive (subj. or obj.), 108.

Apposition as Adverb qualifying the act, 108.

A N T E C E D E N T N O U N

Agreement in case by attraction, 110.

RELATIVE:

Agreement with appositive, 110.

in case by attraction, 110.

omitted, 110.

II. CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

NOMINATIVE: as Subject of a Finite Verb, 112.

1. Subjective (source, possession, quality), 114.
2. Partitive (with numerals, superlatives, &c.), 115.

GENITIVE:

with nouns and adjectives of agency, 117.

3. Objective with verbs of memory and feeling, 119, 120.
   of charge and penalty, 119.

DATIVE:

1. Of Indirect Object with transitives, 121.
   with intransitives, 122.
2. Of Possession with esse, 128.

3. Of Agency with other passive forms, 127.
4. Of Service (denoting purpose or end), 128.
5. Of Nearness, fitness, likeness, &c., 128.
6. Of Reference (dativus commodi), 129.

ACCUSATIVE:

1. Of Direct Object (including cognate accusative), 131.
2. Of Apposition or Secondary object, 132.

ADVERBIAL (including accusative of specification), 133.

1. Of Exclamation, 133.
2. As subject of Infinitive, 133.

VOCATIVE: of Direct Address.

1. Original of separation and want, 135.
   Ablative of cause, 137.
   (FROM) of agent (with ab), 138.
   of comparison (than), 138.
   of means and accompaniment, 169.

ABLATIVE:

2. Instrumental of quality (with adjectives), 141.
   (WITH) of price, 141.
   of specification, 142.
   Place where, 145.

3. Locative Time at or within which, 143.
   (IN, AT) Idiomatic use, 142.
   Circumstance (ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE), 142.
III. Syntax of the Verb.

**INDICATIVE:** Direct assertion or question; Absolute Time, 148.  
- Hortatory, Optative, Concessive, Dubitative, 148.  
- Purpose or Result, 181, 183.  
- Characteristic, 184; Relative Time, 177.

**SUBJUNCTIVE:**  
- Dependent: Indirect Discourse  
- Subordinate, 188.  
- Indir. Quest, 190.

**IMPERATIVE:** Commands, Prohibitions, 152.  
- as Subject or Object; Complementary, 154.

**INFINITIVE:** of Indirect Discourse (subject-accusative), 188.  
- of Purpose; Exclamation; Historical, 156.

**CONDITIONS:**

**Expressed**
- Present or Past simple condition (indic.), 168.  
- contrary to fact (subj.), 168.
- Future more vivid (fut. indic.), 170.
- less vivid (pres. subj.), 170.
- General indef. subject (2d person), 171.
- repeated action, 171.

**Implied**
- by qualifying clause, 172.
- Disguised by wish, command, &c., 172.
- independent clause, 173.

**Omitted**
- potential subjunctive, 173.
- subjunctive of modesty, 173.
- (indic. of necessity, &c., 174.)
- mixed constructions, 174.

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE:**
- Principal clause: Accus. and Infin., 188.
- Subordinate clauses, Subj.:  
  - Relative, 188.
  - Conditional, 188.
  - Imperative, 191.
- Question (Subjunctive)  
  - Interrog. phrase, 190.
- nescio quae, mirum si, 191.
- Accus. of anticipation, 190.
- Intermediate Clauses (Subjunctive), 186.

**SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES:**

- as Subject (esse and impers.), 153.  
- or Infin. alone) as Object  
  - Indir. Discourse, 194.
  - Wishes or Commands, 195.
- Subjunctive with **ut**  
  - Purpose (command, wish, fear), 196.
  - Result (happen, effect, hinder), 197.
- Indicative with **quod**: fact, specification, feeling, 199.
- Indirect Questions, 190.

** PARTICIPLES:**

- Present and Perfect  
  - Simple predicate, 203.
  - Periphrastic perfect, 203.
  - Predicate of circumstance, 204.
    - (Ablative Absolute), 204.
    - Present, descriptive (indir. disc.), 205.
- Future  
  - Periphrastic with **esse**, 205.
  - **ut** with **si** = pluperf. subj., 169.
  - as descriptive adjective, 205.
- Gerundive  
  - periphrastic with **esse**, 205.
  - of purpose, with certain verbs, 206.

**GERUND (like Infinitive) and GERUNDIVE (in agreement with noun):**

- Genitive: as objective gen., 207.
- Dative: with adjectives, &c., 208.
- Accusative: with prepositions, 208.
- Ablative:  
  - of manner and instrument., 208.
  - with prepositions, 208.

**SUPINE:**

- Former Supine: with verbs of motion, 209.
- Latter Supine: with adjectives, nouns, verbs, 209.
PECULIAR AND EXCEPTIONAL NOUN-FORMS.

First and Second Declensions.

Sing.
N. des deus filius Gaius studium vir
G. des dei filii (ii) Gai studii (ii) viri
D. des dei filio Gaio studio viro
A. des deum filium Gaium &c. virum
V. des deus fili Gai vir
A. des deo filio Gaio viro

Pwr.
N. V. des dei (dii, di) filii Gai studia viri
G. desarum deorum &c. Gaiorum &c. virorum
D. Ab. desabus dei (diis, dis) Gais viris
Acc. des deos Gaios viros

Third Declension (Greek).

Sing.
N. des ses (m.) heros (m.) lampas (f.) basis tigris
G. des saeis (os) herois lampados basios (is) tigris (idos)
D. aeri heroi lampadi basis tigris (ida)
Ae. aera heroa lampada basin (im) tigrin (im)
Ab. aere heroae lampade basi tigris (ide)

Pwr.
N. V. heroës lampados basis tigres
G. heroum lampadum basium tigrimum
D. Ab. heroës lampadibus basibus tigribus
Acc. heroës lampados basis (eis) tigris (idês)

Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

Sing.
N. domus (f.) domus senatus senatus (i, uos) plebes
G. domus domorum (uum) senatus (i, uos) plebei (i)
D. domui (o) domibus senatus plebei (i)
Ac. domum domos senatum plebem
Ab. domo (u) domibus senatu plebe

Proper Names—(Greek).

N Atrides Phœbe Atho (i) Delo Orpheus
G. Atrides Phœbes Atho (i) Del (e) Orpheus (eis)
D. Atride Phœbe Atho Delo Orpheus (eis)
A. Atriden (em) Phœben Atho (en) Delon (uum) Orpheus (en)
V. Atrida Phœbe Atho Delo Orpheo
Ab. Atrida Phœbe Atho Delo Orpheus

N. Achillides Socrates Thaeles Io (Ion) Juppiter
G. Achillids (eos) Socratis (i) Thalia (etis) Ios (onis) Jovis
D. Achilli (ei, i) Socrates Thali (eti) Io (oni) Jovi
A. Achillen (ea) Socraten (em) Thalen (etos) Io (ona) Jowem
V. Achille Socrates Thales Io Juppiter
A. Achille Socrates Thale (ete) Io Jove

N. Atlas (ans) Laocooon Simois Capys Argos (w.)
G. Atlantis Laocoontis Simoentis Capyios (is) Nom. and Acc.
D. Atlanti Laocoonti Simoenti Capyi
A. Atlante Laocoonta Simoenta Capyn (ym) Arct
V. Atlas (Atla) Laococon Simois Capys Argorun
A. Atlante Laocoonte Simoente Capye Arga, &c.

Note.—The regular Latin forms may be used for most of the above.
**APPENDIX.**

Latin was originally the language of the plain of Latium, lying south of the Tiber, the first territory occupied and governed by the Romans. This language, together with the Greek, Sanskrit, Zend (old Persian), the Slavonic and Teutonic families, and the Celtic, are shown by comparative philology to be offshoots of a common stock, a language once spoken by a people somewhere in the interior of Asia, whence the different branches, by successive migrations, peopled Europe and Southern Asia.

The name Indo-European (or Aryan) is given to the whole group of languages, as well as to the original language from which the branches sprang. By an extended comparison of the corresponding roots, stems, and forms, as they appear in the different branches, the original ("Indo-European") root, stem, or form can in very many cases be determined; and this is used as a model, or type, to which the variations may be referred. A few of these forms are given in the grammar for comparison (see, especially, p. 59). A few are here added for further illustration:

1. **Case Forms (Stem vāk, voice).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING. Nom.</strong></td>
<td>vāks</td>
<td>vāks</td>
<td>ḫψ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>vākas</td>
<td>vāchas</td>
<td>ḫρός</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>vākai</td>
<td>vāche</td>
<td>ḫί</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vākam</td>
<td>vācham</td>
<td>ḫα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vākat</td>
<td>vāchas</td>
<td>(gen. or dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>vāki</td>
<td>vāchi</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr.</td>
<td>vākā</td>
<td>vāchā</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| PLUR. Nom. | vākas | vāchas | ḫρες | voces |
| Gen. | vākām | vāchām | ḫρ ṇ̄ | vocum |
| Dat. | vākbhīms | vāgbhyas | ḫψ | vocibus |
| Acc. | vākams | vāchas | ḫρᾱs | voces |
| Abl. | vākbhīms | (as dat.) | (gen. or dat.) | vocibus |
| Loc. | vāksvas | vāksu | (dat.) | |
| Instr. | vākbhīs | vāgbhīs | (dat.) | (abl.) |

(For Verb-Forms, see p. 59.)
2. Cardinal Numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[eka]</td>
<td>[eis]</td>
<td>[unus]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dva</td>
<td>δίο</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tri</td>
<td>τρίς</td>
<td>tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>kvatvar</td>
<td>chatur</td>
<td>[tέσσαρες]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>kvankva</td>
<td>panchan</td>
<td>πέντε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ksvaks</td>
<td>shash</td>
<td>ἕξ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>saptam</td>
<td>saptan</td>
<td>ἕτεχα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>aktam</td>
<td>ashtun</td>
<td>ἀτέχα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>navam</td>
<td>navan</td>
<td>ἑνατα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>dakam</td>
<td>dasan</td>
<td>δέκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>dvadakam</td>
<td>dva-dasan</td>
<td>δώδεκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>tridakam</td>
<td>traya-dasan</td>
<td>τρικατάκεκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>dvidakanta</td>
<td>vinsati</td>
<td>εκτοι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>tridakanta</td>
<td>trinsati</td>
<td>τρικατωστα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>kantam</td>
<td>çatam</td>
<td>εκατων</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Familiar and Household Words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mother.</td>
<td>pātar-</td>
<td>pitri-</td>
<td>πατρή</td>
<td>pater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father-in-law.</td>
<td>svakura-</td>
<td>ṣvaquer-</td>
<td>ἐκουρός</td>
<td>sacer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daughter-in-law.</td>
<td>snushā-</td>
<td>snusha-</td>
<td>νυξ</td>
<td>nurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brother.</td>
<td>bhrātar-</td>
<td>bhrātri-</td>
<td>φράτηρ</td>
<td>frater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister.</td>
<td>svasar- (?)</td>
<td>svasar-</td>
<td>[δῆλφη]</td>
<td>soror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master.</td>
<td>pati-</td>
<td>pati-</td>
<td>πατίς</td>
<td>potis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House.</td>
<td>dama-</td>
<td>dama-</td>
<td>δόμος</td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat.</td>
<td>sadas-</td>
<td>sadas-</td>
<td>δόξος</td>
<td>sedes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year.</td>
<td>vatasa-</td>
<td>vatasa-</td>
<td>ἔτος</td>
<td>vetus (old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field.</td>
<td>agrasa-</td>
<td>ajra-</td>
<td>ἀγρός</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ox, Cow.</td>
<td>gau-</td>
<td>go-</td>
<td>ἰδός</td>
<td>bos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep (Ewe).</td>
<td>avi-</td>
<td>avi-</td>
<td>ἱς</td>
<td>ovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine (Sow).</td>
<td>sū-</td>
<td>sü-</td>
<td>ἄρις, σύς</td>
<td>sus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoke.</td>
<td>yuga-</td>
<td>yuga-</td>
<td>ἱγύων</td>
<td>jugum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagon.</td>
<td>rata-</td>
<td>rata-</td>
<td>ἄρακα</td>
<td>rota (wheel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle.</td>
<td>madhya-</td>
<td>madhya-</td>
<td>μέδως</td>
<td>medius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet.</td>
<td>svādu-</td>
<td>svādu-</td>
<td>ἥπιος</td>
<td>suavis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The immigrants who peopled the Italian peninsula also divided into several branches, and the language of each branch had its own development, until they were finally crowded out by the dominant Latin. Fragments of some of these dialects have been preserved, in monumental remains, or as cited by Roman antiquarians, though no literature now exists in them; and other fragments were probably incorporated in that popular or rustic dialect which formed the basis of the modern Italian. The most important of these ancient languages of Italy—not including Etruscan, which was

* Clansman.
of uncertain origin — were the Oscan of Campania, and the Umbrian of the northern districts. Some of their forms as compared with the Latin may be seen in the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Oscan</th>
<th>Umbrian</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Oscan</th>
<th>Umbrian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accinere</td>
<td>altreire</td>
<td>arkane</td>
<td>neque</td>
<td>nep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alteri (loc.)</td>
<td>alttrei</td>
<td></td>
<td>per</td>
<td>perum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argento</td>
<td>aragetud</td>
<td></td>
<td>portet</td>
<td>portaia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avibus</td>
<td>aveis</td>
<td></td>
<td>quadrupedibus</td>
<td>peturpursus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>censor</td>
<td>cestur</td>
<td></td>
<td>quaturor</td>
<td>petora</td>
<td>petur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>censebit</td>
<td>censazet</td>
<td></td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>pontis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contra, f.</td>
<td>contrud, n.</td>
<td></td>
<td>qui, quis</td>
<td>pis</td>
<td>pis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornicem</td>
<td>curnaco</td>
<td></td>
<td>quid</td>
<td>pid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>destrua</td>
<td></td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>pod</td>
<td>pod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dicem (cf. venum-do)</td>
<td></td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>piet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixerit</td>
<td>dicuat</td>
<td></td>
<td>quom</td>
<td>pone, pune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodecem</td>
<td>desenduf</td>
<td></td>
<td>rectori</td>
<td>regaturei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extra</td>
<td>ehrad</td>
<td></td>
<td>siquis</td>
<td>svepis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facito</td>
<td>factud</td>
<td></td>
<td>stet</td>
<td>stai* (stai*et)</td>
<td>sbopecau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fecerit</td>
<td>fefacust</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertote</td>
<td>fertuta</td>
<td></td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fratibus</td>
<td>fratrus</td>
<td></td>
<td>est</td>
<td>fest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>ip</td>
<td></td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperator</td>
<td>embratur</td>
<td></td>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fust</td>
<td>fust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter</td>
<td>anter</td>
<td></td>
<td>fuerunt</td>
<td>fufanis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liceto</td>
<td>licitud</td>
<td></td>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fuia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magistro</td>
<td>mestru</td>
<td></td>
<td>tertium</td>
<td>tertim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medius</td>
<td>mefa</td>
<td></td>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>puf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mugiatur</td>
<td>mugatu</td>
<td></td>
<td>uterque</td>
<td>puturus pid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multitare</td>
<td>moltaum</td>
<td></td>
<td>utrique</td>
<td>puterei*</td>
<td>putrespe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fragments of early Latin are preserved in inscriptions dating back to the third century before the Christian era; and some Laws are attributed to a much earlier date, — to Romulus (B. C. 750) and Numa (B. C. 700); and especially to the Decemvirs (Twelve Tables, B. C. 450); but in their present form no authentic dates can be assigned to them. Some of these are usually given in a supplement to the Lexicon. (See also Cic. de Legibus, especially ii. 8, iii. 3, 4.)

Latin did not exist as a literary language, in any compositions known to us, until about B. C. 200. At that time it was already strongly influenced by the writings of the Greeks, which were the chief objects of literary study and admiration. The most popular plays, those of Plautus and Terence, were simply translations from Greek, introducing freely, however, the popular dialect and the slang of the Roman streets. As illustrations of life and manners they belong as much to Athens as to Rome. And the natural growth of a genuine Roman literature seems to have been thus
very considerably checked or suppressed. Orations, rhetorical works, letters, and histories,—dealing with the practical affairs and passions of politics,—seem to be nearly all that sprang direct from the native soil. The Latin poets of the Empire were mostly court-poets, writing for a cultivated and luxurious class; satires and epistles alone keep the flavor of Roman manners, and exhibit the familiar features of Italian life.

In its use since the classic period, Latin is known chiefly as the language of the Civil Code, which gave the law to a large part of Europe; as the language of historians, diplomats, and philosophers during the Middle Age, and in some countries to a much later period; as the official language of the Church and Court of Rome, down to the present day; as, until recently, the common language of scholars, so as still to be the ordinary channel of communication among many learned classes and societies; and as the universal language of Science, especially of the descriptive sciences, so that many hundreds of Latin terms, or derivative forms, must be known familiarly to any one who would have a clear knowledge of the facts of the natural world, or be able to recount them intelligibly to men of science. In some of these uses it may still be regarded as a living language; while, conventionally, it retains its place as the foundation of a liberal education.

During the classical period of the language, Latin existed not only in its literary or urban form, but in several local dialects, known by the collective name of lingua rustica, far simpler in the forms of inflection than the classic Latin. This, it is probable, was the basis of modern Italian, which has preserved many of the ancient words without aspirate or case-inflection, as orte (hortus), gente (gens). In the colonies longest occupied by the Romans, Latin—often in its ruder and more popular form—grew into the language of the common people. Hence the modern languages called "Romance" or "Romanic"; viz., Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and French, together with the Catalan of Northeastern Spain, the Provençal or Troubadour language of the South of France, the "Rouman" or Walachian of the lower Danube (Roumania), and the "Roumansch" of some districts of Switzerland.

A comparison of words in several of these tongues with Latin will serve to illustrate that process of phonetic decay to which reference has been made in the body of this Grammar, as well as
the degree in which the substance of the language has remained unchanged. Thus, in the verb to be the general tense-system has been preserved from the Latin in all these languages, together with both of the stems on which it is built, and the personal endings, somewhat abraded, which can be traced throughout. The following exhibit the verb-forms with considerably less alteration than is found in the other Romanic tongues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Portuguese</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Provençal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>soy</td>
<td>sôu</td>
<td>suis</td>
<td>son (sui)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>eres</td>
<td>és</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>ses (est)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>è</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>hé</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>es (ez)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>siamo</td>
<td>somos</td>
<td>sômos</td>
<td>sommes</td>
<td>sem (em)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sôis</td>
<td>étés</td>
<td>étz (es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>saô</td>
<td>sont</td>
<td>sont (son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eram</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>étaits</td>
<td>era</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eras</td>
<td>eri</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>étaits</td>
<td>eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>était</td>
<td>eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eramus</td>
<td>eravamo</td>
<td>éramos</td>
<td>éramos</td>
<td>étions</td>
<td>eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eratris</td>
<td>eravate</td>
<td>erais</td>
<td>éreis</td>
<td>étiez</td>
<td>eratz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>érano</td>
<td>eran</td>
<td>éraô</td>
<td>étaient</td>
<td>eran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td>fus</td>
<td>fui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisti</td>
<td>fosti</td>
<td>fuiste</td>
<td>fôste</td>
<td>fus</td>
<td>fust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fù</td>
<td>fuè</td>
<td>fôi</td>
<td>fut</td>
<td>fo (fon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuimus</td>
<td>funmo</td>
<td>fuimos</td>
<td>fômos</td>
<td>fûmes</td>
<td>fom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>foste</td>
<td>fuistel</td>
<td>fôstos</td>
<td>fûtes</td>
<td>fotz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerunt</td>
<td>fûrono</td>
<td>fueren</td>
<td>fôraô</td>
<td>furent</td>
<td>foren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sia</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>seja</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sii</td>
<td>seas</td>
<td>sejas</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sia</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>seja</td>
<td>soit</td>
<td>sia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simus</td>
<td>siamo</td>
<td>seamos</td>
<td>sejâmos</td>
<td>soyons</td>
<td>siam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>siate</td>
<td>seais</td>
<td>sejais</td>
<td>soyez</td>
<td>siatz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sint</td>
<td>siano</td>
<td>sean</td>
<td>séjaô</td>
<td>soient</td>
<td>sian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuissem</td>
<td>fossi</td>
<td>fuese</td>
<td>fôsse</td>
<td>fusse</td>
<td>fos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuiisses</td>
<td>fossi</td>
<td>fueses</td>
<td>fôses</td>
<td>fusses</td>
<td>fosse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuiisset</td>
<td>fosse</td>
<td>fuese</td>
<td>fôse</td>
<td>fût</td>
<td>fossa (fos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuiissemus</td>
<td>fôssimo</td>
<td>fuêsemos</td>
<td>fôsesmos</td>
<td>fussions</td>
<td>fossem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuiissetis</td>
<td>foste</td>
<td>fueseis</td>
<td>fôseis</td>
<td>fussiez</td>
<td>fossetz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuiissent</td>
<td>fôsseo</td>
<td>fueseon</td>
<td>fôssein</td>
<td>fussent</td>
<td>fosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>sii</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>sè</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esto</td>
<td>sia</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>seja</td>
<td>soit</td>
<td>sia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>este</td>
<td>siate</td>
<td>sed</td>
<td>sède</td>
<td>soyez</td>
<td>siatz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunto</td>
<td>siano</td>
<td>sean</td>
<td>séjaô</td>
<td>soient</td>
<td>sian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>essere</td>
<td>ser</td>
<td>sèr</td>
<td>être</td>
<td>esser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sens]</td>
<td>essendo</td>
<td>siendo</td>
<td>sêndo</td>
<td>étant</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Principal Roman Writers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Work</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T. Maccius Plautus</td>
<td>Comedies</td>
<td>254–184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Ennius</td>
<td>Annals, Satires, &amp;c. (Fragments)</td>
<td>239–109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Porcius Cato</td>
<td>Husbandry, Antiquities, &amp;c.</td>
<td>234–149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Pacuvius</td>
<td>Tragedies (Fragments)</td>
<td>220–130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Terentius Afer (Terence)</td>
<td>Comedies</td>
<td>195–159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Attius</td>
<td>Tragedies (Fragments)</td>
<td>170–75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Lucilius</td>
<td>Satires (Fragments)</td>
<td>148–103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Terentius Varro</td>
<td>Husbandry, Antiquities, &amp;c.</td>
<td>116–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Tullius Cicero</td>
<td>Orations, Letters, Dialogues</td>
<td>106–43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>Commentaries</td>
<td>100–44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T. Lucretius Carus</td>
<td>Poem “De Rerum Natura”</td>
<td>95–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Valerius Catullus</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Poems</td>
<td>87–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Sallustus Crispus (Sallust)</td>
<td>Histories</td>
<td>86–34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelius Nepos</td>
<td>Lives of Famous Commanders</td>
<td>52–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Vergilius Maro</td>
<td>Eclogues, Georgics, Aeneid</td>
<td>70–19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Horatius Flaccus</td>
<td>Satires, Odes, Epistles</td>
<td>65–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albius Tibullus</td>
<td>Elegies</td>
<td>54–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex. Aurelius Propertius</td>
<td>Elegies</td>
<td>51–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T. Livius Patavinus (Ivy)</td>
<td>Roman History</td>
<td>59–A.D. 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Ovidius Naso (Ovid)</td>
<td>Metamorphoses, Fasti, &amp;c.</td>
<td>43–A.D. 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phædrus</td>
<td>Fables</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerius Maximus</td>
<td>Anecdotes, &amp;c.</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Velleius Paterculus</td>
<td>Roman History</td>
<td>19–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pomponius Mela</td>
<td>Husbandry &amp; Geography</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Persius Flaccus</td>
<td>Satires</td>
<td>A.D. 34–62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Annæus Seneca</td>
<td>Philos. Letters, &amp;c.; Tragedies</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Annæus Lucanus</td>
<td>Historical Poem “Pharsalia”</td>
<td>39–65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. Curtius Rufus</td>
<td>History of Alexander</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Plinius Secundus (Pliny), Nat. Hist., &amp;c.</td>
<td>23–79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Valerius Flaccus, Heroic Poem, “Argonautica”</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Silius Italicus</td>
<td>Heroic Poem, “Punica”</td>
<td>25–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Junius Juvenalis (Juvenal)</td>
<td>Satires</td>
<td>40–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Annæus Florus</td>
<td>Hist. Abridgment</td>
<td>40–104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Valerius Martialis (Martial), Epigrams</td>
<td>40–118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Fabius Quintilianus, Rhetoric</td>
<td>40–118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Cornelius Tacitus</td>
<td>Annals, History, &amp;c.</td>
<td>60–118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (Pliny Junior)</td>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>61–115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Suetonius Tranquillus, Biographies</td>
<td>70–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apuleius, Philos. Writings, “Metamorphoses” &amp;c.</td>
<td>110–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Gellius, Miscellanies, “Noctes Atticae”</td>
<td>about 180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus, Apologist</td>
<td>160–240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† M. Minucius Felix, Apol. Dialogue</td>
<td>about 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† Firmianus Lactantius, Theology</td>
<td>250–325</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† D. Magnus Ausonius, Miscellaneous Poems</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammianus Marcellinus, Roman History</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claudius Claudianus, Poems, Panegyrics, &amp;c.</td>
<td>410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† Aurelius Prudentius Clemens, Christian Poems</td>
<td>348–410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>† Aurelius Augustinus, Confessions, Discourses, &amp;c.</td>
<td>354–430</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anicius Manlius Boethius, Philos. Dialogues</td>
<td>470–520</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† Christian writers.
INDEX.
INDEX.

Note.—The Figures refer to pages; the Letters a, b, c, to the upper, middle, or lower part of the page.

A.

A or ab, preposition, 88; after peto or postulo, 138 a; after participles of origin, 137 a; with abl. of agent after passives, 138 b, 147 c.

Abbreviations of Prænomens, 82.

Ablative, 12 a; ending, 18 b; in abus, 14 c; in i, 18 b, 35 c, 37 c; in is (3d decl.), 21 b; in ubus, 28 c; neuter as Adverb, 84 c; eo, quo, &c., 49 c; after Prepositions, 88; with ab or de for part. gen., 116 b; of crime or penalty, 119 c; with done, &c., 122 b; with pro for defence, &c., 130 c.—Syntax, 134–143; signification, 134 c; of Separation, 135 a; with compounds, b; of place whence, c; after adjectives of freedom and want, 136 a; of Source after natura, &c., c; of Material, 137 b; of Cause (with adjectives and verbs), c; of Agent, 138 b; after Comparatives, c; after plus, &c., 139 a; of Means, b; of Accompaniment, c; after utor, &c., 140 c; of Quality, 141 a; of Manner or Description, id.; of Price, b; of Specification, 142 a; Locative, 142 b, 148 b; Ablative Absolute, 142 c; used adverbially, 143 a; of description, 204; of Time when, 143 b; how long, c; of Distance, 144 a; place whence, 144 c; for Locative, 145 a; place where, c; way by which, c; with Prepositions, 146 a; with ab for Agent, 147 c; (distinguished from abl. of instrument, 148 a); of Gerundive, 208 c.

Absolute and Relative Time, 177.

abque, 89 a.

Abstract nouns in plural, 30 c; with neuter adjective, 106 a; expressed by neuter adjective, 107 c.

ac, see atque; ac si, 174 c.

Acatalectic verse, 222 c.

Accent, Rules of, 7 c; marks of, 8 a.

Accompaniment, ablative of, with cum, 139 c.

Accusative, 11 c; endings, 13 a; in im, 18 b, 35 c; in is, 19 a, 37 c; neuter as Adverb, 84 c (fem., 85 a); after Prepositions, 88, 145 a; with verbs of remembering, &c., 119 a; with Impersonals, 120 a, 132 b; with juvo, medeo, &c., 123 c; with dative after verbs, 124 c; after compounds with ante, &c., 125 c; with ad for dative, 128 c; after propior, &c., 129 b.—Syntax, 131–133; as Direct Object, 131 a; with verbs of Feeling and Taste, b, c; Cognate, c; after compounds of circum and trans, 132 a; constructive use (Constructio Praenans), b; after Impersonals, b; Two Accusatives, c (passive use, Rem.); Adverbial, 133 a; synecdochical, b; of Exclamation, c; as subject of Infinitive, c, 155 b, 194 a; distance and place whither, 133 c, 144 a; of Subject in Indirect Discourse, 188 a; of anticipation (in indir. questions), 190 c; in Substantive Clauses, 194 a; after verbs of Promising, &c., 196 a; of Gerundive, 208 b.

Accusing and Acquitting, verbs of, 119 b.

Acephalous verse, 222.

-acus, adjective ending, 98 b.

Achilles, infl., 250.

Action, nouns of, 96 b, 97 c; followed by genitive, 117 a.

Ad, prepos. governing acc., 88 b.
INDEX.

-ides, patronymic, 98 b.
admo, construction of, 128 a.
Adjectives, 38-41; of 1st and 2d declensions, 38; of 3d declension, 35; of two or three terminations, 35; of one termination, 36; infl. of comparatives, 37; of common gender, 38 a; cases of, used as Adverbs, 38 a, 84; derivation, 96 b, 98 a; compound, 100 b; as modifiers, 102 a; adjective phrase, b; Rule of Agreement, 105; as appositive, b; rule of Gender, 106 a; agreement by synesis, b; agreeing with appositive or predicate, a; partitive, b, c; used as nouns, c; demonstratives as pronouns, 107 a; neuter adj. as noun, b; Possessive, used as genitive, 108 a, 114 a; qualifying act (primus venit), 108 c; medius, reliquus, &c., 109; pred. in relative clause, 111 b; compar. or neuter as partitive, 116 c; relative adj. governing genitive, 117 b; of feeling with animi, 118 b; of Likeness, &c., with gen. or dat., 118 c, 129 b; of Fitness with dat. or ad and acc., 128 c (proptior with acc., 129 b); of freedom and want with abl., 136 a; dignus, &c., with abl., 137 c; with rel. clause, 185 c.
admodum, 41 a.
Adonic verse, 223 c.
Adverbs, 9 c, 84-87; comparison, 40 b; numeral, 48 c; correlative, 49; derivative, 84; classification, 85 c; signification, 87; in compounds, 100 c, 124 b; as modifiers, 102 a (phrase, b); qualifying a noun, 107 b; relative or demonstr. = pronoun with prepos., 111 c; as partitives, 116 a; hactenus, 147 a; pridie, &c., with accus., b; palam, &c., with abl., b; ante quam, c.
Adverbial phrase, 102 b; id temporis, meam vicem, quod si, 133 b; in abl. absolute, 143 a.
Adversative conjunctions, 94 a.
adversus, 89 b; as adverb, 147 b.
aer, infl., 250.
Affix, close and open, 9 b.
Agency, nouns of, 96 b, 97 c; governing genitive, 117 a.
Agent, abl. of with ab, 138 b, 147 c.
Agnomen, 82 b.
Agreement, Rules of, 103-113; of Nouns, c; appos. and predicate, 104 a; of Adjectives, 105; of omnes, quot, &c., instead of part. genitive, 116 c.
aio, 81 c.
al, ar, neuters of 3d decl. (list), 17 c.
Alcaic Strophe, 229.
allium, stem of allius, 48 b.
allius as possessive, 145 b.
aliquis, inflected, 48 b.
-alis, -aria, adjective ending, 98 b.
alius, inflected, 34 c; with abl. (poetic), 189 b; alius, 109 c.
Alphabet, classification, 1 b; early forms, changes, 2; assimilation, 4.
ambo, inflection of, 42 b.
amplius, construed without quam, 139 a.
an, pronoun, 146 b.
an, anne, annon, interrogative particles, 200.
Anapaestic verse, 227.
amini (locative), 118 b.
ante, 89 b; omitted in dates, 146 c; as adverb, 147 b; followed by quam, c, 179 c.
ant diem, 146 c.
Antecedent of relative, 110 a; implied, b; in both clauses, or in relative clause only, c; omitted, 111 a.
Antepenult, 7 c.
ant equam, 179 c.
Aorist (historical perfect), 58 b.
apage, 82 b.
Apodosis, defined, 166 a; form of, c; past tenses of indicative for potential, 169 a, 174 a.
Apposition, 102 a, 104; rule of gender, 104 a; locative and abl., c; of possessive and gen., 105 a; of adjectives, b; neuter in, 107 c; agreement of verb, 112 a; expressed by gen., 115 a; with nomen est (inative), 127 a; after verbs of naming, &c. (accus.), 132 c.
apud, 89 c.
apus, with ad and acc., 128 c; with relative clause of result, 185 b.
Argus, inflected, 250.
As, unit of value, 235.
Asclepiad, verse, 228; forms of, 230.
Asking, verbs of (two accus.), 132 c; passive construction id. (Rem.).
INDEX.

Aspirate, 1 c, 215 c.
Assibilation of c before e or i, 4 b.
Assimilation of consonants, 3 b; in prepositions, 4 a.
at, 95 b; at vero, 96 a.
Athos, inflection of, 17 a, 250.
Atlas, infl., 250.
atque (or ac), with words of likeness, &c., 95 a.
Atrides, infl., 250.
Attraction of relative, 110.
Attributive adjective, gender, 105 c.
-atus, adjective ending, 98 b.
audeo, 77 a; ausim, b; ausus (as present), 222 b.
aut, 95 b; in questions, 201 c.
audem, position, 96 a.
Authority in prosody, 215 c.
ave, 82 b.
-ax, adj. ending, 98 c; adjectives in, with gen., 117 c.

B.

Bacchic verse, 227 c.
Bargaining, verbs of, 196 b; with part. in dus, 206 a.
basis, infl., 250.
belli (locative), 145 a.
-bet, names of months in, 85 c.
-bills (passive verbal), 98 b.
Birth, place of, in ablative, 137 a.
bos, declined, 22 b.

C.

C—G, 2 a; for qu, b; interchanged with t, 4 b; pronunciation, 6 a.
Cesura, 222 b.
Calendar, 285.
Cardinal numbers, 41; declined, 42; comparative forms, 252.
captitas, with verbs of accusing and condemning, 119 a.
caro, declined, 22.
Capys, infl., 250.
Cases, 11 b; endings, 18; forms (see Declensions); meaning of their names, 113 b; Construction of, 118-148; comparative forms, 251.
Catalectic verse, 222 c.
causa, with genitive, 115 b, 188 a.
Causal conjunctions, 94 b; clauses, 102 c; construction of do., 181 b.

Causative verbs, 99 a.
Cause, clauses of, 181; implied (subjunctive clause), 185 b.
Caution and Effort, verbs of, with substantive clause, 196 b.
cave in prohibitions, 152 b, 196 c.
-ce, enclitic (hic, etc.), 45 b.
cedo (defective), 82 b.
celo, with 2 acc., 183 a.
certe, certo, 87 b.
ceu, 174 c.
ch, hard sound of, 6 c.
Characteristic, clause of, 184 b.
Chiasmus, 213 b.
Choliambic verse, 226 b.
Choriambic verse, 228 b.
cl or ci before a vowel, 4 b.
-cip (stem-ending), 20 b.
circa, circiter, circum, cis, 89 c.
circiter, as adverb, 147 b.
Cities, names of, gender, 10 c.
citra, 89 c; following noun, 148 a.
clam, as preposition, 147 b.
Clauses, classification of, 102; used as adverbs, 85 b; with a neuter in appos., 107 c; limited by genitive of abstract nouns, 114 b; with paenitet, etc., 120 a; dependent, in sequence of tenses, 162 a; Conditional, 166-176; Temporal, 176-181; Causal, 181; Final, 182; Consecutive, 183; Intermediate, 185; Subordinate (in indir. discourse), 188; Relative (classified), 193; Substantive, 193-199 (see these titles).
clienta, 37 a.
Close syllables, 5 c; affixes, 9 b; in compounds, 65 a.
ocpi, 81 b.
Cognate Accusative, 131 b.
Cognomen, 82 b.
Collective noun with plural verb, 112 c.
Commands, imperative, 51 b, 152 b; hort. subjunctive, 149 c, 192 c; in indirect discourse, 191 c.
Commanding, verbs of, with purpose-clause, 195 c; with result-clause, 198 c.
committere ut, 198 a.
Common gender, 11 a; of adjectives, 38 a.
Comparative conjunctions (as if), 94 b, 174 c; with appos., 104 b; with primary tenses, 175 a.
Comparatives, declension, 37 a; use, 40 c; as partitives, 115 c.
Comparison of Adjectives, forms, 88 b; irregular, 89 b; defective, c; of Adverbs, 40 b; of qualities (two comparatives), 108; by magis, 39 a, 109 a.
Complementary accusative, 104 b; infinitive, 154 b.
Completed action, tenses of, 58 c, 159 c; idiomatic use, 170 c.
Compounds, prepositions in, 4 a; of verbs, 65 a; of esse, 60; of factio and fio, 81 a; of non, 87 a; of circum and trans, 132 a, c; of ab, de, ex, 135 b; quantity of, 220.
Conative present, 157; imperfect, 158.
Concession, verbs of (with clause or infin.), 196 a.
Concessive subjunctive, 151; particles, 94 c, 176 b.
Condemning, verbs of, 119 b.
Conditional conjunctions, 94 b, 176; Sentences, 166-174;Clauses, 102 b, 103 a, 166; classified, 167.
Conditions, particular and general, 187; simple, 168 a; contrary to fact, b; (how developed, Note); imperfect of continued state, c; use of indicative, 169; (part. inurus, c;) forms of future cond., 170 (imperf. by sequence of tenses, 171); general cond. (indef. subject or repeated action), 171 c; implied, 172 (in intermed. clause, 187 Note); omitted, 173; in indirect discourse, 189.
condit, 82 b.
Conjugation, 9 b, 60; the four regular forms, 60-65; paradigms of, 66-75.
Conjunctions, 93-95; correlative, 49; classification, 98; meaning, 95.
Connectives (relatives used as), 108 b.
Consecutive clause defined, 108 a; syntax (subj. with ut), 183-185.
Consonants, classification, 1 b; consonant stems, 12 c, 36 a.
constare (constat), 137.
Constructio pragensis, 152 b.
Constructions of Cases, 113-148; Synopsis of, 248, 249.
contra, 90 a; as adverb, 147 b; following noun, 148 a.
Contraction, 3 a, 7 b; shown by circumflex, 8 a.
Contracting, &c., verbs of, with germundive, 206 a.
Co-ordinate clauses, 102 c.
Copula, 101 c.
cordi, 128 b.
Correlatives, 49.
Countries, names of, gender, 10 c.
credo (parenthetic), 214 a.
Cretic verse, 228.
Crime or charge, gen. of, 119 b; expressed by abl., c.
cum (prep.), 90 a; as enclit., with pronoun and relative, 44 c, 47 c; with abl. of accompaniment, 139 c; contention, 140 c; manner, 141 b.
cum (conj.), its orthography, 2 b; meaning, 95 c; as indef. relative, 177 a; temporal (imperf. or plup. subj.), 178 b; causal or concessive (since, though), 180 c, 181 a, c; like quod, with indic., 180 c; in clause, for pres. participle, 202 c.
cum... tum, 49 c, 96 c, 181 a.
cundus, adj. ending, 98 b.

D.

D, final, changed to t, 2 b.
Dactylic verse, 224 b.
Dative, 11 c; endings, 13 b; in -abut, 14 c; in is (3d decl.), 21 b; -ubut, 28 c; in i (unus, &c.), 34 c.

— Syntax, 121-180; of Indirect Object, 121; after transitive, c; after verbs of motion (poetic), 123 b; with acc. or abl. after dono, &c., id.; after intransitives, c, 128 (use of acc., c, 124 c); after impersonals, 124 b; after compounds (ad, ante, &c.), 125; (ab, de, ex) 126 a; poetic use, c; of Possession (with esse), id.; after compounds of esse, 127 a; as pred. with nomen est, id.; of Agency, with gerundive, b; after participles and passives, id.; of Service, 128 a; of Nearness, Fitness, &c., b; after nouns or adjectives, 129 b; of Reference, c; for poss. gen., 180 a; for direction, id.; of volens, &c., b; Ethical, id.; with infin. (for acc.), 156 b; of gerundive, 208 a.
dea, 14 b, 250.
Declaratory Sentence, 101 a.
Declension, 12 c; general rules, 18 a;
INDEX.

of Nouns, i. 14, ii. 15, iii. 17-27, iv. 28, v. 29; of Adjectives, i. ii. 38, iii. 35.
Defective nouns, 31; adjectives, 37 c; comparison, 39; tenses, 60; verbs, 81.
Definitions of Syntax, 101-103; of Prosody, 215, 221-223.

debit, 82 c.
deiinde, denique, 87 c.
Delos, infl., 250.
-dem, affix, 45 b.
Denominative verbs, 99 a, c; (compare 67 b).
Deponent verbs, 75-77; reflexive signif.; 76 b; list of irregulars, c; semi-deponents, 77 a.
Derivation of Words, 96-100.
Derivative verbs, 77 b, 99.
Desideratives (in urlo), 78 a, 99 c.
deus, 16 b, 250.
dic (imperative), 65 c.
Dido, infl., 23 b.
dies, gender of, 29 c (form dii, 30 a).
dificilis, see facilis.
dignus, with abl., 187 c; with clause of characteristic, 186 c.
Dimeter Iambic verse, 226.
Diminutives: nouns, 98 a; verbs, 77 c, 99 c.
Diphthongs, 1 b; sound of, 6 b; quantity, 7 a, 216 b.
Diptotes, 31 a.
Direct Discourse, 187 c.
Distance (acc.), 183 c; (acc. or abl.), 114 a.
Distributive Numerals, 43 b.
divum (divom), for deorum, 16 b.
do, -go, feminine endings, 23 c, 93 a.
domi (locative), 28 c, 145 a.
domus, inflection of, 250 b.
donec, 179 c; with subj., 180 b.
dono (dat. of service), 128 b; (verb, constr. of), 122 b.
Doubtful gender, 11 a.
Dual forms, 42 b.
Dubitative Subjunctive, 152 a.
dubito an, 200 c; non... quin, 181 b, 198 b.
duc (imperative), 65 c.
dum, with present indic., 158 a; followed by secondary tenses, 163 c; with subj. (provided), 175 c; (until), 180 b; with clause for present participle, 202 c.
dummodo, 175 c, 180 b.
duo, declined, 42 b.
dus, participle in; see Gerundive.

E.

E (preposition), see ex.
Early Forms of alphabet, 2; Prosody, 223.
Eclipsis, 223 a.
edo, 80 a.
egeo, with gen., 120 c, 136 b.
ejus modi, 115 a.
Elision, 223 a.
Ellipsis, 101 c.
Emphasis, as affected by Arrangement, 212 c.
Enclitics, 7 c (quantity, 216 c);
-cum, 44 c; -te, -pte, -met, -ce, 45 a.
English method of Pronunciation, 6 b.
ennim, 95 b, 96 a.
EO (irreg. verb), 80 b; eo..quo, 49 c, 140 b.
Epicene nouns, 11 a.
Epistolary tenses, 161 b.
-et (nom. ending), Nouns of 2d decl., 16 c; 3d decl., 17 c; Adjectives, 34, 35.
Ergo, 95 c; with gen., 115 b, 121 a.
est, 59 c.
esse, and its compounds, 57-60;
comparative forms, 59; (in modern languages, 255); as copula or substantive verb, 101 c; omitted by ellipsis, 113 b; compounds, with dat., 127 a.— est, there is, 212 b.
et...et, 49 c, 95 c.
etenim, 95 b.
etiam, 87 a; in answers, 201 c.
eti, 175 b.
etum (noun-ending), 98 b.
Etymology, 1-100.
Euphonic changes (vowels), 2 c;
(consonants), 3 b.
ex (prep.), 90 c; following its noun, 148 a; compounds of, with dat., 128 a.
Exclamations, accus., 183 c; with infin., 156 b.
Exclamatory sentences, 101 b; acc. and infin., 156 b.
Expecting, hoping, &c., constr. with reflexive and infin., 195 b.
INDEX.

57 c, 59 c (esse), 63 c, 96 b, 97 a, 118 c, 148 a, 149 a, 186 b, 167 b, 251, 252.

H.

H (aspirate), 1 c; oh, 4 c; omitted, id.; not reckoned in position, 215 c.
habeo, imperat., 158 b; with infin., 126 a; with perf. part., 204 c.
hactenus, 147 a.
Hadria, gender of, 14 b.
Heteroclite nouns, 81 b; adjectives, 37 c.
Heterogeneous nouns, 81 c.
Hexameter verse, 224.
Hiatus, 223 b, 233 c.
hic, 45, 46.
hiems, 8 c, 20 b.
Hindrance, implied in relat. clause, 185 c; verbs of, with quominus, 196 c; negative with quin, 198 b.
Historical Infinitive, 156 c. Present, 168 a; sequence of tenses with, 163 c.
Hoping, verbs of (with acc. of pers. or refl. pronoun), 195 b.
Horace, metres of, 230, 231.
hospita, 37 a.
humi (locative), 145 c.
Hortatory Subjunctive, 149.

I.

I, suppressed in obit, ommio, &c., 8 a; in abl. of 3d declension, 18 b; adjectives and participles, 87 b; in perfect, 55 a; added to root, 62 c; lost in forms of capio, &c., 63 c; as root or suffix, 98 b, c; in optative, 149 a.
Iambic verse, 225.
Ictus, 222.
id quod, 111 b.
idcirco, 95 c; as correlative, 182 b.
idem, 48; derivation, 45 b.
idonesus qui, 185 c.
id temporis, 183 b.
Ides, 28 b, 234.
-ler in infin. passive, 65 c.
ligitur, 95 c; position, 96 a.
-liis, adjective ending, 98 c.
ille, 45, 46.
illo, verb-ending, 77 c, 99 c.

-im, accus. in 3d declension, 18 b; in present subjunctive, 65 c.
immane quam, 191 b.
immo, 201 c.
Imperative, 51 b; personal endings, 64 b, 65 a; (dic, &c., 66 b); of scio, &c. (fut. form), id., 158 a; (imperat. sentence, 101 a); Syntax, 162; as equivalent to condition, 172 c.
Imperfect tense, 58 a; compared with Perfect, b; lengthens vowel, 63 a; of hortat. subjunctive, 150 b; of opt. subj., c; of concess. subj., 151 c.—Syntax, 158; in descriptions, c; for pluper. id., conative, id.; of surprise, 159 a; for perf., b; epistolary, 161 b; subj. in conditions contrary to fact, 168 b; (indicative, 169, 174); of fut. condition transferred to past, 171 b; in temporal clauses, 178 a, 179 a.
Impersonal verbs, 82, 83; passive of intransitives, 83 b, 126 b; miseret, &c., with acc. and gen., 120 a; libet, licet, with dat., 124 b; decet, &c., with accus., 123 b; with infinitive as subject, 154 b; with clause as subject (it), 193 c.
Impure syllable, 5 c.
in, constr. of, 88 b, 146 b; phrases, 90 c.
Inceptive forms, 82 c; verbs (Inchoative), 77 b, 99 c.
Incomplete action, tenses of, 53 c.
Increment of nouns, 218; of verbs, 219.
Indecinable nouns, 81 a; gender, 10 c; adjectives, 87 c.
Indefinite Pronouns, 47 c, 48; conditional expression, 166 a.
Indefinite subject omitted, 118 a; expressed by 2d person, 149 c, 171 c.
Indicative Mood, 51 a; forms of, 61–63. —Syntax, 148; tenses, 157–161; in cond. clauses, 167 b, 168 a; in apod. for subj., 169 a, 174 a; future, in cond. clause, 170 a; of absolute time, 167 a, 177 b; with cum, 178 c; in inverted clauses, 179 b; with cum = quod, 180 c; in causal clauses, 181 b; with quod in subst. clause, 199.
indigio, with genitive, 120 c, 138 b.
indignus, with abl., 137 c; with relative clause, 186 b.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 187-192; defined, 187 c; Indirect Narrative, 188; subject-accus., b (omitted, 153 c); use of quam, b, 189 a; relative clause, 188 c; conditional sentence in, 189 b; questions, c; Indirect Questions, 190; future, b; dubit. subj., c; accus. of anticipation, id.; early use of indic., 191 b; nescio quis, etc., id.; at (whether), c; Indirect Commands, id.; example of Indirect Discourse, 192.

induc, double constr. of, 122 b.

INFINITIVE MOOD, 51 b; endings, 53 b; of fut. passive, c; passive in -Jer, 65 c.—SYNTAX, 158-156; form and meaning, 158 c; as Subject, c; of impersonals, 154 b; complementary, id.; for subjunct. clause, c; with jubeo and veto, 155 a; with subject-acc., b; subject omitted, c; of purpose and result, 156 a; in exclamations, b; (cf. 197 c;) historical, 158; Tenses of, 164; the present only commonly used, except in indir. disc., 165 a, or passive, b, or in poetry, c; with accus. in subst. clauses, 194 a; after passives, b; after verbs of Wishing, 195 c; of Permission, 196 a; of Determining, b; poetic use, 197 a; future passive, in with supine, 56 c, 209 b.

infid, 82 c.

Influence, verbs of with purpose-clause, 196 c.

Inflection defined, 8 a; of declension and conjugation, 9 b; unusual forms, 250.

inquam, 81 c; position, 214 a.

instar, with genitive, 115 b.

Intensive verbs. 77 c, 99 c.

inter, reciprocal use of, 44 c, 91 b; with words of accusing, &c., 119 c.

interest, constr. of, 120 b.

Interjections, 9 c, 95 a.

Interlocked order of words, 213 c.

Intermediate Clauses, 102, c; Syntax of, 186-187.

Interrogative Particles, 9 c, 86 b, 200; Sentences, 101 b.

injussu, 29 b.

Io, declined, 250.

-lo, -lum, noun-endings, 97 c; verb-ending of 3d conj., 62 c, 72 b.

iri in fut. infin. passive, 55 c, 209 b.

Ionic verse, 229.

ipse (ipsus), 45, 46 c.

Irregular nouns, 30 b; verbs, 78.

is, 46, 46 c; as correlative, 111 a.

Islands, names of, gender, 10 c; locative use, 144 b.

Iste, 46, 46.

It as sign of impersonals, 82 c, 193 c.

Italian dialects, 252.

itaque, 95; comp. with ergo, 96 a; position, 214 a.

iter, declined, 22 b.

Iterative verbs, 77 c.

ium, gen. plur. of 3d decl. (vowel-stems), 19 a; (mute-stems), 20 b, 21 b; (adjectives), 35, 36.

J.

Jam, 87 b.

jecur, declined, 226.

jubeo, constr. of, 128 c, 155 a, 194 a.

jucundus, with ad and ger., 209 c.

jungo, with abl., 140 a.

Juppiter, declined, 22 b, 250.

jussu, 20 b.

juvo, with accus., 123 c.

juxta, 91 b; following noun, 148 a.

K.

K, supplanted by c, 2 a.

Kalends, 284.

L.

L, doubled (in fallo, &c.), 62 b.

Labial stems (3d decl.), 20 b, 24 b, 26 b.

Laocoon, decl., 250.

lateo, with accus., 183 a.

Latin Language, origin and compar. forms, 251-258; earliest forms, 258.

libet (impers.), 88 b; with dative, 124 b.

-libet (indefinite), 48 a.

licit (impers.), 88 b; with dative, 124 b; with dat. pred., 155 b; with subjunctive, 175 b, 176 c; meaning although, 196 a.

Limit, 102 a.

Liquid stems (3d decl.), 19 b, 24, 26.
INDEX.

Locative Ablative, 142 b, 145 c.
Locative form, 12 b; decl., i. 14 c, ii. 16 a, iii. 22 c, iv. 28 c, v. 30 b; as
adverb, 85 a; in appos. with abl., 104 c; comp. with dative, 121 b;
of names of towns, &c., 145 a.
loqui, without preposition, 145 c.
longius, constr. without quam, 137 a.

M.

M final, elision of, 223 a.
magis in comparisons, 39 a, 109 a.
magni, gen. of value, 115 b, 141 c.
majestatis, with words of accusing,
119 c.
malo, infl. of, 79 c.
Masculine adjectives, 38 a.
Material, genitive of, 114 c; ablative,
137 b.
maxime in comparisons, 39 a.
May (potential), how expressed,
51 b.
Means, ablative of, 139 b.
Measure, genitive of, 115 a, 144 a.
Measures of Value, 235, 236.
medeor, medioor, with dat. or acc.,
123 c.
Meditative verbs (in -esso), 77 c, 99 c.
medius (middle part of), 109 b.
memini, 51 b; imperat. form, 153 b;
with pres. infin., 164 c.
-met (enclitic), 45 a.
Metre, 223 c.
meus (voc. mi), 16 b, 38 c.
militiae (loc.), 145 a.
mille, decl. and constr., 43 a.
minime, 41 a; in answer (no), 201 c.
minoris (gen. of value), 141 c.
minus, 41 a; constr. without quam,
139 a.
miror si, 199 c.
mirum quam, 191 b.
misceo, with abl. or dat., 140 a.
miseror, with gen., 120 a.
miseret, 83 a; with accus. and gen.,
120 a.
Modern pronunciation of Latin, 6 b;
languages, compared with do., 255.
Modification of subject or predicate,
102 a.
modo, dummodo (proviso), with
hortat. subjunctive, 150 a, 175 c.
Monoptotes, 81 a.

Months, gender of, 10 c; names in
-ber, 85 c; construction, 146 c;
divisions of, 224.
Moods, 50 a, 51; Syntax of, 148–
156.
Motion expressed with prepositions,
122 b, 135 c, 144 b; indicated by
compounds, 182 a.
Motive, with ob or propter, 138 a.
Mountains, names of, gender, 10 c.
mox, 87 c.
Multiplication by Distributives, 43 b.
Multiplicatives, 43 c.
Mute stems (3d decl.), 20 a.

N.

N final, in leon-, &c., 19 b; inserted
in 3d conj. (frango, &c.), 62 b.
nam, namque, 35 b, 95 b, 96 a.
Names of men and women, 32.
natus, &c., with abl., 136 c.
-ne (enclitic), in questions, 200; with
hie, &c., 45 b.
ne, with hortat. subjunct., 150 a; in
prohibitions, 152 b; in final clauses,
182 a; in consec., 183 c; with verbs
of caution, 196 b; of fearing, c; omitted, id.
nec enim, 95 b.
Necessity, verbs of, 196 a.
 necne, 200 c.
nedum, 183 a.
negas, with supine, 209 c.
Negative particles, 9 c, 86 c, 87 a
(non nemo, nemo non).
nego, preferred to dico, non, 188 a.
negue, 94 a, 95 a.
neguo, 82 b.
ne . . . quidem, 87 c, 214 a.
nescio an, 200 c; nescio quis, 191 b.
Neuter passives, 77 a.
Neuter Nouns, like cases in, 13 a; 3d
decl. in al and ar, 17 c; of adjective
in a, 36 c, 37 a; accus. as ad-
verb, 84 c; of adj. with abstr.
nouns, 106 a, id. as noun, 107 b;
partitive use, 115 c.
Neuter Verbs, with agent (perire
ab), 188 b.
Neutral passives, 77 b.
ni, nisi, 166 b, 176 b.
nimirum, 191 b.
ningit, 21 c, 89 a.
nix, root, 21 c; inflection, 22 c.
nolo, 79 b; noli, 192 c.
nomen, 82 b; nomen est, with dat., 127 a.
Nominative, 11 b; formative from stem, 12 c; in adjectives, 86 a. —
Syntax: predicate after esse, &c., 104 a; as subject of verb, 113 a; used for voc., 134 a; with opus as pred., 136 b.
non in answers, 201 c.
non dubito quin, 198 c.
Nones, 234.
nonne, 200; non quod, —quia, —quin, —quo, 186 c.
Nouns, inflection of, 14–32; used as adjectives, 38 a, 107 b; verbal (gerund and supine), 50 a; irregular and defective, 30–32; derivation of, 96–98; compound, 100 b; agreement, 103; in relative clause, 110 c; understood with gen. (Castoris), 114 a; (est sapientis), c; of agency, with obj. gen., 117 b; verbal, with dat., 129 c.
ns as adjective ending, 86.
num, 200 a; in indir. questions, b.
Number, rule of, with appositive, 104 c; adjective, 106 b; verb, 112.
Numerals, 41–48; cardinal and ordinal, 41; distributive, 43 b; num. adverbs, c; as partitives, 115 c; with de or ex, instead of part. gen., 116 b.
nunc, 87 b.

O.
O for u, after u or v, 2 b; as stem-vowel of 2d decl., 15 b; in verb-stems, 62 c.
O si, with subjunctive of wish, 151 a.
ob or propter, to denote object of feeling, 138 a; force of ob in compounds, 98 a.
Object defined, 101 c; indirect, 121 b; direct, 131 a.
Oblique cases, 12 a.
obvius, with dat., 125 c.
odi, 81 b.
omnes nos (instead of gen.), 116 c.
Open syllables, 5 c; pronunciation, 6 a; affix, 9 b; in compounds θ becomes η, 65 a.
operā, with gen. of agent, 188 b.
opinione (celerius opin.), 139 a.
oporatebat (virtual present), 174 b.
oporet, 83 b, 132 b.
Optative, derivation and comparison with subjunctive, 149 b; subj., 150.
opus and usus, with abl., 186 a; (opus as pred., b; with perfect part., 204 c; with supine, 209 c.
Oratio Obliqua, see Indirect Discourse.
Order of Words, 212–214.
Ordinal numbers, 41 b; how formed, 42 b; declined, c.
Orpheus, declined, 250.
Orthography, various, 4 c.
OE for us, in 2d decl., 15 c.
OE, osias, infl., 22 c; (ossua, 28 b).
Oscan forms, comp. with Latin, 263.
-Oeus, adjective ending, 98 b.
OVAT, &c., 82 a.

P.
P, inserted euphonically, 3 c, 20 b, 72 b.
peenitet, 83 b, 120 a.
palam, 147 b.
Palatal, 1 b; stems of 3d decl., 21 c; gender, 24 b; forms, 27 b; verbs, 62 c.
Parallel verb-forms, 65 c.
Parasyllabic nouns, 17 b; adjectives, 35 a.
parte (loc.), without prep., 145 c.
Participial clause, as condition, 172 b.
Participles, 60 a, 51 c; (abl. in i, 21 b, 37 b; compared, 39 a); future, of purpose, 51 c, 185 b, 205 b; perfect, as adj., 52 a, 88 c; (with habeo, 204 c); periphrastic use, 83 c; formation, 55 b; present, of esse, 57 c; of deponents, 76 b, 202 b; in ns, with gen., 117 c; in dus or tus, with dat. of agent, 127 c; of source (natus, &c.), with abl., 136 c; in ursus with fui = plup. subj., 169 c, 189 b, 205 c; in dus or rus, in fut. apod., 170 c. —
Syntax, 202–206; perf. in pres. use, 202 b; adjective and predicate use, 203; in tenses of completed action, c; containing the main idea, 204 b; with opus, habeo, volo, c; with facio (in indir. disc.), 205 a; future, use of, 205 b; (part. in dus, see Gerundive).
INDEX.

269

Particles, 9 c; forms and classification, 84-96; in compounds, 100; negative, 86 c, 87 a; conditional, 174 c; interrogative, 200.

Partitives, with genitive, 115 b.

parum, 41 a.

Passive Voice, forms wanting in, 60 b; reflexive use, c, 83 b; (with acc., 183 b); terminations, 54 b; infin. in -ier, 65 c; participles of deponents, 76 c; impersonal (of intrans. verbs), 83 b; with dat., 122 a; dat. of agent, 127 c; subject, 131 a; of verbs of feeling, b; of asking, &c., with acc., 132 c; of verbs of saying, &c., with acc. and infin., 194 b.

Patronymics (-ades, -ides, &c.), 98 b.

Peculiar forms of 3d decl., 22 a.

pelagus (neut.), 16 a.

penes, 91 c; following noun, 148 a.

Penult, 7 c; quantity of, 218-220.

per, 91 c; in composit., 41 a; for agent, 138 a.

Perfect Tense, meaning, 53 b; endings, 54 b, 56 a; formed in 3d conj., 63 b; syncopated, 65 b; of subjunct. in. prohibition, 150 a, 152 b; (of optat. subj., antiquated, 150 c); of concess. subj., 151 c; of dubit. subj., 162 a; Syntax, 159 c; implies action ceased, 160 a; in negations, b; for present in epist. style, 161 b; followed by secondary tenses, 162 c; following primary tenses, id.; in result, 163 a; with a fut. protasis, 171 a; (infin.) for present, 165 a; after verbs of feeling, 165 c; Participle in passive tenses, 52 a; of deponents, id., 202 b.

Period, 214 b.

Periphrastic Conjugations, 83 c.

Permission, verbs of, 196 a.

Personal endings, 64, 56.

Persons of Verbs, 54 a; 112 b; with relatives, 110 b; 2d (in subj.) of indefinite subject, 149 c, 171 c; 3d of imperat., antiquated, 152 c.

peræsum est, 120 a.

peto with ab, 133 a.

Phalæcian verse, 229.

Pherecratic verse, 228.

Phoebe, decl., 25 c.

Phonetic decay, 2 c, 3 a; phonetic value of Roman alphabet, 6 a.

Phrases, neuter gender, 10 c; as adverb, 85 b; modifying, 102 b; limited by gen., 114 b.

piger, 83 b, 120 a.

Place, relations of (names of towns, &c.), 144 b; abl. of, 142 b, 143 b; whence, 144 c; whither, id.; where, 145; verbs of, how constructed, 146 b.

Plants, names of, gender, 10 c; in 3d and 4th decl., 29 a.

Plautus, use of quom with indic., 179 b; prosodial forms, 23 b.

plebes, inf., 250; plebei (gen.), 80 a.

-plæx, numeral adjectives, 43 c.

pluit, 83 a (used also personally, id.).

Pluperfect, 83 a; of opt. subj., 150 b; of opt. subj. (wishes), c, 192 c; of concess. subj., 151 c; of preterite verbs, 160 c; general use, id.; in epist. style, 161 b; (subj.) in conditions, 168 b; (subj.) expressed by -urus fui, 169 c, 189 b; in temporal clauses, 178 a, 179 a.

Plural accus. as adverb, 85 b; of neuter adjectives, 107 c.

Pluralia tantum, 30 c; with distributive numerals, 48 b.

pluris, gen. of value, 115 b, 141 c.

plus, inflected, 87 b; without quam, 139 a.

pœnitet (see pœnitet), 88 b, 120 a.

pone, 91 c.

Position in prosody (does not affect final vowel), 216 c.

Possessives in appos. with gen., 105 a, 108 a; as nouns, 107 a; for gen., 108 b, 114 a; neuter of c; abl. fem. with referf, &c., 188 a; with domi (loc.), 145 b.

possum, 60 b; posse as fut. infin., 165 c.

post, 91 c; with quam, 147 c.

postquam in temp. clause, 177 c.

postulato ab, 138 a.

postridie with gen., 121 a; with acc., 147 b; with quam, c.

Potential Mood, how expressed in Latin, 51 a; potential subjunctive, 173 c.

potior, with gen., 121 a; with abl., 140 c.

praæ, in composit., 41 a.

Praenomen, 32 b.
præsenter, 92 a.
Predicate, 101 c; nominative, 104 a; adjective, 105 b; gender, 106 a; in relative clause, 111 b; after infin., 156 c.

Prepositions, assimilation of, 4 a; classification and meaning (list), 88–93; in compounds, 93 a, 100 c; do. with dat. (ad, ante, &c.), 125, 126; with acc. (ad, ante), 125 c; (circum, trans), 132 a; with verbs of asking (ab, de, ex), 188 a; after words of origin (id.), 137 a; of time, 143 c; of place, 142 c, 144 b; for neighborhood (ad, apud), 145 c; Syntax, 146–148; as adverbs, 147 b; followed by quam (ante, post), 147 c; following the noun, 148 a.

Present stem, 53 c; how formed from root (3d conj.), 62; (see list, pp. 72, 73).

Present Tense, 58 a; endings, 54 c; vowel changes, 61, 62; of subjunctive, 160–162; Syntax, 167; of continuing action, 157 b; conative, c; for future, id.; historical, 168 a; with dum, id.; used of extant writers, b; followed by secondary tenses. 163 c; infin. after verb in past (potui), 164 b; (memini), c; Participle. 202 a; how supplied in passive, 52 a, 202 c.

Preterite verbs, 81 b; 160 c.
Price, abl. or gen. 141 c.
pridie, with gen., 121 a; with acc., 147 b; with quam, c.
Primary Suffixes (a, i, u, ta, na, &c.), 96 c; Tenses, 162.
primo and primum, 87 c.
Principal parts of verb, 64 b, 65 a.
prior . . . quam, 147 c, 179 c; in relative clauses, id.
pro, 92 a, 180 c.
procul with abl., 147 b.
Prohibitions (perf. subj. with ne), 149 c, 152 b, 192 c.
Promising, &c., verbs of, 195 b.

PRONOUNS, 44–48; Personal, 44 a; old forms, b; gen. in i or um, c; (omitted as subject, 113 a); Reflexive, 44 b; 46 c; Possessive, 44 b, 47 b, 105 a, 114 a; (cuinus, 48 c); reciprocal with inter, 44 c; Demonstrative, 45, 46; used as nouns, 107 a; as antecedent, 111 a; intensive (ipse), 46 c; Relative, 47; Syntax, 109–111; agreement with appos., 110 b; as connective, 111 c; Interrog. and Indefinite, 47, 48.

Pronunciation, 5, 6.
prope, 92 a; with acc., 147 b; as adverb, id.
Proper Names, 32; in plural, 30 c.
propter, 92; following noun, 148 a.
Prosoody, 216–219; early peculiarities, 282.
prosum, 60 a.
Protasis, 166 a (see Conditions).
Proviso, 175 c, 180 b.
-pte, -pse (enclitic), 45 a.
pudet, 83 b, 120 a.
pugnatur, 83 b.
Punishment, abl. of, 119 c.
Pure syllable, 6 c.
Purpose, infin. of, 156 a; clause of, 162; ways of expressing, 183.

Q.

Quæ res (or id quod), 111 b.
quæso, 82 a.
Quality, genitive of, 115 a.
quam with superl., 40 c; in comparisons, 108 c, 109 a, 138 c; after prepos., 147 c; followed by rel. clause, 185 a; (in indir. disc.), by infin., 188 b, 189 a; by result clause, 197 b.
quam a, 174 c.
quamlibet, quamquam, quamvis, 48 a, 151 b, 175 b, 176 c.
quando, interrog., 49 a, 96 c; indef., 177 a; causal (since), 181 b.
quant i, gen. of value, 141 c.
Quantity, rules of, 215–220; (of Greek words, 215 c).
quantum vis, 176 c.
quasi, 174 c.
-que (enclitic), forming universals, 48 c.
queo, 82 b.
ques (nom. plur.), 47 c.
Questions, 200, 201; Indirect, 190, (indir. in, 191 b), 200 b; in Indir. Disc., 189 c.
quii (relative), inflected, 47; qui (adverbial), 47 b.
quii, 96 c, 181 b, 186 b.
quidem, 87 c, 214 a.
quin, 184 a; non quin, 186 c; non...quin, 198 b.
quippe cum, 180 c; quippe qui, 183 c.
quis, infl., 47 a; quis (abl. plur.), c.
quisquam, 48 c.
quisque, 48 c; with superl., 41 a; with plur. verb, 112 c.
quisquis, 48 a.
quo, in final clauses, 182 b; non quo, 186 c.
quod eo, 49 c.—quoad, 180 b.
quod with indic., 181 b; in inter-
med. clause, 186 b; in substantive
clause, 199 b; as accus. of speci-
fication (whereas), id.; with verbs
of feeling, c.
quod si, 183 b.
quom, 2 b, 95 c, 173 b, 179 b (see
'cum').
quominus, 182 c, 184 a; with verbs
of caution and hindrance, 196 b.
quoniam, 95 c, 181 b.
quoque, 87 a.
quot, 118 c.—quum, see cum.

R.
R, double in noun-stems, 19 c; in
verb-stems, 62 b.
Radical syllables, quantity of, 96 b,
215 b, 220 b.
ratus (as pres. part.), 202 b.
recapse, 45.
reconsider, with acc., 119 b.
Reduplication, 61 b, 62 a, b, 63 b; in
perfects of 3d conj., 73 c; lost in
compounds, 65 a; of roots, 98 b;
rule of quantity, 219 c.
refert, with gen. or poss., 120 b.
Reflexive Pronouns, 44 b; Verbs
(deponent), 76 b; use of passive,
50 c; with object-accusative, 188 b.
Relative Adverb—Pronoun with pre-
poss., 111 c; as connective, 96 a.
Relative Clause, 102 b; classified,
193; equiv. to condition, 166 c,
172 b; of purpose, 182, 196; of
result, 183 c, 197; of characteristic,
181 b.
Relative Pronouns, 47; as connect-
tives, 108 b, 111 c; rule of agree-
ment, 109 c; person of verb, 110 a;
agreement with appositive, 110 b.
Relative Time, 177.
repetundarum, 119 c.

Resolution of syllables in prosody,
222 a.
Resolving, verbs of, 196 b.
republica, 32 a.
Result, infin. of (use), 156 b; in perf.
or imperf. subj., 163 a; clauses of,
183 c; subst., clause of, 197 a;
used elliptically, 197 b; following
quam, id.
Rhythm, 215.
Rivers, names of, gender, 10 c.
rogo, constr. of, 182 c.
Roman Writers, 256.
Romance (or Romanic) languages,
254; comparative forms, 255.
Root, 8 c, 9 b; of esse and fui, 59 c;
of verbs of 3d conj., 62 b (list, 72,
73); how developed into Stem, 8 c,
9 a, 96.
ruri, -rure, 145 a.
rus, constr. of, 144 b.

S.
S elided, 2 b, 232 a; for t, 3 c; be-
comes r, 3 a, 19 b; as nomin. end-
ing, 12 c, 13 a; in perf. stem, 62 a,
63 b, 64 b; syncopated (dixtī =
dixisti), 65 b.
salve, 82 b.
Sanskrit forms, 13 a, 22 b, 33 c, 59 c,
61 a, 63 c, 96 b, 97 a, 143 a.
Sapphic verse, 228 (strophe), 229.
satis, non satis, 41 a.
satis est, with perf. infin., 165 c.
sō added to verb-root, 62 c.
soin (sciasne), 5 b.
scito, imperat. form, 65 c, 153 b.
sco (inceptive), 77 c, 99 c.
Second Conjugation, 61 c, 68; verbs
of, 69.
Secondary Tenses, 162; (by synesis,
164 b;) following histor. present,
168 c.
secundum, 92 b.
secundus (participial), 98 c, 207 a.
secutus (as pres. part.), 202 b.
sed, 95 b.
Semi-deponents, 77 a.
Semi-vowels, 1 c; j, v (i, u), 2 a.
senati, senatuos (gen.), 28 c.
senex, infl., 22 c; compared, 40 a.
Sentences, classif. of, 101 b.
Separation, with dat. (adimo, &c.),
126 a; abl. of, 185 a.
Sequence of Tenses, 161 c.
sena noce, 109 b.
sestertium, sestertius, 82, 235, 236.
seu, see sive.
si, 166 b; (whether), 191 c; si non, 176 b; miror si, 190 c.
siem, 59 c.
Significant endings, 97 b.
Signs of Quantity, 7 b; of Accent, 8 c.
-ain, in perf. subjunctive, 65 c.
similia, with genitive, 118 c; withative, 129 b.
Simols, infl., 250.
simul, with ablative, 147 b.
simul atque (ac), 177 c.
ain, 186 b.
Singulatur tantum, 80 c.
sis (= si via), 5 b.
sive, 96 b, 176 b.
-so, in future perfect, 65 c.
sedes (al audea), 5 b, 77 b.
soleo, 77 a.
solitus (as present part.), 202 c.
solus, declined, 84 c; with qui, in subjunctive clause, 186 a.
Space, accusative of, 133 c, 144 a.
Special verb-forms, 65 c.
Specification, accusative of, 183 a; ablative of, 142 a.
Spelling, various, 4 c.
Stanza or Strophe, 229.
Stem defined, 8 b; formation of, 9 a, 96 b; (incorrect defin., 13 c); of Nouns (see Declensions), 12 c (in 8d decl., 22-27, see list); of Adjectives, 88 b; of verb-tenses, 88 c, 64 b; changes in, 64 c, 62 b; stem-vowel, 61, 64; present, of 8d conj., 62; (u-stems, c); perfect, 63; quantity of, 220 a.
Stem-building, 9 a; (see 96-99).
sub, in compounds, 41 a; constr. of, 87 b, 146 a.
Subject, 101 b; of verb (nom.), 118 a; indef. (omitted), 118 b; (2d person), 149 c, 171 c; of passive, 181 a; of infin. (acc.), 183 c, 156 b.
Subjunctive Mood, tenses wanting in, 50 b; how used, 51 a; present (vowel-change), 61 a, c, 63 c.—Syntax, 148-152; original form and meaning, 149 a; Hortatory, b (2d pers. indef., c), 171 c; in prohibition, 150 a, 152 b; proviso (with modo), 150 b; past tenses, id.; as condition, 172 c; Optative, 150 c; Concessive, 151 b, 175 b; Dubitative, 152 a; Tenses of, 161-164; rule of Sequence, 162; in Conditions, 164, 168; fut. cond., 170; (past, by seq. of tenses, 171 b); 2d person for indef. subj., 171 c; of repeated action, id.; Potential, 173 b; of caution, c; with cond. and compar. particles, 174 c; of Relative Time, 177 b; after cum (temporal), 178; (causal), 180; antequam, &c., 180 a; dum, b; of Cause, 181 b, 186 c; in Indirect Discourse (subord. clause), 181 c, 186 a, 188 c; in Final Clauses, 182; after nundem, 183 a; of Result, c; after quin and quominus, 184 a; of Characteristic, b; with unus (solus) qui, 186 a; quam, id.; of restriction and proviso, b; with dignus, &c. c; in Intermediate Clause, id., 186; in Indirect Discourse, with relative, 188 c; conditional, 189 b; question, c; (Indirect Question, 190, 200); commands, 191 c; with ut in Substantive Clauses of Purpose, 195; of Result, 197; with verbs of commanding, &c., 196 c; of fearing, 196 c; happening, &c., 197 a; after quam, b; in exclamations, c.
Subordinate clauses, 102 c; in indir. disc., 186, 188-191.
Substantive Clauses defined, 102; Syntax, 188-199; acc. and infin., 194 a; (passive constr., b); of purpose, 195; of result, 197; indic. with quod, 199; (Indirect Question, 196).
Suffices, primary (a, i, u, ta, na, &c.), 96; significant, 97-99.
sum, 58 (see esse).
summus (top of), 109 b.
sunt qui, 177 b, 184 c.
super, supra, 92 a.
Superlative endings, 88 a; of eminence, 40 c; with quam, id.; with quisque, 41 a; of a part, 103 b; with relative, 111 b; used as partitive, 115 c.
Supine, 29 a, 50 a, 52 b; stem, 53 c, 55 b; in 3d conj., 63 c; accus. of direction, 144 a; Syntax, 209.
sus (subus), 22 b.
Syllables, 6 b; pure, open, &c., c.
Synalepha, 223 a.
INDEX.

Synesis, 108 b; of adjectives, 106 b; of relative, 110 b; of verb, 112 c; of secondary tenses, 166 a.

Synopsis of tenses, 64 c; of Constructions of Syntax, 248, 249.


T.

T for d (set, aput), 2 b; interchanged with c, 4 b; as personal ending, 54 c; in Supine stem, 61 b, 62 a; in verb-stem, 62 c.

tædet, 83 b, 120 a.
tamen (position), 96 a.
tamquam, 174 c.
tanti, gen. of value, 141 c.
tantum, as correl., 49 b; with hor-tat. subjunctive, 150 a.
tantum abest ut, 197 c.
-tas, -tia, noun endings, 98 a.
-te (enclitic), 45 a.
Teaching, verbs of (2 acc.), 183 c.
Temporal particles, 94 c; clauses, 102 c, 176–181.
-ter (in alter, &c.), 34 c; as adjective-ending, 35 b, 98 b.

Tenses, 50 a; of continued action in passive, c; of incomplete or completed action, 52 c, 205 c; use of perf. and imperf., 53 b; classif. of by stems, c; tense-endings, 54–57; derivation of do., 57 c.—Syntax, 157–165; of indic., 167–161; of subj., 161–164; of infin., 164; Rule of Sequence, 162.
tenus, 92 c, 146 c, 148 a.
terra marique, 145 a.
Tetrameter Iambic, 226.
Thales, infl., 250.

Third Declension (nouns), 17–27; Conjugation (verbs), 62, 68, 70–73 (list, 72, 73).
tigris, infl., 23 a, 250.
-tio, -tura, -tus (-tutis), noun-endings, 97 c.

Time, absolute and relative, 157, 161; how long (acc.), 133 c, 148 b; when (abl.), id.
-tor, -trix, nouns of agency, 97 c; (used as adjectives, 88 a).

totus, abl. used without prepos., 145 c.

Towns, names of, gender, 10 c; in us, fem., 16 a; in e, neut., 18 c; Construction of, 144.
trans, 92; comp. of, with acc., 132 a.
Trees, names of, gender, 10 c.
tres, 42 c.

Trimeter Iambic, 225.
Triptotes, 31 a.
Trochaic verse, 227 a.
-tudo, -tus, noun-endings, 98 a.
tuli (tetuli), 78 b.
tum, 87 b; with cum, 95 c, 181 a.

U.

U, when semi-vowel becomes v, 2 a; not allowed to follow u or v, id.

u stems of verbs, 62 c, 64 a, 96 c.
ubii in temporal clauses, 177 a, c.
-ubus in 4th decl., 28 c.
ullus, infl., 34 c; use, 48 c.
ultra, 93 a, 148 a.
um for arum, 14 c; for orum, 16 b.

Umbran forms compared with the Latin, 253.
unquam (unquam), 48 c.

Undertaking, verbs of (with gerundive), 206 a.

unus, infl., 34 c; in plural, 48 b.
unus qui, with subj., 185 a.
-urio (desiderative), 78 a, 99 c.
-urus, part. in, 51 c; with fui, 169 c, 189 b; use, 205.
usquam, 48 c.
usque, with acc., 147 b.
usus, with abl., 138 a; (usui, dat. of service, 128 b).

ut, with concess. subj., 151 a, 176 b, 176 c; as indef. relat., 177 a; ut cum, 180 c; in final clauses, 182; conseq. do., 188; subst. do., 195, 197; with verbs of Fearing, 196 c; omitted, id.; ut non, 183 c, 197.

ut, utpote, quippe, with relative and subjunctive, 180 c, 185 b.
uter, infl., 34 c.
uteque, 48 c; with plor. verb, 112 c; with nouns and pronouns, 116 c.
util, utinam, with subj. of wish, 151 a, 192 c.
utor, with abl., 140 c.

ut si, 174 c.

utrum . . an, 200.
INDEX.

V.

\( \forall \) (for \( u \)), 2 a, 6 a, 15 c; syncopated in perfect stein, 65 b.

valde, 41 a.

Value, genitive of, 115 b, 141 c; measures of, 235, 236.

vapulo, 77 b.

Variable nouns, 31 b; adjectives, 37 c.

-ve, vel, 95 b.

velim, vellum, 151 a.

veluti, velutai, 174 c.

veneo (venum eo), 77 b, 80 a.

Verbs, 50–83; forms, 54, 56; endings, 55–57; special and parallel forms, 65 b; Regular, 66–75; Deponent, 75–77; Irregular, 78–80; Defective, 81; Impersonal, 82; Derivation of, 99; compound, 100 b. — Syntax, 112, 118, 148–209; omitted, 118 b; of remembering, &c., 119 a; of accusing, &c., b; of emotion, 120 a; of plenty, &c., c; of relating, &c., 194; of commanding, promising, asking, wishing, 195; of permitting, resolving, caution, effort, fear, 196; of happening, &c., 197.

Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 155 b.

Verbal in ax, 98 b; with gen., 117 c.

veritus (as present), 202 b.

vero, 98 c; in answers, 201 a.

Verse, 222 c; forms of, 224–231.

verum or vero, 95 b.

vescor, with abl., 140 b.

vespero (loc.), 16 c, 145 b.

veto, constr. of, 155 a, 194 a, 195 c.

vetus, infl., 96 c; comparison, 88 c.

-vi in perfect, 61 b, c, 63 b, 64 b, 65.

vice (adverbial), 133 b.

videor, with dative, 128 a.

vin (vinese), 5 b.

vis, infl., 22 c.

vitio (dat. of service), 128 b.

Vocative, 12 a, 13 a; of nouns in -ius, 16 b; Syntax, 134; (of adj. for nom., b); Greek in I, 217 b.

Voices, 50 a.

volo, infl., 78, 79; with infin., 194 b, 195 c; with perf. part., 204 c.

voti (damnare), 119 c.

Vowels, 1 b; Italian sound, 5 c; strengthened (see Vowel increase); weakened, 3 a, 63 a.

Vowel change in verbs, 66 a, 66 b; in present subjunctive, 63 c; in compounds, 65 a.

Vowel-increase, 2 c, 61 a, 62 b, 63 b.

Vowel scale, 2 c.

Vowel stems, 12 c, 17 b, 19 a, 20 a; gender and forms, 24.

W.

W, the letter not found in Latin, 1 a.

Way by which (abl.), 145 c.

Wishes and Commands, 192.

Wishing, verbs of, constr., 151 c, 173 c, 195 c.

Women, names of, 82 c.

Y.

Y in words of Greek origin, 2 a; noun-stems in, 23 b; in verb-stem, 62 c.

ya, primary suffix, 96 c, 97, 98 a.

Year, date of, 233; months, 234.

AUTHORS AND WORKS CITED.

Caesar: Bell. Civ.
Bell. Gall.
Bell. Afric.
Cicero: Academica.
pro Archia.
ad Atticum.
Brutus.
in Catilinam.
pro Cluentio.
Cato Major.
de Inventione.
pro Deotaro.
de Oratore.
de Divinatione.
Div. in Caecil.
ad Familiarum.
dec Fato.
de Finibus.
pro Flacco.
Laelius.
de Legibus.
Leg. Agraria.
pro Ligario.
pro Manilio.
pro Murena.
de Nat. Deorum.
de Officis.
Orator.
Paradoxa.
Philippica.
pro Piancio.
In Pisonem.
ad Q. Fratrem.
pro Rabirio.
pro Rosc. Amer.
Rull (Leg. Agr.).
pro Sestio.
Topica.
Tusc. Quest.
in Verrem.
q. Curtius.
Horace.
Juvenal.
Livy.
Lucerrius.
Nepos.
Ovid.
Persius.
Plautus.
Amphitruo.
Asinaria.
Captive.
Trinummus.
Pliny.
Sallust: Catil.
Jugurtha.
Seneca: Epist.
Tacitus: Agricola.
Annales.
Historia.
Terence: Heaut.
Virgil: Æneid.
Eclogæ.
Georgica.
Announcements.

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN SERIES.

These text-books have been prepared especially to meet the present conditions for admission to Harvard College. (See Catalogue.)


3. LATIN COMPOSITION (In Preparation), being a Sequel to the Method: To consist of two parts: the first containing Exercises on the Constructions of Syntax, with Vocabulary (translation into Latin for practice in Syntax, introductory to Composition proper); the second, Practice in Writing Latin, adapted to the use of advanced or college classes (free Composition, i.e., translation of continuous passages from English into Latin). The first part is expected to be ready for publication early in the summer.


5. SALLUST: The Conspiracy of Catiline as related by Sallust. pp. 82.

6. CICERO: Select Orations of Cicero chronologically arranged, covering the entire period of his public life. pp. 394. This volume contains thirteen orations, giving to classes a considerable range of choice.

7. CATO MAJOR: Cicero De Senectute, a Dialogue on Old Age. pp. 57.


9. VIRGIL: Six Books of the Æneid and the Bucolics. With Introduction, Notes, and Grammatical References to Allen & Greenough's and Gildersleeve's Latin Grammars. The text is founded on that of Ribbeck, variations from that and from Heyne being given in the margin.

For No. 2 of the above may be substituted

LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS, adapted to Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, with enlarged Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL (about 300 pp.); containing a large amount of elementary practice in reading and composition.
The following will be published in single volumes:

1. Course No. I. Full Preparatory Course of Latin Prose (without Vocabulary), containing four books of Caesar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, eight Orations of Cicero, and the Cato Major.

2. Course No. II. Second Preparatory Course of Latin Prose (with Vocabulary), containing four books of Caesar's Gallic War and eight Orations of Cicero.

N.B. — Course No. I. is identical with the First Course prescribed for admission to Harvard College. Course No. II. contains the usual amount required at other colleges.

REPRESENTATIVE AUTHORS. By H. H. Morgan.

This is essentially a repertorium, and can be made equally useful as a work of reference and as a companion to any manual of literature, or as a guide in any course of reading. It presents the representative authors of England and America — their mode of presenting their subjects, the literary forms which they employ, their representative works, their characterization by critics of established reputation. The classification is at once simple and exhaustive, and meets a want not hitherto provided for.

THE FIFTH, or HIGH SCHOOL MUSIC READER FOR MIXED VOICES. By Julius Eichberg, General Supervisor of Musical Instruction of Boston Public Schools.

Containing a full Course of Advanced Solfeggio for One and Two Voices, and a carefully selected number of easy Four-Part Songs taken from the works of the best composers. This work has been especially compiled to meet the growing wants of our High Schools for a higher grade of music than is contained in works now used in such schools.

N.B. — The Tenor Part in many of the songs may be either omitted or sung by the alto (boys).

IN PRESS.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE RHYTHMIC AND METRIC OF THE CLASSICAL LANGUAGES. By Dr. J. H. Heinrich Schmidt. To which will be added the Text of the Lyric Parts of some of the more generally read of the Greek Dramas, with Rhythmic Schemes and Commentary. Edited from the German by John Williams White, A. M., and C. H. Riemenschneider, Ph. D., Professor of the Ancient Languages in German Wallace College.

Dr. Schmidt's "Leitfaden in der Rhythik und Metrik der Classischen Sprachen" is a compend of his larger work, brought out in four volumes, Svo. in 1868-72, entitled "Die Kunstformen der griechischen Poesie und ihre Bedeutung," and is designed as a manual for classes in the Greek and Latin poets. The author has revised the present translation and made important additions. Many illustrations from English poets have been introduced, and the work has been otherwise adapted to the use of English-speaking students. With a full Index. (Nearly Ready.)

IN PREPARATION.

OUTLINES OF THE COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SANSKRIT, GREEK, AND LATIN, embracing in small compass the general principles of Etymology, with full references to authorities and larger works; designed as a text-book or for self-instruction. By J. B. Greenough.

PLATO'S APOLOGY OF Socrates AND CRITO.

Edited, for the Use of Schools, by John Williams White, A. M.

The basis of this work will be the German edition of Dr. Christian Cron. (Platon's Vertheidigungsrede des Sokrates und Kriton, Fuenfte Auflage, Leipzig, Teubner, 1872.) To the matter contained in Dr. Cron's edition there will be added notes by
the Editor and from other sources, analyses, and extended references to Goodwin and
Hadley. The book will be for the class-room, and all matter not of direct value to
the student will be rigidly excluded. (In Preparation.)

FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Prepared to accompany
Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and designed as an Introduction to his Greek
Reader. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A.M., Tutor in Greek in Harvard Col-
lege.

A series of eighty lessons with progressive Greek-English and English-Greek
exercises. Followed by selected passages from the first two books of Xenophon's
Anabasis, and vocabularies. (In Preparation.)

THE MEDEA OF EURIPIDES. Edited, with Notes
and an Introduction, by FREDERIC D. ALLEN, Ph. D., Professor in the Univer-
sity of Cincinnati.

NEW EDITION OF LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S
ABRIDGED GREEK LEXICON. With an Appendix containing Proper
and Geographical Names carefully prepared by J. M. Wharton.

SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS.

HUDSON'S TEXT-BOOK OF POETRY. For use in
schools and classes. Consisting of selections from Wordsworth, Coleridge,
Burns, Beattie, Goldsmith, and Thomson.

CARPENTER'S INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-
SAXON. An Introduction to the study of the Anglo-Saxon Language, Com-
prising an Elementary Grammar, Selections for Reading with Notes, and a
Vocabulary. By STEPHEN H. CARPENTER, Professor of Logic and English Lit-
erature in the University of Wisconsin, and Author of "English of the XIV.
Century." pp. 212 . . . . . . . . . 1.00 1.25
Ginn Brothers,
Publishers,
4 Beacon Street, ... BOSTON.

Terms: Cash in Thirty Days. Wholesale and Retail Prices.

ENGLISH.

ARNOLD'S MANUAL of ENGLISH LITERATURE.
Historical and Critical. By Thomas Arnold, M. A. ... $3.00

CARPENTER'S INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-SAXON. An Introduction to the study of the Anglo-Saxon Language, Comprising an Elementary Grammar, Selections for Reading with Notes, and a Vocabulary. By Stephen H. Carpenter, Professor of Logic and English Literature in the University of Wisconsin, and Author of "English of the XIV. Century." pp. 212 ... 1.00 1.25

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE. Illustrated in a Philological Commentary on his Julius Caesar, by George L. Craik, Queen's College, Belfast. Edited by W. J. Rolfe, Cambridge. Cloth ... 1.40 1.75

ELEMENTS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. An Introduction to the study of Grammar and Composition. By Bernard Biggby, Univ. Oxon., Superintendent of Public Schools, Port Huron; Author of "The History of the English Language" ... .40 .50

ENGLISH OF THE XIV. CENTURY. Illustrated by Notes, Grammatical and Etymological, on Chaucer's Prologue and Knight's Tale. Designed to serve as an Introduction to the Critical Study of English. By Stephen H. Carpenter, A. M., Professor of Rhetoric and English Literature in the State University of Wisconsin ... 1.40 1.75

HUDSON'S FAMILY SHAKESPEARE: Plays selected and prepared, with Notes and Introductions, for Use in Families.

Volume I., containing As You Like It, The Merchant of Venice, Twelfth Night, First and Second of King Henry the Fourth, Julius Caesar, and Hamlet.

Volume II., containing The Tempest, The Winter's Tale, King Henry the Fifth, King Richard the Third, King Lear, Macbeth, and Antony and Cleopatra.

Volume III., containing A Midsummer Night's Dream, Much Ado about Nothing, King Henry the Eighth, Romeo and Juliet, Cymbeline, Coriolanus, and Othello.

And Hudson's Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare. 2 vols.

5 vols. Cloth ... 3.00 10.00

Half morocco ... 12.00 15.00

Full calf ... 16.00 20.00


Cloth ... 3.20 4.00

HUDSON'S SERMONS. ... 1.40 1.75
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Series</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hudson's School Shakespeare</strong> 1st Series</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.50 $2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Containing As You Like It,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Merchant of Venice,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twelfth Night</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamlet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected and prepared for use in schools,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clubs, classes, and families.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With introductions and notes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By the Rev. Henry N. Hudson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hudson's School Shakespeare</strong> 2d Series</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.60 $2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Containing The Tempest,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Richard the Third,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Winter's Tale,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Lear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Henry the Fifth,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macbeth, Antony and Cleopatra.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hudson's School Shakespeare</strong> 3d Series</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.60 $2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Containing A Midsummer Night's Dream,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Much Ado About Nothing,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Henry VIII,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Othello</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hudson's Separate Plays of Shakespeare</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Merchant of Venice,</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamlet</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Tempest</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macbeth</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry the Eighth</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As You Like It</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry the Fourth</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Lear</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Much Ado About Nothing</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Paper Cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romeo and Juliet</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Othello</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.32 $0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Halsey's Genealogical and Chronological Chart of the Rulers of England, Scotland, France, Germany, and Spain</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By C. S. Halsey.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounted, 33 x 43 inches. Folded and bound in 4to, 10 x 12 inches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Halsey's Bible Chart of Genealogy and Chronology, from the Creation to A.D. 100.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepared by C. S. Halsey.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This Chart is designed to illustrate Bible History by showing on a clear and simple plan the genealogy and chronology of the principal persons mentioned in the Scriptures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These are all the questions (except on the subject of Geometry), in the form of papers, which have been used in the examinations for admission to Harvard College since 1860. They will furnish an excellent series of Questions in Modern, Physical, and Ancient Geography; Greek and Roman History; Arithmetic and Algebra; Plane and Solid Geometry; Logarithms and Trigonometry; Latin and Greek Grammar and Composition; Physics and Mechanics. They have been published in this form for the convenience of Teachers, classes in High Schools, and especially for pupils preparing for college.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Living Word; or, Bible Truths and Lessons.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.80 $1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The distinguishing feature of this book is the arrangement by subjects of the spiritual and moral truths of the Bible, so that all its most expressive utterances upon a given subject may be read in unbroken succession. It is believed that this will furnish what has been long needed for public and private reading in the home, the school, and the church.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Our World, No. 1.; or, First Lessons in Geography.</strong> Revised edition, with new Maps, by Mary L. Hall.</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.75 $0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designed to give children clear and lasting impressions of the different countries and inhabitants of the earth rather than to tax the memory with mere names and details.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OUR WORLD, No. II. ; or, Second Series of Lessons in Geography. By Mary L. Hall. With fine illustrations of the various countries, the inhabitants and their occupations, and two distinct series of Maps, 5 pages physical, and 19 pages of finely engraved copperplates political... $1.60 $2.00

This book is intended, if used in connection with the First Lessons, to cover the usual course of geographical study. It is based upon the principle that it is more useful to give vivid conceptions of the physical features and political associations of different regions than to make pupils familiar with long lists of places and a great array of statistics.

PEIRCE'S TABLES OF LOGARITHMIC and TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS TO THREE AND FOUR PLACES OF DECIMALS. By James Mills Peirce, University Professor of Mathematics at Harvard University. Cloth... .60 .75

PEIRCE'S ELEMENTS OF LOGARITHMS; with an Explanation of the Author's THREE AND FOUR PLACE TABLES. By James Mills Peirce, University Professor of Mathematics at Harvard University .80 1.00

This Work is a Companion to THREE AND FOUR PLACE TABLES OF LOGARITHMIC and TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS, by the same Author.

REPRESENTATIVE AUTHORS. By H. H. Morgan.
This is essentially a repertory, and can be made equally useful as a work of reference and as a companion to any manual of literature, or as a guide in any course of reading. It presents the representative authors of England and America,—their mode of presenting their subjects, the literary forms which they employ, their representative works, their characterization by critics of established reputation. The classification is at once simple and exhaustive, and meets a want not hitherto provided for.

STEWART'S ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. American Edition. With QUESTIONS and EXERCISES. By Prof. G. A. Hill, of Harvard University... .1.40 1.75

The Questions will be direct and exhaustive upon the text of Mr. Stewart's work. After the Questions will be given a series of easy Exercises and Problems, designed, in the hands of a good teacher, to arouse and strengthen in the student's mind the power of reasoning in accordance with sound scientific methods.

SEARLE'S OUTLINES OF ASTRONOMY. By Arthur Searle, of Harvard College Observatory... .1.60 2.00

This work is intended to give such elementary instruction in the principal branches of Astronomy as is required in High Schools or by any students not far advanced in mathematics. It is illustrated by carefully prepared engravings, and contains some information on each of the following subjects:
1. The chief results of astronomical inquiry up to the present time with regard to the general constitution of the universe, and, in particular, with regard to the stars, planets, nebulae, comets, and meteors.
2. The methods of astronomical research, and their application to the arts.
3. The general principles of theoretical astronomy.
4. The history of astronomy.
5. Astronomical statistics.

PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. By G. L. Demarest... .40 .50

THE CHANDLER DRAWING-BOOK. By the late John S. Woodward, of Dartmouth College... .50 1.00


PRIMARY OR FIRST MUSIC READER... .24 .30

A course of exercises in the elements of VOCAL MUSIC AND SIGHT-SINGING, with choice rote songs for the use of youngest pupils.

INTERMEDIATE MUSIC READER... .58 .70

Including the Second and Third Music Readers. A course of instruction in the elements of Vocal Music and Sight-Singing, with choice rote songs, in two and three parts, based on the elements of harmony.
THE FOURTH MUSIC READER. Svo. pp. 336 | $1.20 | $1.60

This work, prepared to follow the Third Music Reader, is also adapted, under a competent instructor, to be used in High Schools where no previous systematic instruction has been given. To this end a brief but thorough elementary course is given, with musical theory, original solfeggios, a complete system of triad practice, and sacred music and song, with accompaniment for the piano. The music introduced is of a high order, and by the best masters, and is calculated to cultivate the taste, as well as to extend the knowledge and skill of the pupils.

THE FIFTH, or HIGH SCHOOL MUSIC READER FOR MIXED VOICES. Containing a full Course of Advanced Solfeggios for One and Two Voices, and a carefully selected number of easy Four-Part Songs, taken from the works of the best composers. This work has been especially compiled to meet the growing wants of our High Schools for a higher grade of music than is contained in works now used in such schools.

N.B. — The Tenor Part in many of the songs may be either omitted or sung by the altos (boys).

THE ABRIDGED FOURTH MUSIC READER. | 1.00 | 1.25
SECOND MUSIC READER | . . . . . . . . . . | .32 | .40
THIRD MUSIC READER | . . . . . . . . . . | .32 | .40

THE NATIONAL MUSIC CHARTS. By Luther Whiting Mason. An invaluable aid to Teachers of Common Schools in imparting a practical knowledge of Music, and teaching Children to sing at sight. In Four Series. Forty Charts each. Price, $10.00 each Series.

FIRST SERIES | . . . . . . . . . . . | 10.00
SECOND SERIES | . . . . . . . . . . . | 10.00
THIRD SERIES | . . . . . . . . . . . | 10.00
FOURTH SERIES, by L. W. Mason and J. B. Shawland | . . . . . . . . . . . | 10.00
EASEL | . . . . . . . . . . . | 1.25

THE NATIONAL MUSIC TEACHER. A Practical Guide for Teaching Vocal Music to Young Children. By L. W. Mason | . . . . . . . . . . . | .60
GREEK.

GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR. By William W. Goodwin, Ph. D., Eliot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard University. Half morocco. $1.25 $1.56

The object of this Grammar is to state general principles clearly and distinctly, with special regard to those who are preparing for college. In the sections on the Moods are stated, for the first time in an elementary form, the principles which are elaborated in detail in the author's "Syntax of the Greek Moods and Tenses."


This work was first published in 1860, and it appeared in a new form — much enlarged and in great part rewritten — in 1865. In the present edition the whole has been again revised; some sections and notes have been rewritten, and a few notes have been added. The object of the work is to give a plain statement of the principles which govern the construction of the Greek Moods and Tenses, — the most important and the most difficult part of Greek Syntax.

GOODWIN'S GREEK READER. Consisting of Extracts from Xenophon, Plato, Herodotus, and Thucydides; being a full equivalent for the seven books of the Anabasis, now required for admission at Harvard. With Maps, Notes, References to GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR, and parallel References to CROSBY'S and HADLEY'S GRAMMARS. Edited by Professor W. W. Goodwin, of Harvard College, and J. H. Allen, Cambridge. Half morocco. 1.60 2.00

This book contains the third and fourth books of the Anabasis (entire), the greater part of the second book of the Hellenica, and the first chapter of the Memorabilia, of Xenophon; the last part of the Apology, and the beginning and end of the Phaedo, of Plato; selections from the sixth, seventh, and eighth books of Herodotus, and from the fourth book of Thucydides.


This work contains about one hundred lessons, with a progressive series of exercises (both Greek and English), mainly selected from the first book of Xenophon's Anabasis. The exercises on the Moods are sufficient, it is believed, to develop the general principles as stated in the Grammar. The text of four chapters of the Anabasis is given entire, with notes and references. Full vocabularies accompany the book.


LIDDELL & SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. The sixth Oxford Edition unabridged. 4to. Morocco back. 9.60 12.00 Sheep binding. 10.40 18.00

We have made arrangements with Messrs. Macmillan & Co. to publish in this country their new edition of Liddell & Scott's Greek Lexicon, and are ready to supply the trade.

The English editions of Liddell & Scott are not stereotyped; but each has been thoroughly revised, enlarged, and printed anew. The sixth edition, just published, is larger by one-eighth than the fifth, and contains 1866 pages. It is an entirely different work from the first edition, the whole department of etymology having been rewritten in the light of modern investigations, and the forms of the irregular verbs being given in greater detail by the aid of Velitch's Catalogue. No student of Greek can afford to dispense with this invaluable Lexicon, the price of which is now for the first time brought within the means of the great body of American scholars.
PLATO'S APOLOGY OF SOCRATES AND CRITO.
Edited, for the Use of Schools, by JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A. M.

The basis of this work will be the German edition of Dr. Christian Cron. (Platons Vertheidigungsrede des Sokrates und Kriton. Fuenfte Auflage. Leipzig, Teubner, 1872.) To the matter contained in Dr. Cron's edition there will be added notes by the Editor and from other sources, analyses, and extended references to Goodwin and Hadley. The book will be for the class-room, and all matter not of direct value to the student will be rigidly excluded.

THE OEDIPUS TYRANNUS OF SOPHOCLES Ed-
ted, with an Introduction, Notes, and full explanation of the metres, by
John W. White, A. M., Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in
Baldwin University . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1.20 1.50

THE MEDEA OF EURIPIDES. Edited, with Notes
and an Introduction, by Frederic D. Allen, Ph. D., Professor in the Univer-
sity of Cincinnati.

WILKIN'S MANUAL OF GREEK PROSE COM-
POSITION. 1 vol. 12mo. Cloth . . . . . . . . . . . . 2.00 2.50
LATIN.


“A complete Latin Grammar, to be used from the beginning of the study of Latin till the end of the college course.” The forms of the language and the constructions of Syntax are fully illustrated by classical examples and by comparison with parallel forms of kindred languages.


ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S CÆSAR (Gallic War, Four Books). With very full Notes, Copperplate Map, and References to their Grammar as well as Gildersleeve’s. Do. without Vocabulary. 1.20. 1.50

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S SELECT ORATIONS OF CICERO. Chronologically arranged, covering the entire period of his Public Life. Edited by J. H. & W. F. Allen and J. B. Greenough, with References to Allen & Greenough’s Latin Grammar. Containing the Defence of Roscius (abridged), Verres I., Manilius Law, Catiline, Archias, Sextus (abridged), Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. With Life, Introductions, Notes, and Index. 1.40. 1.75

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S VIRGIL. Six Books of the Æneid and the Bucolics. With Introduction, Notes, and Grammatical References to Allen & Greenough’s and Gildersleeve’s Latin Grammars. The text is founded on that of Ribbeck, variations from that and from Heyne being given in the margin. 1.40. 1.75

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S SALLUST. The Conspiracy of Catiline, as related by Sallust. pp. 82. Cloth $.60. 1.00

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S CICERO DE SENECUTE (CATO MAJOR), in uniform style with Allen & Greenough’s Cicero. pp. 57. Cloth $.60. 1.00

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S OVID. Selections from the Poems of Ovid, chiefly from the Metamorphoses. With Index of Proper Names. pp. 282. 1.20. 1.50

The attempt has been made to give in a reading book, suitable for students beginning Latin poetry, something like a complete picture of the Greek mythology, at least of the great narratives which have entered more or less into modern literature. About a thousand lines of the Elegiac verse are added, taken from most of the poet’s other works.

ALLEN & GREENOUGH’S SHORTER COURSE OF LATIN PROSE: Consisting chiefly of the Prose Selections of Allen’s Latin Reader (to p. 124), the Notes being wholly rewritten, enlarged, and adapted to Allen & Greenough’s Grammar; accompanied by Six Orations of Cicero,— the Manilian, the four Catilines, and Archias. With Vocabulary. 2.00. 2.50

ALLEN’S LATIN READER. 12mo. 518 pages. Consisting of Selections from Cæsar, Curtius, Nepos, Sallust, Ovid, Virgil, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Pliny, and Tacitus, with Notes, and a general Vocabulary of Latin of more than 16,000 words. 2.00. 2.50

ALLEN’S LATIN SELECTIONS. Containing the same as Allen’s Latin Reader, without Vocabulary. 1.25. 1.56
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Stacks Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29 Feb 1964</td>
<td>IN STACKS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEB 15 1964</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC'D LD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAY 9 '64 - 10 AM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUL 14 '64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed. Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

**General Library**
University of California
Berkeley

LD 21A-40m-11,'63
(E1602a10) 476B